



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Sh. Spence to Spencer

Standard Classical Works.

Latin Text-Books.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar.* Revised and Corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D.
12mo. 359 pages.

Arnold's First Latin Book;* remodelled and rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M. 12mo. 302 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.* Revised and Corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D.
12mo. 356 pages.

Cornelius Nepos,* with Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, &c. 12mo. 350 pages.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all of the leading educational institutions in the United States.

A Second Latin Book;* Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a complete Analytical Syntax, in a Series of Lessons and Exercises involving the construction, analysis, and reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., of Brown University. (Recently published.) 12mo. 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's edition of "Arnold's First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. 12mo.
291 pages.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo. 408 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Standard Classical Works.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

Horace, The Works of. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of Latin Language and Literature in Brown Univ'y. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown Univ'y. 12mo. 329 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and Illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.* With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BÜTLER and STURGIS. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

Tacitus' Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

Virgil's Æneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

Greek Text-Books.

A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader.
By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book,"
"Second Latin Book," &c. (Recently published.) 12mo.
276 pages.

— SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

My dear Mr. [unclear]
[unclear]

A
FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK
AND
PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

BY
THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M. A.,
AUTHOR OF LATIN AND GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION ETC.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED
BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

TWENTY-FIFTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON & CO., 443 & 445 BROADWAY.
1867.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by
D. APPLETON & CO.,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

PREFACE.

THE valuable introductory work now presented to the American public is the first of a series of Classical school books, on the basis of OLLENDORFF's much and justly admired system. *Imitation* and *frequent repetition*—which are the means by which every child learns his own language—are herein constantly acted upon; and the intelligent pupil is led by natural, and therefore easy steps, into an acquaintance with the structure and many of the peculiarities of the language of the old Romans.

The First Part, or First Latin Book, has obtained high and almost unprecedented reputation in England; it has gone through five editions in as many years; it is recommended by the Oxford Diocesan Board of Education, and adopted by the National Society's Training College at Chelsea, and is admirably adapted, both in design and execution, to the wants of beginners in the Latin language. The Second Part, or Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar, is intended as a sequel to the former Part, and carries the learner on, by a series of Exercises in translating both into Latin and into English, through some of the principal difficulties of the Latin tongue.

The American Editor has not found it necessary to make any material alteration in the original work. The title of the First Part was "Henry's First Latin Book," in imitation of "Mary's Grammar." This title has been changed

by the omission of the first word. The Editor has confined himself principally to a thorough revision of Mr. Arnold's labors ; to such necessary changes as the union of the two parts into one volume required ; to the addition of a few explanatory notes ; an enlargement and improvement of the Latin and English vocabularies, and the correction of occasional errors of inadvertence or of typography.

Under the strong conviction that school books, above all others, should be accurately printed, the Editor has bestowed special care upon this point ; and he trusts that the present volume will be found free from even trifling errors of the press.

NEW YORK, *January 15, 1846*

PREFACE

TO THE FIFTH AMERICAN EDITION.

IN announcing a fifth edition of the **First and Second Latin Book**, the Editor very gladly embraces the opportunity afforded him, of briefly stating what changes and improvements have been made, in order to render the work more worthy of the unprecedented success which it has met with. At the suggestion of several eminent practical teachers, the matter formerly in the Appendix, and introductory to the Exercises in the **Second Latin Book**, has been entirely rearranged, considerably augmented, and put into a shape better suited to the purposes of those who wish to use the **Second Latin Book** instead of an ordinary Grammar. There has also been added a carefully drawn up Synopsis of Latin Syntax, which may be used to peculiar advantage in drilling boys in the Exercises and Reading Lessons. The Editor indulges the hope that these changes and additions will meet the approbation of classical teachers.

J. A. S.

NEW YORK, *May 22, 1847.*

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

LESSON	PAGE
1. On forming the accusative case.....	15
2. On forming the 3d pers. sing. of three tenses in 1st conjugation.....	16
3. _____ in 2d conjugation.....	19
4. _____ in 3d conjugation.....	20
5. _____ in 4th conjugation.....	21
6. _____ in the four conjugations	23
7. Adjectives in <i>us, er</i>	23
8. Terminations of the Genitive sing.....	25
9. Genitive of <i>price</i>	26
10. Omission of ' <i>man</i> ,' ' <i>thing</i> '.....	27
11. On the formation of the <i>perfect</i>	29
12. Gen. with neut. adjective.....	29
13. Infinitive. Gen. with <i>est</i>	31
14. Acc. Plural.....	32
15. Dative and Ablative singular. <i>Time. Place</i>	33
16. Adjectives in <i>is</i>	34
17. On the perfect of the 3d Conjugation. Verbs whose root ends in <i>p</i> or <i>b</i>	35
18. Terminations of the 3d plural.....	36
19. Of the nom. and gen. plural.....	37
20. On finding the nom. of the 3d Declension.....	38
21. <i>Nē</i> with imperatives.....	40
22. On the perf. of Verbs whose root ends in <i>c, g, or q</i>	41
23. _____ <i>d</i> or <i>t</i> . Dat. and Abl. plur.	43
24. Root of the perf. with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.....	44

LESSON	PAGE
25. Abl. of price.....	45
26. On distinguishing root of perf. from root of present.....	46
27. The personal pronouns Apposition	49
28. Nominative after <i>est</i> , &c. Some tenses of <i>esse</i>	49
29. The compounds of <i>esse</i>	51
30. Tenses of the <i>subjunctive</i>	52
31. English infinitive expressing a <i>purpose</i>	52
32. <i>That</i> expressing a <i>consequence</i> after <i>such</i> , <i>so</i> , &c. <i>Summus mons</i> , &c.	54
33. Some tenses of <i>posse</i> . Interrogative Particles	55
34. Root of <i>supine</i>	57
35. The Participles.....	59
36. Translation of the participle of the perf. active. The ablative absolute	60
37. The Gerunds. <i>Occidēre</i> declined.....	62
38. The participle in <i>dus</i> . <i>Epistōla scribenda</i>	64
39. Translation of ' <i>is to be cultivated</i> ,' &c. Agent after the participle in <i>dus</i>	65
40. Verbs that govern the dative	67
41. Terminations of the <i>persons</i>	68
42. The pronoun ' <i>is</i> .' Conditional Sentences	70
43. <i>Scribendum est mihi</i>	71
44. Subj. pres. and imperf. of <i>esse</i>	72
45. <i>Credendum est Caio</i>	73
46. <i>Colenda est virtus</i>	74
47. The Infinitive Mood	76
48. Passive Forms.....	78
49. <i>Qui, quæ, quod. Mihi creditur</i> , &c.....	80
50. Deponent Verbs	81
51. The Comparative and Superlative.....	82
52. Prepositions.....	84
53. Translation of ' <i>may</i> ,' ' <i>might</i> '.....	86
54. Translation of ' <i>ought</i> '.....	87
55. Ablative denoting the measure of excess or defect. <i>Quo—eo; quanto—tanto</i>	89
56. <i>Quo</i>	90

LESSON	PAGE
57. <i>Pœnitel, pudet, &c.</i>	91
58. <i>Et—et ; quum—tum, &c.</i>	93
59. <i>Aut ; vel ; sive (seu,) &c.</i>	94
60. <i>At, sed, tamen, &c., (adversatives)</i>	95
61. <i>Nam, igitur, &c., (causals)</i>	95
62. <i>Ut</i>	96
63. <i>Nē</i>	97
64. <i>Quin</i>	98
65. <i>Quominus</i>	99
66. <i>Vereor ne ; vereor ut</i>	100
67. Interrogatives.....	101
68. ————— in dependent sentences.....	102
69. Double questions.....	102
70. Conjunctions that always take subj.....	103
71—78. On participles.....	104—110
QUESTIONS.....	111
DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.....	115

A FEW REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

THE Latin being a *dead* (that is, an *unspoken*) language, it is not known how the Romans pronounced it. Hence every modern tongue adapts the pronunciation of Latin to its own peculiarities. In English, we follow the analogy or custom of the English language in respect to the sound of the vowels and the position of the accents; therefore—

1. The accent or stress of the voice is *always* on the *penultimate*, (the last syllable but one,) or the *antepenultimate*, (the last syllable but two,) as *hom'o*, *tem'po-ris*, *dat'um*, *agric'ola*, &c.
 2. In words of more than two syllables, if the penultimate is *long*, the stress is upon it; if *short*, it is on the *antepenultimate*; as *rad'cis*, *con'sūlis*, *humā'nus*, &c.
 3. Every vowel has either a long or a short sound; as *hōmīnēs*, *fāmā*, *āmicūs*, *āmicī*, *pōpūlōs*, *vērūs*, *tūtūs*, *tūtēlā*, *Cāesār*, *rēgērē*, *dēcōrīs*.
 4. Monosyllables ending in a vowel have the *long* sound, as *dā*, *mē*, *sī*, *dō*, *tū*; otherwise, the *short* sound, as *āc*, *sēd*, *in*, *ōb*, *hūc*.
 5. When a vowel comes before or between two consonants, it has the *short* sound, though in fact *long* by its position; as *ān'nus*, *pēn'nā*, *pīg'nūs*, *lōn'gus*, &c.
 6. *E* final is never *mute*; in other words, it always *constitutes a syllable* with a preceding consonant or consonants; as *ma-re*, *gran-de*, *es-se*, *a-bī-re*, *a-cū-te*, *vī-ce*.
 7. *C* and *G* are *soft* (that is, pronounced like *s*, *j*) respectively before *e*, *æ*, and *i*: as *cērā*, *celūm*, *cīs*, *gērō*, *gīgnō*, &c. In other cases they are *hard*, (i. e. have the sound of *k* and *g* hard,) as *cāp'rā*, *gūbernā'tōr*, *cōgo*, *Gallus*, &c.
 8. *Qu*, *gu* are pronounced respectively like *kw*, *gw*; as *āntiquus* = *antikwus*: *sanguis* = *sangwis*.
-

OBSERVATIONS.

Numerals above the line refer to the *Questions* when they are followed by a *curve*; to the *Table of Differences*, when not. *

Two or more words connected together by a hyphen show that they are to be rendered into Latin by one word; as "natural-to-man." *humānus*; the space-of-two-years," *biennium*; 't-is e't, &c.

LATIN LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Words in *Italics*, in an exercise, are phrases that are either not to be translated word for word; or about which something has been taught that should be remembered.

Lesson 1.

1. WHERE *we* in English put a preposition before a noun, the Romans often used *no preposition*, but changed the *end* of the word.

2. Thus, '*mensa*' being '*a table*;' '*mensæ*' is '*OF a table*;' '*mensâ*' '*BY a table*,' and so on.

3. A word so altered is called *a case* of that word; thus *mensæ* is called the *genitive case* of *mensa*; and so on.

4. The unaltered word is said to be in the *nominative case*, though it is not strictly a case.

5. All nouns do not form their cases exactly in the same way

As there are five principal ways of forming the cases of a noun, nouns are divided into *five classes*, each class being called a *declension*.

6. (a) Nouns that end in *a* and make their genitive in *æ*, are of the *first declension*.

(b) Nouns that end in *us*, *er*, *um*, and make their genitives in *i*, are of the *second declension*.

(c) Nouns in *us* that make their genitive in *ûs*, and all nouns in *u*, are of the *fourth declension*.

- (d) Nouns that end in *es* and make their genitive in *ei*, are of the *fifth declension*.
- (e) Nouns with *any ending* not set down as belonging to the other declensions, and those *with* an ending belonging to some other declension but with a *genitive* in '*is*,' belong to the *third declension*.^a

7. On the ACCUSATIVE case.

The *accusative* is the case that follows *transitive* verbs, and many *prepositions*.

8. A transitive verb is one that gives no *complete* meaning, till some person or thing is mentioned *to whom* or *which* the action was done.

He struck—(struck what?) the dog. He killed—(killed whom?) the blacksmith.

9. The following are the *accusative* endings of the five declensions for the singular number.

1.	2. 4.	3. 5.
am	um	em

But ¶ If a noun is *neuter*, its accusative is the *unaltered word*.^b

10. These endings are to be added to the *word*, after the endings of the nominative, as set down in the table,

* TABLE OF THE DECLENSIONS

Nouns that end in	Genitive		
a	æ	are of the first	} Declension.
us, er, um	i	. . second	
us, u	ûs*	. . fourth	
es	ei	. . fifth	
Those with <i>any other ending</i> , (or with these if their gen. end in ' <i>is</i> '),	is	. . third	

^b In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*. Hence in Latin, *gender*, as belonging to *things* has nothing to do with *sex*.

* In Latin grammars it has always heretofore been asserted that nouns of the fourth declension ending in *u*, are indeclinable in the singular. The latest results, however, of the labors of German scholars seem to have settled that *cornu* has the genitive *cornûs*, and that all nouns ending in *u* have the regular genitive of the fourth declension, in *ûs*. Hence Mr. Arnold uniformly gives this as the correct form. For a full discussion of this point consult the *Preface to Freund's Latin Dictionary*—Am. Ed.

(in 6, note a,) are thrown away. But to this table there are two exceptions:—

- (1) The *case-endings* (or '*terminations*') of nouns of the second in *er*, are added on thus: *e* is *dropped*, and the termination then added on to the *r*. Thus *ager*, *agr-*, Acc. *agr-um*. (Sometimes, however, the *e* is kept; as *puer*, Acc. *puer-um*.)
- (2) The *terminations* of the *third* are added on to *some form* that is *generally not found* in the *nominative*. Thus they are added on to *lapid*, the nominative being *lapis*.
- (3) The *root*, or form to which the terminations of the *third* declension are to be added, is to be got from the genitive by throwing away '*is*.'

¶ Let the learner here turn to the *Accidence*, p. 128, where are examples of a noun in every declension given out in full; and let him master these thoroughly before proceeding further.

Exercise 1.

[Obs. *m.*, *f.*, *n.*, stand for *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. *G.* stands for *genitive*.]

11. Determine of what declension each of the following words is, and write down its accusative case.

VOCABULARY 1.

Crown,	corōna	KEY-WORDS.*
Island,	insūla	(<i>coronation.</i>)
Friend,	amicus, <i>G. amici</i>	(<i>islander.</i>)
Umpire,	arbitr, <i>G. arbitr-i</i>	(<i>amicable.</i>)
Leaf,	folium, <i>G. folii</i>	(<i>arbitration.</i>)
Garden,	hortus, <i>G. horti</i>	(<i>foliage.</i>)
Law,	lex, <i>G. lēg-is</i>	(<i>horticulture.</i>)
Chariot,	currus, <i>G. currūs</i>	(<i>legal.</i>)
Face,	facies, <i>G. faciēs</i>	(<i>curricl.</i>)
Dust,	pulvis, <i>G. pulvēr-is</i>	(<i>pulverize.</i>)
Time,	tempus, <i>G. tempōr-is</i> , <i>neuter</i>	(<i>temporal.</i>)
Oak,	quercus, <i>G. quercūs</i>	
Horn,	cornu	(<i>cornucopia</i>)

* That is, English words that are derived from the Latin words, and may serve as a *key* or help to their meaning.

Lesson 2.

12. The *persons* of the Latin verb are distinguished by their *endings*, (as think-*est* and think-*s* are in English.) But in Latin *all* the persons have different endings; and the pronoun *I, thou, &c.*, is generally *left out*, because the *ending* of the verb *tells* which person is meant.

(*Verbs whose infinitives end in are.*)

13. By throwing off *are* you get the root.

14. By adding *at* to the root you get the third person singular of the *present* tense: by adding *abat*, the third person singular of the *imperfect* tense: by adding *abit*, the third person singular of the *future* tense.

(a) *Amāre, to love: root am.*

am-āt, loves; is loving; or does love.

am-ābāt, was loving.

am-ābit, will love.

15. VOCABULARY 2.

		KEY-WORDS.
To praise,	laud-āre	(<i>laudatory.</i>)
To swear,	jūr-āre	(<i>ad-jure.</i>)
To plough,	ār-āre	(<i>arable.</i>)
To dance,	salt-āre.	
To avoid,	vit-āre	(<i>in-c vitable.</i>)
To build,	ædific-āre	(<i>edification.</i>)*
Husbandman,	agricola.	
Wall,	mūrus, i	(<i>a mural crown.</i>)†
Death,	mors G. mort-is	(<i>mortal.</i>)
Boy,	puer, G. puēri (keeps e)—	(<i>puerile.</i>)
Way; road,	via	(<i>de-vious.</i>)
To show, or point out,	monstr-āre	(<i>de-monstrate.</i>)
Dragon,	draco, G. dracon-is.	
Voice,	vox, G. vōc-is	(<i>vocal.</i>)
Fox,	vulpes, G. vulp-is.	
Not,	non, (before the verb.)	

Model sentence. (Obs. in the Latin order of words, the accusative is placed *before* the verb.)

16. Servius imperium administrat.
Servius (the) government administers.

17. ☞ The Latin language has no *article*.^d

* This word means 'the building a man up' in religious knowledge and practice: *building on the foundation of faith.*

† A crown given to the soldier who first mounted the walls of a besieged city.

d That is, no word for *a* or *the*.

Exercise 2.

18. [Order: Nom. Acc. Verb.]

Balbus^a is-building a wall. The boy shows the road.
 Caius will build a wall. The boy will show the road.
 The husbandman will plough. Caius was ploughing.
 Caius will praise the boy. The boy will avoid death.
 He was swearing. The boy dances. The boy will
 dance. The girl was dancing. The boy will avoid the
 fox. The fox was avoiding the boy.

- 37 When there is a 'not,' the present with 'does' must be used: and the auxiliary verb (*does, will, shall, &c.*) must stand before the 'not,' as, " he does not praise the boy."

Puer murum ædificābat. Caius puellam laudat. Bal-
 bus jurābit. Agricōla arat. Balbus puerum vitābat.
 Puer mortem vitābit. Puerum non laudat.
 laudat, saltabat, laudabat; jurat, ædificabit, vitat,
 saltabat, vitabit, vitabat; laudabit, saltat, jurat,
 jurat, monstrabat, arabit; monstrat, ædificat, vitabit.

Lesson 3.

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ēre.)

19. VOCABULARY 3.

To fear,
 To see,
 To laugh, }
 To laugh-at, }
 To hold,
 To frighten,
 To teach,

tīm-ēre
 vīd-ēre
 rid-ēre
 tēn-ēre
 terr-ēre
 dōc-ēre

KEY-WORDS.
 (timid.)
 (pro vide.)
 (de-ride.)
 (a ten-ant.)
 (terri-fy.)
 (doc-tor.)

20. The root is got by throwing off ēre.

21. The endings of the third persons singular are,
 (pres.) (imperf.) (fut.)
 et, ēbat, ēbit.

^a Balbus and Caius are the Latin names. Gen. Balbi, Caii.

Exercise 3.

22. A Christian does not fear death. The boy will fear the dragon. The voice will frighten the boy. The boy was holding the fox. The boy will hold the dragon. Balbus was laughing-at the boy. He was building a wall. Caius will plough. He swears. A Christian will not fear death. Balbus was showing the way.

timet, ridēbit, terrēbat; tenet, videt, vidēbit.

ridēbat, tenēbat, timet; timēbit, terret, timēbat.

Puer vulpem non timet. Draco puerum terrēbit. Balbus dracōnem tenēbat. Puella viam monstrābat. Puer puellam ridet. Caius puerum docēbat.

Lesson 4.

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ěre.)

23. VOCABULARY 4

To neglect, disregard,	neglig-ěre	KEY-WORDS.
To shut,	claud-ěre.	(negligent.)
To write,	scrib-ěre	(de-scribe.)
To slay,	occid-ěre.	
To learn,	disc-ěre.	
To lead,	duc-ěre	(ad-duce.)
Gate,	porta	(porter.)
Letter,	epistola	(epistle.)
Slave,	servus	(servile.)
Master,	dōminus	(domineer.)

24. The root is got by throwing off ěre, and the terminations of the third persons singular are,

(pres.)

it,

(imperf.)

ēbat,

(fut.)

et.

Exercise 4.

25. The slave will shut the gate. The girl was writing a letter. Balbus disregards the voice. The boy will learn. Caius was learning. The girl will show the garden. The master will praise (his) slave.

The slave was showing the way. The slave will not fear death. The slave will plough.

discit, claudit, claudēbat; negliget, scribit, scribet, claudet, discēbat, scribet; occidit, discet, ducit.

Servus dominum occidit. Puer discēbat. Servus portam claudēbat. Epistolam scribet. Jurābit. Puella puerum laudābat. Puella mortem vitābit. Puer vulpem non timēbit. Christianus mortem non timet.

Lesson 5.

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ire.)

26. VOCABULARY 5.

To hear,	aud-ire	(audi-ble.)
To feel,	sent-ire	(pre-senti-ment.)
To perceive,		
To open,	aper-ire	
To uncover,	vinc-ire.	
To bind,		
Pain,	dolor, G. dolor-is, masc.	(dolor-ous.)
Sorrow,	caput, G. capiti-is, neut.	(capit-al.)
Head,		

27. The root is got by throwing away *ire*, and the endings of the third persons singular are,

(pres.)	(imperf.)	(fut.)
it,	iēbat,	iet.

Exercise 5.

28. The boy hears a voice. Balbus will feel pain. The slave uncovers his head. The girl will open the letter. Balbus will bind (his*) head. Caius will hear the voice. Caius was uncovering (his) head. Balbus will write the letter. The master neglects (his) slave.

vinciebat, sentiet, audiet; sentit, audiebat, aperit, audit, aperiebat, sentiet; vincit, audit, sentiebat.

Puer caput vinciēbat. Balbus vocem audiet. Caius dolōrem vitābit. Puella dolōrem sentiēbat. Servus epistolam scribēbat. Caius servum laudābat. Servus murum ædificat. Servus currum monstrābit.

* Not to be translated.

Lesson 6

29. The forms we have now gone through are the four classes (or *conjugations* as they are called) of verbs. They are distinguished by the endings of the infinitive mood.*

30. (a) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *āre*, are of the *first* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long a*.
 (b) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ēre*, are of the *second* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long e*.
 (c) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ĕre*, are of the *third* conjugation, and their favorite vowels are *short e* and *short i*.
 (d) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *īre*, are of the *fourth* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long i*.

31. Terminations of the Infinitive.

1 conjug. (favorite vowel <i>ā</i>)	2 conjug. (fav. vowel <i>ē</i>)	3 conjug. (fav. vowels <i>ĕ</i> , <i>i</i>)	4 conjug. (fav. vowel <i>ī</i>)
Infinitive:— <i>āre</i>	<i>ēre</i>	<i>ĕre</i>	<i>īre</i>

32. Third persons of three tenses.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Present,	<i>āt</i>	<i>ēt</i>	<i>īt</i>	<i>īt</i>
Imperf.,	<i>ābāt</i>	<i>ēbāt</i>	<i>ēbāt</i>	<i>iēbāt</i>
Future,	<i>ābīt</i>	<i>ēbīt</i>	<i>ēt</i>	<i>iēt</i>

33. VOCABULARY 6.

To fight,	pugn-āre	(pugn-acious.)
To sing,	cant-āre	(canto.)
To play,	lūd-ĕre	(de-lude.)
To cry out,	clām-āre	(clam-or.)
To answer,	respond-ĕre	(respond.)
To sin,	pecc-āre	(pecc-ant.)
To run,	curr-ĕre	(curr icle.)
To hope for,	spēr-āre	(de-sper-ate.)

* See Accidence, p. 155, where a verb in each conjugation is given in full through all the moods and tenses.

Exercise 6.

34. The girl sings. The boy was singing. The slave will play. The slave was crying-out. The boy will answer. Balbus will laugh. The husbandman was not ploughing. Caius is ploughing. Balbus will not answer. The boy will sin. The slave will fight. The master was praising (his) slave. The boy will run. The girl was running.


Servus mortem sperābat. Pater currēbat. Servus pugnabat. Balbus sentiet. Mors Balbum terrēbit. Mors christianum non terret. Puer vocem audiet. Puer vulpem non timet. Servus dominum occidēbat. Puella peccābat. Servus cantābit. Balbus audit. Pater sentit.

Lesson 7.

(Adjectives in us, er.)

35. VOCABULARY 7.

To finish,	fin-ire.	
Labor,	labor, G. labōr-is.	
Mother,	māter, G. matr-is	(maternal.)
Father,	pāter, G. patr-is	(paternal.)
To bury	sepēl-ire	(sepulture.)
Dead,	mortuus, mortuus, mortuum.	
Son,	filius, G. filii	(filial.)
Snake,	anguis, anguis, m. (pronounced angwis.)	
To find,	repēr-ire	(repertory.)
Money,	pecunia	(pecuniary.)
Sum-of-money, }		
Master,	{ magister, G. magistr-i, } a master who teaches { dominus, G. i, a master } who owns	{ magisterial } { domineer. }
To rouse-up, or }	excīt-ire	(excitement.)
awaken, }		
Mine,	meus, mea, meum.	
Good,	bonus, bona, bonum.	
His, her, its, theirs,	suus, sua, suum; when the person whose the thing	
is, is the nominative to the verb.		

36.  Adjectives in *us, er*, have a *masculine*, a *feminine*, and a *neuter* form, and they are declined exactly like substantives.

The masculine ends in *us* or *er*; Gen. *i*. (Decl. *ii*.)
 — feminine — *a*; G. *æ*. (Decl. *i*.)
 — neuter — *um*; G. *i*. (Decl. *ii*.)

Hence the *acc.* of an adjective is got by 9. For instance, if the adjective be *bonus*, (whose *fem.* is *bona*; *neut.* *bonum*); if I want the *acc. masc.* or *neut.*, I take the *acc.* of *bonus* or *bonum* respectively; if I want the *acc. fem.*, I take the *acc.* of *bona*, which is *bonam*.

37. Every noun is *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*; and every adjective must be of the same *case*, *gender*, and *number* as the noun of which it is spoken.*

38. Mulier ancillam suam excitat.
The woman maid her awakens.

Obs. Except with these little words *meus*, *suus*, &c., the adjective *generally* stands *before* its substantive. 'Bonus puer,' a good boy.

[Ancillam suam:—*suam* is put in the *accusative feminine*, because *ancillam* (the noun of which it is spoken) is in the *accusative feminine*.]

Exercise 7.

39. The father buries (his) dead son. The husband-man finds a snake. (My) friend does not hear my voice. A slave was shutting the gate. The master is teaching the boy. The master will rouse up his slave. Caius disregards the law. The boy will finish his labor. The girl was finishing her labor. The master will

* See 9, b.

† TABLE by which the gender of a substantive is to be determined.

I. DECL. All <i>feminine</i> , except <i>poeta</i> , (poet,) and other designations of <i>men</i> .		
II. DECL.	us, er, <i>masculine</i> : except <i>humus</i> , <i>dŏmus</i> , (<i>fem.</i>) and a few more.	
	um, <i>neuter</i> .	
IV. DECL.	us, <i>masculine</i> , except <i>mānus</i> , (<i>fem.</i>) and a few more.	
	u, <i>neuter</i> .	
V. DECL. es, <i>fem.</i> (Dies <i>masculine</i> , but sometimes <i>fem.</i> in singular.)		
III DECL. Masc. term.	Fem. term.	Neut. term.
	er, or, os,	o, a, t, e, l, n,
	as, is, aus,	ar, ur, us,
	x,	(But ts with long u,
	es not increasing, s after a consonant	in words of more than one syll. is <i>fem.</i>)

Obs. *Masc.* endings are in *capitals*; *fem.* in *common type*; *neut.* in *italics*.—There are many exceptions in the *third*. See *Accidence*, on the *Genders of Substantives*, p. 127.

* That is, having in the genitive a *syllable more* than in the nominative.

show his garden. The father will praise (his) good son.

Pater filium suum docēbat. Agricōla anguem non timēbit. Caius legem negliget. Christiānus pecuniam negligit. Mortuum agricōlam sepeliet. Pater meus vocem ineam non negliget.

Lesson 8.

40. The following are the *genitive* terminations of the five declensions :

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
æ	i	is	ūs	ei

37 (1) In the Genitive of the fourth *ūs* is for *uis*.

(2) In the Genitive of the fifth, the *e* is long when *is* follows a vowel ; short when it does not. (Facilē, fidēl.)*

41. VOCABULARY 8.

Through,	per, governs accusative	
To walk,	ambŭlāre	(per-ambulate.)
To call,	vocāre	(vocation.)
Poet,	poēta.	
To overturn,	{ evertēre, (the first is its own meaning: the second the word we should use.)	
To pull-down,		
House,	dŏmus, ŭs, f.	(domestic.)
Body,	corpŭs, corpŏr-is, n.	(corporal punishment.)
Great,	magnus	(magnitude.)
Little, }		
Small, }	parvus.	

41.* Ipse Sullæ domum evertit.
He-himself Sulla's house pulls-down,
(properly, overturns.)

Oss. 37 The governed genitive stands first, unless the governing noun is emphatic. When the governing noun is to stand before *its* genitive, it will have an accent after it, (thus; festival').

* This positive statement of Mr. Arnold seems to require some modification. The genitives and datives singular of the fifth declension, always make *e* long before *s*, as *diēi*, *aciēi*, except in the only three nouns of the fifth declension which do not end in *ies*, viz., *fidēs*, *spēs*, *res*. In these *e* is found short in *spēi*, common (either long or short) in *fidēi*, or *fidēi*, and in *rēi* or *rēi*. See Ramsay's Latin Prosody p. 22.—AM. ED.

Exercise 8.

42. The slave shuts the gates of the city. He-himself will not pull down his friend's house. The father will not disregard the voice of his son. The father is burying the body of (his) dead son. The boy was pointing-out the snake's body. My mother was praising the poet's daughter. The good boy was walking through the city. My father will call the husband-man's daughter. The poet was holding the queen's crown.

Filius patris sui mortem vindicābit. Pater filii sui vocem non negliget. Leo asinum dilaniat. Servus domini sui mortem vindicābat. Regis sceptrum vidēbit. Agricola per urbem ambulabit.

Lesson 9.

Say the terminations of the tenses, (32.) Give the accusative endings, (9.) Give the genitive endings, (40.)

43. VOCABULARY 9.

At-nothing,	{ nihili, (the genitive of <i>nihilum</i> , which is only used in some particular phrases.)	
To value,	æstimare	(estimation.)
At a great (price,) }	magni.*	
At a high (price,) }		
At a little (price,) }	parvi.*	
At a low (price,) }		
To think little of,	parvi æstimare.	
Queen,	regina.	
King,	rex, G. rēg-is	(regal.)
Sceptre,	sceptrum.	
Labor,	lābor, G. labōr-is.	
True, real,	vērus	(verily.)
Virtue,	virtūs, G. virtūt-is.	
To tear-to-pieces,	dilaniare.	
An ass,	asinus, G. asīni.	
To avenge,	vindicāre	(vindictive.)
Lion,	leo, G. leōnis.	

44. With some words the *price* or *value* is put in the *genitive*

* These are genitives. (pretii) *price* being understood.

Sapiens virtutem magni æstimat.
The wise man virtue at a great (price) values.

45., Magna regis corona, *the king's great crown.*

Magna boni regis corona, *the good king's great crown.*

Imitate this order ; *adj. gen. subst.*

Exercise 9.

46. He disregards his slave's great labor. He sees a great snake. The boy was avoiding the snake's great body. He is avoiding the great snake's great body. The master was rousing up his slave. He will feel great sorrow. The poet will feel real sorrow. The father will not neglect the sorrow of his son. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price.)* The master *thinks little of* the labor of his slave. The father will value my labor *at a great (price.)*

Caius amici sui laborem parvi æstimat. Pater laborem meum magni æstimat. Leo asini corpus dilaniabat. Mater laudabat filiam. Vulpes leonem timet. Boni pueri caput aperiebat. Dominus servi sui epistolam aperiet. Magnam urbis portam claudebat. Servus puerum vocabit.

Lesson 10.

47. VOCABULARY 10.

Very great, greatest,	maximus.	
At a very great (price,) }	maximi.	
At a very high (price,) }	avaritia. ^b	
Avarice,	indoctus.	
Unlearned,	avarus.	
Avaricious; greedy,	sapiens, sapientis	(<i>sapient.</i>)
Wise,	sapientia.	
Wisdom,	laudare	(<i>laudatory.</i>)
To praise,	impious.	
Impious,		

^b *Obs.* Nouns in *ia, tia, tas*, and *tudo* are abstract nouns, such as the names of virtues, vices, dispositions, feelings, &c.

ticular root,¹ that is altered in various ways from that of the present.

51. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the root of the perfect is generally formed by adding *āv*, *ū*, and *iv*, respectively, to the root of the present.

<i>Thus from</i>	am-āre	mon-ēre	aud-ire
(Root of present)	am-	mon-	aud-
(Root of perfect)	amāv-	monū-	audīv-

52. Terminations of the third person singular, in the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future perfect* of the active voice.

<i>Perfect</i> ,	it,	} to be added to
<i>Pluperfect</i> ,	ērat,	
<i>Future perfect</i> ,	ērit,	
		} the root of the perfect.

53. Find the *roots of the perfect* for cant-āre, terr-ēre, doc-ēre, sepel-ire.

Exercise 11.

54. The boy had heard a voice. The slave will have shown the road. The lion has torn-in-pieces the ass. The slave has avoided pain. Caius had praised his slave. The fox had frightened the boy. The master has taught the boy. The Christian did not fear death. He had valued wisdom at-a-very-low price.

Juravērat. Agricōla aravērit. Vulpes terruērit puerum. Servus speravit mortem. Puella peccavērat. Servus cantabit. Pater mortuum filium sepelivērat. Magnam poētæ sapientiam parvi æstimavit. Veram virtutem magni æstimavērat.

Lesson 12

55. VOCABULARY 11.

Bad,
Something.

mālus. Evil, malum, (*neut. adj.*)
aliquid, (*n.*)

¹ By a *root* is here meant that part of a word which is found in all the cases or tenses spoken of.

How much,	quantus, quanta, quantum	(quantity.)
Pleasure,	voluptas, G. voluptātis	(voluntary.)
Loss,	amittere.	
Unwilling,	invitus, (to be translated, 'unwillingly')	
Figure,	figūra.	
To have,	habere.	
Stability,	stabilitas.	
To condemn,	damnare.	
Unlearned,	indoctus.	
Industry,	industria	

56. *Figura nihil habet stabilitatis.*
The figure nothing has of stability, (has no stability.)

Aliquid tempōris { something of time. (Lat.)
 { (some time.) (Eng.)
Multum boni^k { much of good. (Lat.)
 { (much good.) (Eng.)
Quantum voluptātis^l { how much of pleasure. (Lat.)
 { (how much pleasure.) (Eng.)

57. (Eng.) He does it *unwillingly*. (adv.)
 (Lat.) He *unwillingly* does it, (adj.)

Exercise 12. [Questions 1—5.]

Find, by 51, the root of perfect from hab-ēre, vit-āre, dilani-āre laud-āre.

58. The boy will lose *some time*. *How much pleasure* does the unlearned man lose!^m The figure had *no stability*. He avoided *much evil*. The lion had torn-to-pieces the ass. The father praised his son. My father values industry very highly.ⁿ

Servus viam monstr-av-ērat. Puer mortem tim-u-it. Dominus servum suum excit-av-ērat. Aliquid tempōris invitus amittet. Christiānus avaritiam damnat. Quantum habet voluptātis sapientia! Avaritia nihil habet veræ voluptātis. Quantum voluptātis hab-u-erit!

^k { Boni, mali, &c., (the genitives of bonus, malus,) are here used as substantives

^l { Neuter adjectives are often followed by a genitive case.

These adjectives are generally such as relate to quantity; indefinite numerals, &c.

^m Ques. After 'how much' the present with 'does' is used, and the nominative case stands between the auxiliary verb and the verb.

Lesson 13. [Questions 1—6.]

59. VOCABULARY 12.

Natural-to-man,	humānus	(Adman)
Nobody,	nemo, <i>G. nemo</i> -is.	
To offend-against; wrong,	} violāre	(violate)
To break (a law, one's word, &c.)		
Disgraceful,	turpis, <i>m. f.</i> ; turpe, <i>n.</i>	
Fidelity; faith; one's word,	fides, fidēl.*	
To keep; observe,	servāre	(pre-serve.)
(One's) country,	patria, <i>G. e, f.</i>	(patriotism)
To break one's word,	fidem violāre.	
It is,	est.	
Citizen,	civis, <i>G. civis.</i>	
To command,	impērare	(imperative.)
Easy,	facilis, <i>m. f.</i> ; facile, <i>neut.</i>	(facility.)

60. Humānum est errāre.

Natural-to-man it-is to err.†

Christiāni est neminem violāre.

The part } of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.
The duty }

61. To lie is^o disgraceful. (*Lat.*)

It is disgraceful to lie. (Eng.)

62. After 'it is,' such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, is not to be translated into Latin.

In rendering into English, when a genitive follows *est*, (*erat, fuit, &c.*), such a substantive as *mark, duty, business, part*, must be supplied.

{	It is the part	} of a wise man, &c. (<i>Eng.</i>)
	_____ duty	
	_____ business	
	_____ a mark	
	It is of a wise man (<i>Lat.</i>)

Exercise 13.

63. It is a great *thing* not to fear death. It is a little *thing* not to fear a fox. The slave had kept his word.

* See note on p. 25.

† An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the *nominative* to the verb; and the adjective that agrees with it is then in the *neuter* gender.

When an infinitive mood is the *nominative* case to the sentence, in English we put 'it' before the verb 'is.'

This 'it,' which represents, as it were, the coming sentence, must not be translated into Latin.

It is the slave's *business* to shut the gate of the city. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. It is natural to man to value money *at-a-high-price*. It is a mark of an unlearned man to value wisdom *at-a-low-price*.

Turpe est poētæ domum evertere. Humanum est peccare. *Patris* est filium suum sepelire. *Regis* est imperare. *Servi* est viam monstrare. Pater filium docuērat. Puella clamavērat. Mater filiam suam laudavērat. Caius cantavērit. Agricōla juravit. Impii (62) est virtutem *parvi* æstimare Boni est fidem servare. Impii est fidem violare.

Lesson 14.

64. For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns the accusative plural ends in *s* ; for neuters in *ā*.

RULE. To get the *acc. plur.* from *acc. sing.*

(1) For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns, turn *um* of the 2d into *os* ; in the other declensions, turn *m* into *s*.

(2) For neuters add *a* to the *root*.⁹

Hence the terminations of the *acc. plur.* are,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
ās,	ōs,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.

Obs. The vowel before *s* is long. *Acc. plur.* of all *neuters* ends in *ā*.

Exercise 14.

65. It is disgraceful to break (one's) word. It is (the duty) of a Christian to keep (his) word. It is (the part) of a Christian, not to offend-against the laws of his country. The good citizen will observe the laws of his

⁹ Sometimes *ia* must be added, for which rules will be given below.

country. The master has taught the boys. It is natural to man to avoid pain. Balbus will break his word. The fox had frightened the boys. He disregards the labors of his slave.

Pater meus fidem servavērat. Indocti est (62) sapientiam parvi æstimāre.³ Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. CAIUS fidem suam non servāvit. Christiani est neminem violāre. Neminem violavit.

Lesson 15.

66. The remaining cases of the singular :

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Dative	æ	ō	ī	uī	eī
Ablative	ā	ō	ē <small>sometimes l.*</small>	ū	ē

67. The *Dative* is to be rendered by TO or FOR.

The *Ablative* is to be rendered by WITH, BY, FROM.

But an Ablative of *time* must be rendered by AT or IN : an Ablative of *place*, by AT or FROM.†

68. VOCABULARY 13.

Hand,	mānus, ūs, f.	(manual.)
To labor,		
To be in trouble, }	lābōrāre.	
To appease,	placāre	(placable.)
Mind,	anīm-us, i	(magn-animi-ty.)
Gift,	dōnum	(donative.)

Exercise 15.

[The thing *with which* is put in the ablative.]

69. The boy will show the road to the husbandman. The girl will open the letter *with* her-own hand. The boy will hear voices. Death will not terrify Christians. The slave will shut the gates *for* the king. Death

* s is to be used, unless you are told to use l.

† From after a verb of motion.

frightens the impious. It is natural-to-man to fear death. He will appease the boy *with* a gift. He has appeased the boy's mind. He will have appeased the boy's mind *with* a gift.

Agricolæ est laborāre. Puer discet. Servus domini vocem timēbit. Christiāni est virtūtem laudāre. Cui animum dono placavērit. Iram meam dono placavērat. Puella cantābit. Puer ludēbat.

Lesson 16.

70. ¶ Adjectives ending in *is*, have Gen. *is*, and are therefore of the *third*. They are *masculine* and *feminine*. Their neuter form is *e*, Gen. *is*, &c.; and the ablative singular is *i*.*

71. VOCABULARY 14.

Rome,	Rōma.	
Carthage,	Carthāgo, Carthagīa is, f.	
The space-of-two-years,	biennium.	
Winter,	hiems, hiēm-is, f.	
To sleep,	dormire	(<i>dor-mouse.</i>)
Cave,	antrum.	
One,	unus, una, unum†	(<i>unit.</i>)
To rest,	quiescere	(<i>quiescent.</i>)
To chastise,	castigare	(<i>castigation.</i>)
To remain,	mānere.	
To live,	vivere	(<i>re-vive.</i>)
Earth,	terra	(<i>terrestrial.</i>)
Faithful,	fidelis	(<i>fidelity.</i>)

72.	Romæ.	Tarenti.	Tibūre.‡
	<i>at Rome.</i>	<i>at Tarentum.</i>	<i>at Tibur.</i>
Caius	<i>annum</i>	<i>unum†</i>	Cortōnæ vixit.
Caius	<i>year</i>	<i>one</i>	<i>at Cortona lived.</i>
<i>Hieme</i>	<i>ursus</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>antro dormit.</i>
<i>In winter</i>	<i>the bear</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>a cave sleeps.</i>

* A table of the terminations of an adj. in '*is*' is given in the Accidence, p. 139.

† This word, with some others, has this peculiarity: *unus, una, and unum*, all make their Gen. *unius*, and their Dat. *uni*, instead of the regular Genitives and Datives of the first and second declensions.

‡ If the name of a town *where* any thing is done, be of the *first or second* declension, and *singular* number, it is put in the *genitive*; if not, in the *ablative*.

§ Time *when* is put in the *ablative*; time *how-long* in the *accusative*

73. Obs. The preposition is not to be translated before *the name of a town*, or a noun of *time*.

(a) Before a noun of time consider, whether it tells you *when* the thing *was* (or, *is to be*) *done*; or *how long* it *lasted*, (or *is to last*.)

Exercise 16.

74. In-winter the earth rests. My father was living at-Rome. BALBUS is-remaining at-Carthage. It is the duty⁷ of a good citizen to remain at-Rome. In winter the bear will remain in (its) cave. He will remain at-Rome for the-space-of-two-years. He has kept his word unwillingly. It is the duty⁷ of a father to chastise his son. The slave is walking in the garden. He is remaining at-Tibur unwillingly, (57.) In-the-winter, he will play in the garden.

Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābit. Pater filium castigavērat. Puer in antro dormiēbat. Lex christiāna avaritiā damnavērat. Pater filium castigavērit. Bien-nium Romæ manēbit. Facile est pueri animum dono placare. Puella in horto ludēbat.

Lesson 17.

(On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in *p* or *b*.)

75. In these verbs the root of the *perfect* may generally be got from the root of the *present* by adding *s*.

☞ But *bs* must be written *ps*.

76. EXAMPLES. Root of pres. *rēp*; root of perf. *reps*
 Root of pres. *nūb*; root of perf. *nups*.
 (not *nubs*.)

77. VOCABULARY 15.

To write,
 To marry, (of a female,)

scribēre
 nūbēre

(*scribe*.)
 (*nuptials*)^u

^uThis word properly means 'to veil'; hence 'to put on a bridal veil'; 'to marry'. It governs the *dative*, as meaning 'to veil for a person.'

To pluck ; to card ; to carp at,	carpère.
Wool,	lanæ.
Flower,	flor-is
Grape,	uvæ.
Whole,	{ totus : with G. totius ; D. totū
Letter,	{ See name, Appendix, 8, 10.
	epistōla (epistolary.)

a. Nubere 'to marry' is followed by the *dative*, not by the *accusative*.

Δ. A case of *suus* must be construed { his, her, its, their ; (or)
his own, her own, its own, their own ;
according as the nominative is a 'he,'
a 'she,' an 'it,' or a 'they.'

He wrote it { manu suâ { with his own hand.
She wrote it { manu suâ { with her own hand.

Exercise 17.

78. The boy was writing a letter. The girl wrote a letter. The slave had written a letter. (It) is easy (60, n) to write a letter. The girl will marry Caius. The girl was carding wool. It is the duty⁷ of a Christian to observe the laws of his country. The girl had plucked a flower. The boy will pluck the grape. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter.*

Sapientis est virtutem^v magni æstimâre. Epistolam Romæ scripsit. Facile est lanam carpère. Quantum habet voluptâtis industria ! Puella epistolam suâ manu scripsit. Caius epistolam suâ manu scribēbat.

Lesson 18.

Terminations of the third plural.

79. The *third plural* of a verb may be got from the *third singular* by changing *t* into *nt*.

(a) But this rule does not hold good of 'it,' which must be changed thus :

it' must be changed { in the *fourth conj.* into *iunt*.
in the perfect into . . . *ērunt*.
in 'erit' into *int*.
in other cases into . . . *unt*.†

* In what case is time *how-long* put ? (See p. 34, note t.)

^v From *virtus*.

† Thus, sepel-it, sepel-iunt.
stet-it, stet-ērunt.
stet-erit, stet-erint.
reg-it, reg-unt.

Exercise 18.

80. Translate the following.

- (1) Amat, amant : monet, monent : regit, regunt : audit, audiunt : amavā, amavērunt.
 (2) Find the *third person plural* corresponding to each of the following forms :
 Amābat ; monābit ; regit ; rexērit ; audiat ; plorabit ; rexit, (*perf.* ; clamavērit, clamabit ; scripsit, audivit.

(3) Turn into Latin :

They will command. They have walked in the garden. They have written a letter. They were praising the faithful slave. They had praised the slave's fidelity. They will have sung. They will fear the lion. They will have chastised the slave. They will pull down the avaricious man's house. They will value money at a low price. Wisdom has much pleasure. They will wrong nobody. They have wronged nobody. It is the duty⁷ of a Christian to avoid avarice. They will appease the girl's anger. They were writing letters.

Lesson 19.

81. Plural terminations of substantives and adjectives :

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Nom.	æ,	i,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.
Gen.	ārum,	ōrum,	um,	} uum,	} ērum.
			or ium,*		

82. VOCABULARY 16.

To fall down,	de-cid-ēre	(the deciduus cypress.)
Autumn,	auctumnus, G. i.	
The country,	rus, w G. rūris	(rural pleasures.)
To fly (out),	e-vōl-āre	(volatile : e out, volāre fly.)
From ; out of	ex, governing the <i>ablative</i> .	
In,	in, governing the <i>abl.</i>	
City	urbs, G. urbis	(urbanity.) ^z

Determine by the Table, given at page 24, the *genders* of *soles*, *auctumnus*, *rūs*, *urbs*.

✂ 'In,' when it means 'into,' governs the accusative.

* Um is to be used when you are not told to put *ferm*.

w *Patria* is the country of which we are citizens ; *rus* is 'the country,' as opposed to 'the town.

z Meaning city politeness, as opposed to 'rustic coarseness.'

Exercise 19.

83. The husbandmen are building a wall. The boys will show the road. Christians will not fear death. The citizens will pull down Sulla's house. Wise (men) value true greatness of mind *very highly*.³ The unlearned value wisdom at-a-low-price. My friends will not disregard my sorrow. The leaves fall down *in autumn*.¹² The slaves will avenge the death of their master. The slaves will show the gardens. They will appease the anger of the husbandmen with a gift.

Impii mortem timēbunt. *Christiāni est*⁷ pecuniam parvi aestimāre.³ Fidem suam invitā⁵ serv-av-ērunt. Rūs⁷ ex urbe evolābunt. *Invitus*⁵ domi (168) manēbat. Puērū in urbe sepel-iv-ērunt. Patres filios suos docuērunt. Puellā clamavērunt. Puēri vulpem non timēbunt.

Lesson 20.

On finding the nominative of the third declension from any other case.

84. The most common way of all is given in the following Rule :

(1) Find the *root*,² and add *s* to it.

- a) For *cs*, *gs*, you must write *z* : and if a *t* sound¹ or *r* stand before *s*, throw it away.
- b) If the letters before *s* are *nt*, sometimes *t* only is thrown away. sometimes both consonan.^s
- c) Besides this a *short i* in the last syllable should be changed into *e*.

(2) Another way is to throw away the *last letter* of the root.

- a) This applies principally to *n*, (sometimes to *r*, *l*.)
- b) An *i* before *n* should be changed into *e*, as *consuetudin-em* (consuetudo) consuetudo.

⁷ Into the country, by a rule to be given presently.

³ Sometimes the root is itself the nominative.

¹² That is, *t* or *d*.

- (3) A third way is to add *is*, *es*, or (for *neuters*) *e* to the root.
- (4) Sometimes 'ĕr,' 'ōr,' as the last letters of a root, should be changed into 'ūs;' and 'it' into 'ut.'^b

35. VOCABULARY 17.

	Root.	Nom.	
A flock,	grĕg	grĕx, m.	(greg-arious.)
A shrub,	frutic	frutex, f.	
A state,	civitat	civitas, f.	
An elephant,	elephant	elĕphas, m.	
Custom,	consuetudin	consuetudo, f.	
Honey,	mel	mel, n.	(melli-fluous.)
Side,	lātĕr	latus, n.	(lateral.)
Head,	capit	caput, n.	(capital.)
Body,	corpōr	corpus, n.	(corporal.)
Cloud,	nūb	nubes, f.	

Exercise 20.

86. The boys will not fear the elephant. The slave will show the shrub. Balbus had praised my custom. He feels a pain in his side, (*say*, of his side.) The boy will feel a pain in his head, (*say*, of his head.) The lion will not fear the elephant. The slave had shown the shrub in his master's garden. He will retain his father's custom. The state will observe its laws. The husbandman had shown his flocks. He will laugh-at the flock of unlearned men. My father feared the cloud.

Caius leges civitātis violavĕrit. Christiani est' nemīnem violare. Servus mortui elephantis corpus puero monstrābat. Puella epistolam suā manu scripsit. Facile est lanam carpĕre. Biennium Carthagīne manēbunt. Domīni servos fidēles vindicavĕrant. Dominōrum est' fidēles servos laudāre. Patris est filium suum docĕre. Figūræ nihī⁴ habent stabilitatis. Hieme ursi in antro dormiunt. Biennium Romæ manēbit. Chris-

^b EXAMPLES.—From *ped-es* we get *ped-s=pes*, [by (1) *a* ;] from *frutic-is*, *fruties=frutex=frutex* : *civitāt-em*, *civitat-s*, *civitas* : *animant-em*, *animant-s*, *animans* : *elĕphant-is*, *elĕphant-s*, *elĕphas*, [(1) *b*.] By (2) *longitudin-em*, *longitudi*, *longitudo* : *farris*, *farr*, *far* : *felle*, *fell*, *fel*. By (3) *nub-em*, *nub-es* ; *ret-i*, *ret-a*. By (4) *latĕr-is*, *latūs*, *corpōr-is*, *corpūs* ; *capit-is*, *capit*.

tianus neminem violabit. Fidēles servi dominum suum vindicabunt.

Lesson 21.

87. The *Imperative* may be got from the *infinitive* by throwing away *re*, (*amā, monē, regē, audī.*)

88. 'Not' with *imperatives* is *nē*,

A 'non' is hateful then to see.

Crabrōnes *nē* irrita.

Hornets do-not irritate. (Do not irritate hornets.)

89. VOCABULARY 18.

It is,
Wasp,
To irritate,
Hornet,
Never,
Useful, profitable,

est.
vespa.
irritāre.
crabr-ō, ōnis.
nunquam.
ūtil-is

(utility.)

Exercise 21.

[The 'do' before 'not' is only the *auxiliary* verb belonging to the following verb: thus, "do not shut" is the same as "shut not."]

90. Do not irritate wasps. He has *unwillingly* irritated a wasp. The boys will irritate the wasps. Do not pull-down the house. Do not chastise the slave. The boys will lose *some time*.⁴ The figure will have *no stability*.⁴ Do not break your word. Wise (men) will condemn avarice. The boys will hear a voice. Do not shut the gates of the city. Do not irritate your master. The boy will fear the hornet. The hornets will irritate the fox.

[Oss. The 'do' of the *imperative* must be put before 'not;' just as if 'nē' were to be translated 'do not.']

Patriæ tuæ leges *nē* violā. Veram animi* magnitudinem laudābunt. *Christiāni est*⁷ fidem suam servāre.

* Observe the place of the governed genitive, between the adjective and substantive.

Turpe est, patriæ suæ leges violāre. Poëtas nē irrita. *Christiani est*⁷ neminem irritare. Invitus saltavērat. Portas urbis *invitus* claudēbat. *Invitus* peccavit. Humanum est peccare. Ne pecca. Nunquam est utile peccare.

Lesson 22.

On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound, (in *c*, *g*, or *qu*.)

91. The common way is, to add *s* to the root of the present ; remembering that,

Any *k* sound with *s* =^c *x*, [that is, for *cs*, *gs*, or *qus*, write *x*.]

Thus from *cing-ère*, *tæg-ère*, *dïc-ère* *cöqu-ère*,^d we get for the roots of the perfect,

(cing-s)	(teg-s)	(dïc-s)	(coqu-s)
ci ^{az} ,	te ^z ,	di ^z ,	co ^z .

92. VOCABULARY 19.

Attack,	oppugnāre.	
Greatest,	{ summus; properly <i>highest</i> , but the general word for <i>greatest</i> , when <i>qualities</i> are spoken of.	
To surround,	cing-ère	(cincture.)
To cover,	tæg-ère	(pro- <i>tect</i> .)
To say,	dïc-ère	(dic- <i>tion</i> .)
To cook ; bake ; ripen,	cöqu-ère	(de-co <i>ction</i> .)
Fault,	culpa	(culp- <i>able</i> .)
Lie,	mendācium	(mend- <i>acious</i> .)
Cloak,	pallium	{ (to <i>palliate</i> an offence : i. e. to cloak it.)
Food,	cibus.	
The sun,	sol, sol-is, m.	(the solar rays.)
To fill,	complēre	(com- <i>plement</i> of men.)
All,	{ omnis : cunctus, (the latter word means 'all taken to- gether'.)	
To illuminate,	illustrāre	(illu- <i>strate</i>
Light,	lux, lûc-is	(luc- <i>id</i> .)
River,	{ flûmen, flumîn-is. What <i>gen- der</i> ? [See page 24, g.]	
Assumed-appearance ; pretence,	{ simulatio, G. simulatiônis	(dis- <i>simulation</i> .)
Whole,	{ totus, a, um : but G. <i>totius</i> , D. toti. In other cases, regular. See Appendix, 10.	

^c This mark means 'equals,' or, "is the same as."

^d Qu = kw ; pronounce cokwère.

93. Sol cuncta suâ luce illustrat.
The sun all (things) with his light illuminates

94. *ſ* 'Thing,' 'things,' are often untranslated: the adjective must then be put in the neuter.

Exercise 22.

95. He surrounds his head with a garland. He had surrounded the city with a wall. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. The boy had said nothing. The girl had cooked the food. Do not cover (your) fault with a lie. The slave has said many (things.) The sun fills all (things) with its light. The assumed-appearance of folly covered great wisdom. It is the business⁷ of the slave to cook the food for his master. It is never useful to lose time. How much⁴ pleasure has he had?

Sol *cuncta* suâ luce illustravêrat. Christiân⁷ non est, mendacio culpam tegere. Puêri dixêrunt. Flumen urbem cingit. *Totam hiêm¹²⁾* ursus in antro dormiêbat. Amicus amici corpus suo pallio tegêbat. Summam prudentiam simulatione stultitiæ texêrat. Hannibal Saguntum oppugnabat. Turpe est peccare. Bientium Romæ manebunt. Carthagine *inviti* manêbant.*

Lesson 23.

On finding the root of the perfect for verbs whose root ends in a t sound, (d or t.)

96. Here too the root of the perfect is generally got from the root of the present by adding *s*.

The *t* sound must be thrown away before this *s*, and the preceding vowel, *if short*, made long.

Claud-o,	claud-s,	<i>claus.</i>
Divid-o,	divid-s,	<i>divis.</i>

* These numerals, when followed by a curve, refer to the Questions after the Lessons.

97. The remaining cases of the plural.

In the plur. the *dative* and *ablative* are alike.

	1. 2.	3. 4.	5.	
Dat. }	is,	ibūs,	ēbūs.	(In the <i>fourth</i> it is some-
Abl. }				times ūbus.)

98. VOCABULARY 20.

To divide,	divid-āre.	
Part,	pars, partis. Gender? (p. 24, g.)	
Three,	{ tres, neut. tria, (declined regularly : gen. ium.)	
A man,	{ vir,* G. viri, (declined like a noun of second.)	
To accuse,	accūsāre.	
Theft,	furtum	(furtive.)
Bribery,	ambītus, G. ūs.	
To acquit,	absolvēre	(absolute ; absolutum.)
Treachery,	proditio, G. ōnis.	
To death,	may be translated by <i>capitis</i> , ('of the head.')	
Into,	in, with the accusative.	
Because,	quā.	
Always,	semper.	

99.	Puer	eximiā	pulchritudine.
	A boy	of singular	beauty.
	Caium	proditionis*	accūsant.
	Caius	of treachery	they accuse.

100. Oss. Where we describe a person or thing by a substantive and adjective governed by 'of,' the Romans used either the *genitive* or the *ablative*.

101. (Eng.) To condemn a person to death.
(Lat.) To condemn a person of the head,^f (*capitis*.)

Exercise 23.


102. The slave has shut the gates of the city. Balbus had divided all (the things) into three parts. He

* *Homo*, G. *hominis*, and *vir* are both 'man,' but *homo* is 'man' as opposed to other animals; that is, 'a human being;' whereas '*vir*' is 'man' as opposed to 'woman.'

When '*men*' means 'human beings,' '*men*' generally, (including both sexes.) it should be translated by *homines*.

When '*man*' is used contemptuously, it should also be translated by '*homo*' because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a human being.

When '*man*' is used respectfully, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vir*, because *man* is superior to *woman*.

*  Verbs of accusing, acquitting, and condemning, take a *genitive* of the charge.

As transitive verbs they, of course, take an accusative of the person accused.

^f We may suppose that it was originally 'to condemn a person to the loss of the head,' or rather 'to a punishment of the head.'

will divide all (*neut. plur.*) into three parts with his (own) hand. Do *not* divide the food. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. The sun was illuminating (all) things with his light. He will accuse Balbus of theft. They have written the letters with their own hands. The queen was writing a letter with her own hand. He had covered his face with a cloak. It is always disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romæ¹¹⁾ vivit. Balbum ambītūs accusavērant. *Quantum cibi*⁴ amittunt! Balbum proditionis absolvent. Balbum capītis damnābunt. Hiēme^{9, b)} ursi in antris dormiunt. Triennium^{9, c)} Romæ manēbit. Caium ne accūsa. Invitus Caium accusavit. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavērat. Portas urbis clausērat. Balbi est, omnia in tres partes dividēre. Facīle est saltare. Nunquam utile est peccare, quia semper est turpe.

Lesson 24.

Root of the perfect with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.

103. Other verbs form the root of the perfect by *lengthening* the *vowel* of the present: as *ēd-ere*, *ēd*.

104. If the vowel of the present is *ā*, the root of the perf. will have *ē*. Thus *cāp-ere*, *cēp*.

105. Several of these verbs drop an *n* or *m* before the final mute

Thus frang-ēre, frāg, frēg.	(break.)
rump-ēre, rup, rūp.	(burst; break through.)
vinc-ēre, vic, vīc.	(conquer.)

106. VOCABULARY 21.

Buy,	ēm-ēre, r. ēm
Take,	cāp-ere, r. cēp.
Receive	
Arm,	brāchium.

(pre-emption.)

Treaty	<i>fœdër</i> , nom. <i>fœd-ïs</i> , (neut.,) by 84, 4.	(com- <i>fœder-ate</i> .)
Chain,	<i>vincälum</i> .	
Prison,	<i>carcer</i> , (nom. <i>carcer</i> , 94.)	(in- <i>carcer-ate</i> .)
Gaul,	<i>Gallus</i> .	
Enemy	<i>hostis</i> , G. <i>hostis</i>	<i>hostile</i> .)
From,	(after <i>receive</i> , <i>capture</i> ,) ex with <i>abl</i>	

Exercise 24.

107. Caius had broken his arm. The Gauls had broken the treaty. They had broken-through the treaty. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. Cæsar conquered the Gauls. It is not easy to conquer the Gauls. He had appeased Balbus with the greatest prudence. They will break-through their chains. They had broken through the chains of their prison. It is easy to break (one's) arm. They are losing much⁴ money. He was losing much pleasure. They will condemn Balbus to death. He had conquered his enemies. Balbus has broken his arm at Rome.

Nunquam utile est *fœdus* rumpere. Nunquam utile est fidem fallere, quia semper est turpe. Facile est puerorum animos donis placare. Turpe est *fœdera* negligere. Galli negligebant *fœdera*. Utile est omnibus laborare. Nemo semper laborat. Caius brachium suum Carthagine frêgerat. Culpas suas simulatione virtutis textit. Quantum⁴ mellis emêrunt! Quantum voluptatis ceperunt! Multum voluptatis ex meo dolore cêperant.

Lesson 25.

108. VOCABULARY 22.

Color,	color, G. <i>colôr-is</i> . Gender f	
An estate,	<i>fundus</i> .	
Large,	<i>grandis</i> , <i>grandis</i> , <i>granda</i> .	
Immense ; huge,	<i>ingens</i> , G. <i>ingent-is</i>	
Conquered,	<i>victus</i> , a, um	(victory, &c.)
To dwell,	<i>habitâre</i>	(habitation.)
To reign,	<i>regnâre</i> .	
Sardis, or Sardes,	<i>Sardis</i> , (a plural noun,) G. <i>Sardium</i> , &c	
Thebes,	<i>Thêbæ</i> , G. <i>Thêbærum</i> : plur. noun.	
Victory,	<i>victôria</i> .	

Nightingale,
Much,
To flourish
Often,
Peace,

Iusculnia.
multus
florere, r. s. flora
sæpe.
pax, pācis

(pacificu.)

109. Spem pretio non emo.
Hope for a price not do I buy.

110. ¶ After a verb of *buying*, 'for' may be considered a sign of the ablative.

That is to say, 'for' is to be untranslated; and the noun that expresses the price, put in the ablative.

Exercise 25.

[In what case is the price for which put?]

111. He has bought the estate for a large sum-of-money. *The conquered* often buy peace for an immense sum of money. He had dwelt *many years at Athens*.¹¹⁾ Cræsus reigned at *Sardis*. He has bought a victory with^b much blood. He will have dwelt *many years*¹²⁾ at *Rome*. The nightingale changes (her) color in the autumn.¹²⁾ It is impious, not to love (one's) parents. Caius had broken his arm. Cæsar has conquered the Gauls.

[When is the place where put in the gen.? when in the abl. ?]

Thebis Pindārus floruit. *Multos annos* Romæ habitavērant. Impium est, leges patriæ violāre. *Invītus* legem violāvit. *Invīti* leges violavissent. *Balbus* capitis damnāvērunt. *Biennium* Romæ habitabunt. *Patriæ* tuæ leges ne violā. *Caius* proditionis accusabunt.

Lesson 26.

112. Since, in the *third* conjugation, both the *present* and the *perfect* have their third person in 'it,' it is well to learn how to distinguish a third person of the *perfect* from a third person of the *present*.

^a Ops. R means 'root of present;' and r. 'root of perfect.'

^b That is, 'for' much blood.

113. a) If 'it' has *s* or *x* before it, the tense is the perfect.
 b) If 'it' has *n* or *v* before it, and the word is of more than two syllables, the tense is very likely to be the perfect.¹
 c) If the first two consonants of the root are the same, the tense is the perfect.
 (Thus 'tetendit,' 'momordit,' is the perfect.)
 d) If the root is of one syllable, and has a *long vowel*, the tense is very often the perfect.

114. VOCABULARY 23.

Some verbs that form root of perfect by prefixing a syllable, which is called reduplication, that is *redoubling*.

Bite,	mord-ère, r. mōmord	(re-morae.)
Hang, (neut.),	pend-ère, r. pēpend	(sus-pense.)
Shear, shave,	tond-ère, r. tōtond	(tonsure.)
<hr/>		
Shoulder,	humērus, G. l.	
Beard,	barba	(barber.)
Sheep,	ovis, G. ovis.	
Flay,	de-glūb-ère, (see 75.)	
Shepherd,	past-or, G. ōris	(pastor.)
Wolf,	lūpus, G. l.	
From,	ab, governing the ablative.	

Exercise 26.

115. The wolf had bitten the sheep. The shepherd will shear his sheep. A shepherd does not shear his sheep in the winter. The wolves have bitten my dog. Caius will shave (his) beard. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. The dog has bitten the wolf. They wrote the letter at Carthage. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. The girls will walk in the garden. The queen was walking through the city. They have *unwillingly* offended-against the laws of their country.

Boni pastōris⁷ est tondere oves, non deglubere. Sagittæ ab humero pependērunt. Malus pastor deglupsit oves, non totondit. Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. Boni canis non est,⁷ oves mordere. Tonde oves; ne deglūbe. Servus portas urbis clausērit. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. Lusciniaē colōrem mutabunt. Auctumno lusciniæ colorem suum mutavērunt.

¹ This is certain, in the case of *av-it*, *iv-it* But *arguit*, *congruit*, *imbuat*, *statuit* &c., are of the present.

Lesson 27.

116. Personal Pronouns.*

	N.	G.	D.	Ac.Ab.	N.A.	G.	D.Abl
<i>I,</i>	ēgo,	mei,	mihl,	nē,	nōs,	nostrum <i>or</i> nostri,	nōbīs,
<i>Thou,</i>	tū	tui,	tibi,	tē,	vōs,	vestrum <i>or</i> vestri,	vōbīs.
<i>Him, her, it,</i>	{ (none)				{ (Plural the same as the singular.)		
<i>Them,¹</i>	sui,	sibi,	eī,				

Myself; thyself; himself, herself, itself; themselves, are also expressed (respectively) by these pronouns.

117. 'He gave *him* a book,' means 'he gave a book to *him*.'

'He is like *him*,' — 'he is like to *him*.'

118. ¶ After verbs of *giving, paying, costing, &c.*, put in '*to*' before one of the *accusatives*, and translate it by the *dative*.

119. ¶ Adjectives of *likeness* take the *dative*^m after them.

This means, that what seems in English the *accusative* after '*like*, must be translated into Latin by the *dative*.

120. VOCABULARY 24.

	R.	I. (r means root of perfect.)	
To give,	{ d-äre, dēd.	This verb has a in the last syll. but one.)	
To sell,	vend-äre, vendid.		
To stand; cost,	st-äre, stēt		(station.)
Prison,	carr-er, G. äris		(incarcerate.)
Gold,	aurum.		
Silver,	argentum.		
Blood,	sanguis, sanguin-is, mas.		(sanguinary.)
Roman,	Romānus.		
Beast,	{ bellua, (of large beasts; elephants,		
Chain,	{ whales, &c.)		
	vinculum.		

121. Isocrātes orātorⁿ unam orationem
Isocrates the orator one oration
 viginti talentis vendidit.
for twenty talents sold.

(The orator Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents.)

* See Accidence, p. 144.

¹ Him, her, it, them, are not translated by *sui*, &c., unless they stand for the same person or thing that the *nominative* (or other *principal noun*) of the sentence stands for.

^m But often the *genitive*. 'Similis mei,' means, he is like me in character; 'similis mihi,' that he is like me in face.

ⁿ When two nouns are spoken of the same thing, the second is put in the same case as the first.

The second is then said to be '*in apposition*' to the first.—Hence '*apposition*' is when the second noun is a *name*, or *title*, or *description* of the preceding one.

Exercise 27.

122. The Hippotāmus,^o a great beast, dwells in the Nile.^p Caius, a wicked *man*, (98 note,) will sell his country for gold. He has sold his country for gold. *How much*^q silver had he given his slave? Victory cost the Romans (117) much blood.^q Do not sell your honor for gold. It is *the part*^r of a Christian to *think little of*^s gold and silver. Balbus had burst the chains of his prison. It is the part of a Christian to praise the good.

Improbōrum est,^r patriam auro vendēre. Anīmus carcēris sui vincūla rumpēbat. Fidem suam auro vendidērunt. Turpe est, fidem suam auro vendēre. *Quantum* tibi *argenti*^t dedērat?^u Pastor ovem tondēbat. Agricōla labōrem finivērat.

Lesson 28.

Tenses of the verb 'esse,' to be.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
123. Present,	est,	sunt.
Imperfect,	ērāt.	
Future,	ērīt,	erunt.

Root of perfect *fu*; and therefore the tenses with root of perfect formed regularly, *fuit*, *fuerat*, *fuērīt*, *fuisse*.

124. The verb '*to be*' takes a nominative (of either a *substantive* or an *adjective*) after it.

☞ An adjective *after* the verb agrees with the nominative *before* the verb.

^o Hippopotāmus.

^p Nilus.

^q Remember that the *blood* was the *price* paid.

^r Remember that in a *question*, the auxiliary verb stands before the nominative case.

125. VOCABULARY 25.

Happy,	{ felix, ^r G. felic-is	(felicity.)
	{ beatus	(the beatitudes.)
Contented,	contentus, ^s governs the <i>abl.</i>	
Worthy,	dignus, ^s governs <i>abl.</i>	(dignity.)
Unworthy,	indignus, ^s governs <i>abl.</i>	(indignity.)
Endued,	præditus, ^s	
Relying on,	fretus, ^s	
Strength,	virtus, G. virium, &c. Plural of <i>vis</i> .	
A little,	parvum, <i>neut. adj.</i> used as a substantive	
Free,	liber, ^s libera, liberum	(liberty.)
Never,	nunquam.	

126. Terra est rotunda.

The earth is round.

(Rotunda nom. fem. to agree with terra.)

Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt.

Very many stars suns are (are suns.)

Exercise 28.

127. No-one is always happy. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. Caius, a man (98) endued with the greatest virtue, praised my fidelity. Caius is not free from blame. Balbus, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*⁴ (thing.) Balbus, relying on his strength, will burst the chains of his prison. It is unworthy of a Christian to praise the bad. The slaves are not free from blame. Christians are contented with a little. The boys have covered their faults with lies.

127.* (What does *luce* come from?—See 84, (1) a.)

Virtus parvo contenta est. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! Caius, homo vitâ indignus, patriam auro vendidit. Patris mei servus laude dignus est Improborum est⁷ malos laudare. Tarquinius Romæ regnavit. Arbor florebat. Caium boni omnes laudabant. Balbus multâ laude florebat.

^r *Beatus* relates more to true, inward happiness than *felix*, which means successful in one's undertakings, &c.

^s *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *contentus*, *fretus*, *liber*, &c., govern the ablative.

That is, the *abl.* follows them without a preposition so that the English 'with, from,' &c., must not be translated after them.

Lesson 29.

128. ¶ The compounds of *esse* (except *posse*) govern the dative.

129. VOCABULARY 26.

(Compounds of *esse*; governing the dative.)

To do good; to be serviceable,	prod-esse, [†] profu.
To be prejudicial,	ob-esse, [†] obfu.
To be engaged in,	inter-esse, [†] interfu.
Very many,	plurimi, æ, a, (plural.)
As many as possible,	quam ^u plurimi, æ, a.
The greatest possible,	quam ^u maximus, a, um.
he can, or could, }	
To raise (forces),	compārāre,
Forces,	copiæ, ārum, plur.
State,	civitas, G, itātis.
Battle,	prælium.
Anger,	ira.
Human,	humānus.
Race,	gēnūs, G. genēr-is. What gender? (generic.)
Becomes,	fit, followed by the nominative.

Exercise 29.

130. Balbus was engaged in the battle. *It is the part of a Christian*⁷ to do-good to *as many as possible*. Cæsar raises the *greatest forces he can*. Anger has cost the human race much blood. Anger has often been prejudicial to states. Very-many men are unworthy of life. The Christian will do-good to *as many as possible*. Very-many cities were raising forces. Many states, relying on their strength, are raising forces. They condemned Caius, a man unworthy of life. The conquered will dwell at Sardes. Peace cost me a great sum-of-money. The son will avenge his father's blood.

Cæsar *quam maximas* copias comparaverat. Caius, vir summo ingenio præditus, Romæ habitat. Servus meus prælio interfuit. Fides plurimis profuit. Nemo fit casu bonus. Christianorum est⁷ avaritiam damnare. Caius multis præliis interfuerat.

[†] These forms follow the conjugation of *esse* exactly: but *prodesse* drops its *d* before these tenses of *esse* that begin with a consonant. Thus *pro-sunt*: not *prod-sunt*.

^u How *quam* gives the meaning of '*as possible*' to a superlative, is explained in the '*Differences of Idiom*,' number 9.

Lesson 30.

Subjunctive Verb.

131.	1.	2.	3.	4.	} The third plural is formed regularly from all these forms by the insertion of an <i>s</i> before the <i>t</i>
PRESENT (R.)*	ēt,	ēāt,	āt,	īāt.	
IMPERFECT (R.)	ārēt,	ērēt,	ērēt,	īrēt.*	
Perfect (r.)*	ērīt.				
Pluperfect (r.)	issēt.				

132. The *subjunctive present* in a principal sentence is an *imperative*, or expresses a *wish*.

Hence, after *ut* (*that*) the *subjunctive present* is to be rendered, '*he, &c., may —*;' without *ut*, it must be '*let him —, &c.,*' or '*may he —, &c.*'

133. The *subjunctive present* used as an *imperative*, takes *nē* for '*not*,' (*ne putet, do not let him think.*)

Exercise 30.

134. Write down in Latin: That^w he may shut. He would have shut. He would sleep. That he might irritate. That he may hear. That he may break. He may have broken. He would have burst. He would have divided.

Translate: Floreat. Ut florēret. Floruisset. Profuisset. Irritet. Ut irritet. Irritavisset. Divisisset. Ut cingēret. Cingat. Scribat. Ut scribat. Scripisset. Ut scribēret. Plācet pueri animum. Ut filium suum sepeliret. Sepeliāt filium. Iram meam placavissent. Servus nē claudat portas. Docet pueros, ut sapēre discant.

Lesson 31.

135. ☞ The infinitive in English often expresses a *purpose*: but the infinitive in Latin *never* does.

* R. means with root of present.

r. ——— root of perfect.

* Obs. The 3d sing. of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed from the infinitive by adding *t*

^w 'Ut' is 'that.'

- (Eng.) I am come to see you.
 (Lat.) I am come that I may see you.
 (Eng.) I came to see you.
 (Lat.) I came that I might see you.

136. ¶ The English infin. expressing a *purpose* may be translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive.

137. The *imperfect* subjunctive must be used, when the verb is of a *past* tense ;^x the *present* follows the other tenses.

138. ¶ The 'perfect with have' (or 'perfect definite,' which denotes that something has been done in a still present period of time) is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.

Obs. Neuter verbs of motion form their perfect definite act. with 'am :' so that 'He is come' = 'He has come,' and is followed by *pres. subjunctive*.^y

139. VOCABULARY 27.

	R.	r.	
To eat,	ēd-ēre,	ēd (103)	(edible.)
To come,	vēn ire,	vēn (103)	(ad-vent.)
To learn,	disc-ēre,	ādic,* (113, c.)	
To read,	lēg-ere, lēg, (103.)		

- 140 (1) Vēnit ut portas claudat.
 He is coming that the gates he may shut.
 (He is coming to shut the gates.)
 (2) Vēnit ut portas clauderet.
 He came that the gates he might shut
 (He came to shut the gates.)
 (3) Vēnit ut portas claudat.
 He is come that the gates he may shut.
 (He is come to shut the gates.)

Exercise 31.

[What tense is 'he was come?' 138, z.]

141. He will come to surround the boy's head with a garland. He was come to surround the girl's head with a garland. He came to irritate the wasps. They

^x That is, of the *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect*.

^y It is just so in English :

I write, or am writing,	} that I may, &c.
I shall write,	
I have written,	
I was writing,	} that I might, &c
I wrote,	
I had written,	

^z So too 'was come' is the pluperf.

* The syllable prefixed is called a *reduplication*

were come to pull-down Sulla's house. He was come to give me an estate. They had come to condemn me to death.⁸ Do not shut the gate. He was come to raise the greatest forces he could.⁹ Let the girls sing. Let the boys learn^a to read. The boy has learned to play.

[Render *ut* and the subjunctive by the infinitive.]

Veniat servus, *ut* portas urbis claudat. Vēnit,^b *ut* quam maximas⁹ copias compāret. Lēgit, *ut* discat. Edit, *ut* vivat. Edit, *ut* vivēret. Non edunt, *ut* vivant; sed vivunt, *ut* edant. Romæ plurimi vivunt, *ut* edant. Veniat Caius, *ut* epistolam suâ manu scribat. Cantet puella Ludant pueri. Vēnerat Caius, *ut* Balbi animum donis placaret. Quiescant servi. Nemo quiescat. Vēnit, *ut* me audiat. Venerunt, *ut* me audiant. Venerunt, *ut* te audirent. Edunt, *ut* vitam conservent.

Lesson 32.

142. After 'such,' 'so,' 'of such a kind,' &c., 'that' must be translated by '*ut*,' and the verb after 'that' must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin, though in English it is in the *indicative*.

143. VOCABULARY 28.

So great,	tantus.	
Mountain,	mons, mont-is, mas.	
Highest,	summus	(summtt.)
Top of,	summus,	} in agreement with their subst.
Middle, or midst of,	medius,	
Snow	nix, niv-is. Gender ?	
Alps,	Alpes, Alpium, &c.	
Cold,	frig-ūs, ōris. Gender ?	(frigid.)
Not-yet,	nondum.	
Fish,	piscis, G. pisc-is, mas.	(piscatory.)
Pavement,	pavimentum.	
Wine,	vinum	(vinous fermentation.)
Preserve,	conservare	(conservative.)
To swim,	nātare.	
To melt,	liquesce-ŕe, licu	(liquid.)

^a Disco is followed by the infinitive, (not by *ut* with the subjunctive.)

^b Obs. When the present subjunctive follows a perfect, the perfect must be translated by 'has,' or, if it is a verb of motion, by 'is' because the use of the present proves it to be the perfect definite. See 137.

144. In summis Alpibus tantum est frigus,
 On the top of the Alps so great is the cold,
 ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.
that the snow there never melts.

145. (Eng.) On the top of the mountain.
 (Lat.) On the mountain highest. (In *summo monte*.)
 (Eng.) In the middle (or midst) of the waters.
 (Lat.) In the middle waters. (In *mediis aquis*.)

Exercise 32.

146. On the top of the mountain¹ the snow never melts. On the top of the Alps the snows never melt. The cold is so-great, that the snow is not-yet melted.^c The fish is swimming in the middle of the water. Boys swim on the top of the waters. The pavement is swimming with wine. Let the slave come.^d He was eating, to preserve his life. He will swim, to preserve his life. May the snows melt! The boy is singing on the top of the oak. The boys will dance on the top of the mountain.

Obs. The *subjunctive* after *ut* must be rendered by the indicative, when a *tantus* stands in the former clause.

In *summis montibus* tantum erat frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. Venit, ut patriam auro vendat. Improbī homīnes patriam auro vendiderunt. In summo monte tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nondum licuerit.^e Tanta est pueri industria, ut multa discat. Nix est candida. Venit, ut patriæ suæ leges violaret. Avis in *summa* arbore cantabat.

Lesson 33.

147. Subjunctive of *esse*.

Present, sit.—Imperfect, esset. (Fuërit, fuisset, regular from *fu*.)

^c 'Is melted,' like 'is come,' is the *perf. active*.

^d The *third person* of the *present subjunctive* is used as an *imperative*.

^e What was said of the *present* and *imperfect subjunctive*, may be extended to the *perfect* and *pluperfect*.

^f The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the *past tenses*.

148. The verb 'can,' 'am able,' is made up of an old adjective 'potis,' meaning 'able,' and the verb 'to be;' but the two words were run together into *one* with some change.

149. To get the third persons of 'to be able' from 'to be.'
 3 Place *pot* before the third persons of *to be*; throwing away the *f* from those that begin with that letter; and change *t* into *s* before another *s*, shortening *potess* into *poss*. We thus get, (from the forms in 123,) *potest*, *possunt*: *poterat*: *poterit*, *poterunt*: and *potu* (for *potu*) for the root of the perfect.

The subjunctive will be *possit*, *posset*, &c. Infin. *posse*.

150. Some verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound, throw away the *k* sound before *s*.

sparg-ĕre, spars.
 merg-ĕre, mers.

151. VOCABULARY 29.

Nest,	nĭdus.		
Bird,	ĕvis, G. avis		(aviary.)
Seed,	sĕmen, semĭnis	Gender ?	(disseminate.)
Dangerous,	pericūl-ŏsus.*		
Danger,	pericūlum		(peril.)
Victim,	victimā.		
Altar,	ār.		
Sprinkle,	adspargo, r. adspers.		
Priest,	sacerdo-s, ŏtis		(sacerdotal.)
	R. r.		
To plunge into, (trans.,)	immerg-ĕre, immers		(immerse.)
Scatter,	sparg-ĕre, spars.		
To build, (of a nest,)	con-stru-ĕre, con-strux†		(construct.)

152. The particles *nĕ* and *num* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun, or adverb of *place*, *time*, or *manner*, one of these particles should be put in.

Nĕ should always *follow* and be *joined to* a word. If there is a 'not' in the sentence, it should be joined to the 'non,' (nonnĕ.)

153. Nonnĕ scribit ?	Is not he writing ?
Scribitnĕ Caius ?	Is Caius writing ?
Num scribit Caius ?	Is Caius writing ? (No.)
Arare potest.	He can plough.
Potestnĕ arare ?	Can he plough ?

OBS. 'Num' is used when the answer 'no' is expected; so that 'num scribit Caius ?' means, 'Caius is not writing, is he ?'

* Adjectives in *ŏsus* mean *full of* what the substantive they are derived from denotes.

† This seems a very irregular perfect; probably the verb was *struv-ĕre* originally.

Exercise 33

When the answer 'no' is expected, it will be added thus: No
 37 The 'to' of the infin. is omitted after *can, may, might, &c.*, and *see hear, feel, bid, dare, make, &c.*

154. Does he live to eat? [No.] Does not he eat to live? The husbandman has scattered seeds. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. They *are come*³⁰ to condemn³⁰ you *to death*.⁸ Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?¹⁰ [No.] The boy's industry is so great, that he can learn all things. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? Are you shearing the sheep?

[In rendering, omit the *ad* or *num*, but make the sentence a *question*.]
 [In a *question*, the *auxiliary verb* must stand before the nominative case: and the form '*do—does*,' '*did*,' *is*' it be used for the *present* and *perfect* respectively. (The *perfect definite* must still be translated by *have, has*.)]

Caius se in flumen immersit. Galli manus in aquam immerserant. Periculōsum est, *hiēme*¹² se in flumen immergēre. Puer se in flumen immergat.³⁰ *Agricolārum est*⁷ semina auctumno^{9, b)} spargēre. Nonnē in *summis Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? Avis in *summā quercu* nidum construxerat. Scripsitnē Caius? Sacerdos victimarum sanguine aram adpersit. Num rex portas urbis suā manu claudet? Nonnē boni est pastōris⁷ tondēre oves, non deglubere?

Lesson 34.

Root of supine.

155. There are two *su-pines* in Latin: one in *um*, and another in *u*.

156. ☞ The supine in *um* follows verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose*: it must be Englished by the *present infinitive active*, (*amātum, to love*.)

⁸ Hence the verb that follows *can, could, &c.*, is in the *infinitive* mood; because "I can see," is the same as "I am able to see."

157. The supine in *u* follows some *adjectives*, and is Englished by the *present infinitive passive*.

But it may be Englished by the *infn. act.* when that gives better English.^a Both supines are *really* active: *factum* is ('for) doing: 'factu', 'in doing.'

These forms very seldom occur: but they are given in grammars and dictionaries, because two of the participles are formed from the *root of the supine*.¹

158. The root of the supine (which will be marked by *ſ*.) ends in *t*; sometimes in *s*.

159. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the *root of supine* is regularly obtained by adding

1.	2.	4.	
<i>āt</i> ,	<i>īt</i> ,	<i>īt</i> ,	to the roots of the present.
(amāt)	(monīt)	(audīt.)	

In the *third*, *t* is added to the root: but sometimes *s*, (especially to the *t* sounds.)

160. Oss. Any *p* sound before *t* is *pt*, (or *pt* = *pt*, or *bt*.)

Any *k* sound ————— *ct*, (or *ct* = *ct*, *gt*, or *gut*.)

Hence *scrib-tum*, *reg-tum*, must be written *scriptum*, *rectum*. Remember that *d*, and sometimes *g*, will be thrown away before *s*. (See 96, 150.)

161. VOCABULARY 30.

To forage, (supine,)	pabulātum.
To fetch water, (supine,)	aquātum.
To lie down,	cubītum, (sup. from <i>cubāre</i> .)
To go to bed; to go to roost,	cubītum ire.
To send,	mitt-ēre, r. mīs, (for mit-s; p. mīs) (re-mīt.,
To go,	ire. ^k
To go a hunting,	venātum ire, (venātum, sup. to hunt.)
To go away,	ab-ire, ^k r. abi.
To return,	red-ire, ^k r. redi.
Hen,	gallīna.
Evening,	vesp-er, G. ēris (vespere.)
Legion,	lēgi-o, G. ōnis. Gender?
Fourth,	quartus.
Pleasant,	jūcundus.

162. Mittit legātos pacem petītum.

He sends ambassadors peace to sue-for.

^a See 163.

¹ It would be far better to give the *root of the s spine*, than a fictitious form.

^k *Ire* is of the *fourth*, but with some irregularities: r. IV: p. It.

Indicative.			Subjunctive.	The participle, which will be wanted presently, is <i>iens</i> , G. <i>euntis</i> , &c. Gerunds, <i>eundi</i> , &c.
Pres.	it.	eant.	eat.	
Imperf	ibat.		iret.	
Fut.	ibit.			

The compounds *ab-ire*, *red-ire*, are conjugated exactly in the same way, (prefixing *ab*, *red*, to these forms,) but they generally drop *r* from the root of the *perf*. (*redi-erit*, *redi-is set*, &c.; not *redivērit*, *redivēset*.)

- 163 (Eng.) It is hard to say.
(Lat.) It is hard (in) saying, (*difficile est dicta.*)

Exercise 34.

164 The hens go to roost in the evening. The boy had gone a hunting. Cæsar has sent the fourth legion to forage. Has not Cæsar sent the fourth legion to fetch water? Are not the boys gone²⁹⁾ a hunting? Cæsar has not-yet returned to Rome.^m Cæsar had returned from Geneva to Rome. Balbus will go-away in the evening.

[Form the supine in u from aud-ire: fac-ēre, (159.)]

Nonnē cubitum eunt gallinæ vespēri? Timida avis in summā quercu nidum construēbat. Plato Tarentum vēnit. Servum Athēnas misērat. Caium Athēnas mittat.³⁰⁾ Jucundum est auditu. Difficile est factu, (163.) Nonnē sacerdōtes aram sanguine adpersērunt? Sacerdōtis est, aras omnes victimarum sanguine adspērgere. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram sanguine adspērgat.

Lesson 35.

PARTICIPLES.

Active.

1. 2. 3. 4.

165. Present (R.) ans, ens, ens, iens.

Perfect (none.)

Future (g.) ūrus.

Passive.

Perfect (g.) us.

Future (or 'participle of necessity,' R.)

¹ Hence after *hard, pleasant, &c.*, the active infinitive is to be translated by the supine in u.

²⁹ *g* After a verb of motion, 'to' is never a sign of the dative, but is to be translated by *ad*.

But '*ad*' is omitted before the names of towns and small islands.

When the place is a town or small island, the place to which is put in the accusative; the place from which, in the ablative.

1. 2. 3. 4.
andus, endus, endus, iendus.

- 165.* The participle in *as* answers to the English participle in *ing*.
The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed, en, t, &c.*
The participle in *as* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*, a crime *to be abhorred*.)
The participle in *rus* must be translated by '*about to* (write;)' or '*going to* (write).'

166. VOCABULARY 31.

R.	r.	fr.	
frang,	frēg,	fract	(for fragt.)
sparg,	spars,	spars	(for sparg;)
adspers,	adspers,	adspers	(for adspers;)
claud,	claus,	claus	(for clauds.)
immerg,	immers,	immers	(for immerga.)
rump,	rūp,	rūpt.	

Exercise^a 35.

167. Loving. Surrounding. Being surrounded.
Being broken. (A stick) to be broken. About to break. Dwelling. Living. To be dwelt in. About to dwell. Going to break. About to scatter. About to burst the chains of his prison. An altar to be surrounded with flowers. A boy to be loved. Going to disregard. Going to praise.

Immersūrus. Porta claudenda. Semīna spargenda. Agricōla sparsūrus semīna. Violatūrus legem. Claudens portas. Porta clausa. Semīna sparsa. Sacerdos aram adspersurus.

Lesson 36.

168. VOCABULARY 32.

(Words that are construed like *proper names of towns*.)

On the ground,	hāml.
At home,	dōmi, fem.
At my house,	dōmi meā, (At his own house, domi suā.)

^a First find root of supine (1) by adding *t* to *cing*, (159, 160,) and to *frag*, (see 105, 159, and 160;) (2) by adding *s* to *merg*, *sparg*, *claud*, (see 159;) and (3) from the roots of *viol-āre*, *habit-āre*, (by 159.)

On service; in the field
Home,
From home,
In the country,
Into the country,
From the country

militiæ.
dômum, (after verbs of motion.)
dômo.
rûri, *abl.* (or, *rure.*)
rûs, (*neut. acc.*)
rûre.

Both,^o (*adv.*)
Neither,
Nor,
To sing,

et; properly *and*.
neque, or nec, { *neque* is rather to be preferred
neque, or nec, } before a vowel.
cân-êre, (*r. cecin*; *p. cant.*)

169. (Eng.) Cæsar having conquered his enemies, &c.
(Lat.) Cæsar, when he had conquered his enemies, &c.
(or) Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, &c.

(c) Cæsar, quum viciisset hostes, &c.
(b) (or) Cæsar victis hostibus, &c.

- 170 A substantive and participle are said to be put *absolutely*, when they are not governed by the verb, or any other word in the sentence.

¶ In Latin, words put *absolutely* are in the *ablative*.

(This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

171. OBS. ¶ The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense.

Exercise 36.

172. Balbus having crowned^o the boy's head with a garland, went away. The slave having shut^a the gate of the city, is going to bed.^u Cæsar having conquered his enemies, (169, b,) will return to Rome. The leaves are falling down on the ground. Cæsar is remaining at his-own-house. Balbus was with me^r both at home and on-service. Balbus had lived many years in the country.

(What is *mecum* made up of?)

Balbus, quum manus in aquam immersisset, abiit.

^o Thus, instead of 'both Calus and Balbus,' the Romans said, 'and Calus and Balbus,' (*et Calus et Balbus.*)

^p Translate by 'when he had crowned.'

^q Translate by 'the gate of the city being shut.'

^r OBS. Cum, 'with,' is written after, and joined to, the *ablatives* of the personal pronouns, (*mecum, tecum, nobiscum, &c.*: not *cum me*, nor *me cum*, separately.)

Folia nondum decidērant. Puer Romam mittendus est. Balbus nec* domi nec militiæ mecum fuit. Caius rus ex urbe evolavērit. Caius nondum rure rediit. Et Cæsar et Balbus Romam rediērunt. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingēret. Sacerdos, quum aras sanguine adpersisset, abiit.

[Observe: In rendering an *ablative absolute*, the substantive must be placed first, *without a preposition*, and the participle (if the Latin participle is that of the *perf. pass.*) is to be that compounded with '*being*.'

But having so translated it, you may turn the *participle* into that of the *perf. act.* (with '*having*') governing the substantive, whenever this change improves your sentence without altering its meaning. Example: "*fracto pueri brachio*," the arm of the boy *being broken*: this is the same in meaning with, "the boy *having broken his arm*." Either form of expression may be used.]

Fracto puēri brachio, abit. Alexander, victo Dario, rediit. Avis, constructo in *summâ quercu* nido, canit. Violātis patriæ lēgibus, vitâ²⁴ indignus est. Fundo in tres partes *diviso*, redit Tarentum. Sacerdos, adpersâ sanguine arâ, abiit. Caius, ruptis vinculis, evolavit. Scriptâ epistolâ, abiit.

Lesson 37.

Gerunds.

173. The *Gerunds* in *di* are formed from the root of the present, and end in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.

(Hence they are always like the *gen.* of the *participle* in *du*.)

174. The gerund is translated by the '*participial substantive*' in '*ing*.'

✂ When what is in *form* the participle in *ing*, governs or is governed, but has nothing to agree with, it is the *participial substantive*.

* In translating two *nec*'s or *neque*'s, it is often better to borrow a '*not*' from them for the verb, and then to render them by *either—or*, instead of *neither—nor*.

Thus, 'he was with me *neither* yesterday *nor* the day before,' would become, 'he was *not* with me *either* yesterday *or* the day before'

175. The *gerund* is a *verbal substantive* of the neuter gender, but must borrow the infinitive mood for its *nominative*; it has no plural.

N.	(occidēre, <i>killing</i> .)	
G.	occidendi, <i>of killing</i> .	
D.	occidendo, <i>to or for killing</i> .	
	(occidere)	
Acc.	occidendum, <i>when governed by</i> } <i>killing</i> .	} The Gerund governs a noun; in the same case, of course, as the verb it comes from.
	<i>a preposition,</i>	
Abl.	occidendo, <i>by killing</i> .	

176. VOCABULARY 33.

Frugality,	parsimōnia	(<i>parsimony</i>)
Science,	scientia.	
Superfluous; unnecessary,	{ supervacuus, (from <i>super</i> , above; vacuus, empty.)	
Expense,	sumptus, G. ūs	(<i>sumptuary laws</i> .)
Nature,	natura.	
Desirous,	cupīdus	(<i>cupidity</i> .)
New,	nōvus	(<i>novelty</i> .)
Art,	ars, G. artis.	
Skilful (in),	perītus, (governs <i>gen.</i>)	
Horse,	ēquus, i	(<i>equerry</i> .)
Character,	mōres, G. morum, pl.	(<i>morals</i> .)
To see,	vid-ēre, vīd, vīs	(<i>visible</i> .)
	r. p.	
To discover; show,	de-tēg-ēre, tex, tect	(<i>de-lect</i> .)
To play,	lūd-ēre, lās, lās	(<i>de-lude</i> .)
To teach,	doc-ēre, docu, doct	(<i>doctor</i> .)
To tame; master,	dōm-āre, dōnu, domit	(<i>in-dom-itable</i> .)

177. (Eng.) While they are playing.
(Lat.) *During playing*, (inter ludendum.)

Exercise 37.

178. Economy is the science of *avoiding* unnecessary expenses. Man is by nature desirous⁴ of seeing and hearing new (things.) Balbus is skilful *in mastering* a horse. He is come *to master*³⁰ the horse. The character of boys discovers itself *while they are playing*. He learns by teaching. *How much pleasure*⁴ (there) is in learning!

Nonnē potest docendo discēre? Cupīdi sunt docendi *Sapientis est*⁷ supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Discat³⁰ puer supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Abeat Romam. Discat, ut docēre possit. *Quantum temporis*⁴ ludendo amisērunt! Nemo mortem poterit vitare. Inviti vēnē-

⁴ Adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, recollection, &c.*, (or their opposites) govern the *genitive*

rant, ut Sullæ domum evertērent. Eversâ Sullæ domo, abiit. Num pueri ludendo discunt? Puer cupīdus est discendi. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Discrepat a timendo confidēre.

Lesson 38.

Participle in dus.

179. Instead of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with it.

180. Thus, (Eng.) The intention of writing a letter.
(Lat.) Consilium scribendi epistolam.
(or) Consilium scribendæ^a epistolæ.

181. Thus then, '*epistōla scribenda*' may be declined throughout.

Sing.

- N. Epistōla scribenda, a letter to be written.
G. epistōlæ scribendæ, of writing a letter.
D. epistōlæ scribendæ, to or for writing a letter.
Acc. (ad) epistōlam scribendam, to write a letter, (or, for writing a letter.)
Abl. epistōlā scribendā, by writing a letter.

Plur.

- N. epistōlæ scribendæ, letters to be written.
G. epistōlārum scribendarum, of writing letters.
D. epistōlis scribendis, to or for writing letters.
Acc. (ad) epistōlas scribendas, to write letters, (or, for writing letters.)
Abl. epistōlis scribendis, by writing letters.

182. VOCABULARY 34.

[The forms following a verb are r. and p.]

Book,	liber, libri	(library.)
Very fond,	studiosus.	
Plato,	Plato, G. Platōnis.	
To retain,	{ re-tīn-ēre, rētinu, retent	(retentive.)
	{ (re, back; tenēre, hold.)	
Barbarous,	barbarus.	
Custom,	consuetūd-o, G. Inis. Gender?	
To sacrifice, ^v	im-molare	(immolata.)
Fonder,	cupīdi-or, G. ōris.	
To buy,	ēm-ēre, ēm, empt.	
To snatch; seize, ^w	{ arripere, arripu, arrept, (ad, to; rapere, snatch.)	

^a The real meaning of '*consilium epistōlæ scribendæ*' is, '*the design of* (= about) a letter to be written.'

^v Properly, 'to strew the sacred flour or cake (*mola salsa*) on the victim's head: from *mā*, on, and *mola*.

^w This verb, though of the third, follows the fourth in the imperfect, &c., as will be explained below. See note x.

Opportunity,	occase-o, G. ōnis. Gender ?	
To practise,	exercēre.	
Desire,	cupidi-tas, ūtis	(cupidity.)
To rule,	rēgēre, rex, rect	(di-rect.)
War,	bellum.	
To carry on ; wage,	gēr-ēre, gess, gest.	
Time,	temp-ūs, ōris. Gender ?	(temporal.)

Exercise 38.

183. The boy is very-fond of *writing letters*. Demosthēnes was very-fond of *hearing Plato*. In the times of Cicero the Gauls retained the barbarous custom of *sacrificing men*. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. Do not lose the opportunities of *practising virtue*. Nature has given us a desire of *seeing the truth*. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. Timotheus was skilful⁽³⁹⁾ in governing a state.

[Obs. Any case of the *partic. in dus*, except the nominative, must be rendered by the same case of the *participial substantive*; and the substantive it agrees with, must stand as the accusative after it. Thus. "Balbus seized every opportunity of *practising virtue*."]]


Nonne fundum *ingenti pecuniā*⁽²¹⁾ ēmērat? Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendæ virtūtis* arripiebat. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum*, quam *legendōrum*. Cæsar belli gerendi peritus fuit. Nonne mores puerorum se inter ludendum (177) delēgunt?

Lesson 39.

184. OBS. After 'is,' 'are,' and the other parts of the verb 'to be,' the form of the *infinitive passive* is used as a participle of the future passive, to signify *duty, necessity, &c.*

185. Hence, what is in form the *passive infinitive*, is to be translated by the *participle in dus*, when it follows 'is,' 'are,' &c.

186.	Virtus	colenda	est.
	Virtus	to-be-cultivated	is.
	[Virtue is to be cultivated.]		

 The agent, or person by whom, is put in the

dutive with the *part. in dus*; with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

187. VOCABULARY 35.

By accident,	cāsu; <i>abl.</i> of casus	(<i>casual.</i>)
Some,	nonnulli. æ, a, (non, <i>not</i> ; nullus, <i>none.</i>)	
To sharpen,	acuere, acu, acūt	(<i>acute.</i>)
Unprofitable,	inutilis, (in, <i>not</i> ; utilis, <i>useful.</i>)	
A game,	lūsus, G. ūs.	
Inclined,	propensus	(<i>propensity.</i>)
To understand,	intelligere, intellex, intelloci	(<i>intelligenci</i>)
To do; act,	agere, eg, act.	
Born,	nātus.	
To undertake,	{ sus-cipere, x suscep, suscept, (sub, <i>un-</i> der; capere, <i>take.</i>)	
To impel,	impellere, impūl, impuls	(<i>impulse.</i>)
	Not only — but also.	
	Non solum — verum etiam.	
To spend, (time, &c.,)	{ impendere, impend, impens, (followed by <i>dat.</i> of participle in <i>dus.</i>)	

188. Ne Balbus quidem.
Not *Balbus* even, (not even *Balbus.*)

Ne patrem quidem amat.
Not *his father* even *does he love!*

Obs. 'Not' with 'even,' (quidem,) in the sentence, must be translated by *ne*; and *quidem* must follow the word to which the *even* belongs; the *ne* being put before that word.

Exercise 39.

189. Every opportunity of practising virtue¹⁴ is *to be seized.*^x Even Caius did *not* seize every opportunity of practising virtue. The gate is to be shut *in the evening.*¹²⁾ Balbus *having flown*³⁵⁾ to the country³⁷⁾ from the town, bought an estate *for* an immense sum-of-money. The boys are fonder of playing than of learning. *How much time*⁴ do they spend *in reading books?*¹⁴ Let him buy the estate *for* a large sum-of-money.

[Obs. After *ad*, the *gerund* or *part. in dus* may be rendered by the *infinitive.*]

Nemo est casu bonus: discenda est virtus. Sunt nonnulli *acuendis* puerorum *ingeniis* non inutiles lusus. Non solum ad discendum propensi sunt, verum etiam ad docendum. Homo ad intelligendum et agendum natus

^x Some verbs of the *third* have the terminations of the *fourth*, (in the parts hitherto given,) except in the *imperfect subjunctive*, the *infinitive*, and the *imperative*. Thus *arripe* has *arripiebat, arripiet, arripiat, arripiens, arripiendus*.

est. Multa nos ad suscipiendum discendi labōrem impellunt. Multa impellunt Caium, *ut* discendi labōrem *suscipiat*.^x Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detexerant. Omnem dicendi* elegantiam augēbit legendis oratoribus et poētis.

Lesson 40.

Verbs followed by the dative.

190 Some verbs are followed by the *dative*, where we use no preposition; and should therefore be led by the English to put an *accusative*.

191. A *dative* put—remember pray—
 After *envy*, *spare*, *obey*,
Persuade, *believe*, *command*; to these
 Add *pardon*, *succor*, and *displeased*,
 With *vacāre* 'to have leisure,'
 And *placēre* 'to give pleasure :'
 With *nubēre*, (of the *female* said,)
 The English of it is 'to wed :'
Servire add, and add *studēre*,
Heal, *favor*, *hurt*, *resist*, and *indulgēre*.†

192. VOCABULARY 36.

Good for; useful,	utilis	(utility.)
Fit for,	idōneus; governs <i>dative</i> .	
To envy,	{ invīdēre, invīd, invīs, (in, into; vidēre, to see.)	
To spare,	parcēre, pēperc.	
To obey,	parēre.	
To believe,	crēdēre, credīd, credīt	(credible.)
To pardon,	{ ignoscēre, ignōv, (in, not; noscēre, to know.)	
To succor,	{ succurrēre, succurr, succurs, (sub, under; currēre, to run.) subvēnīre, subvēn, subvent, (sub, under; venīre, to come.)	

^x See note p. 66.

^{*} In speaking.

† This mode of arranging the rules by rhymes, for the purpose of aiding the memory, though very common in England, is quite novel in this country. Such teachers as do not approve of this method, (among whom the editor confesses himself to be,) can easily put them in the usual form as contained in the Grammar. At the suggestion of those whose judgment is entitled to great weight, they have been left just as Mr. Arnold has given them in the English edition.—AM. EN.

[‡] Of these, *succurrere*, 'to run to support,' is stronger than *subvenire*, 'to come to support.'

To please,	placere.	
To displease,	displicere	
To have leisure for,	vacare	
To marry, (properly, 'to veil')	nubere, nups, nupt	(nuptials.)
To command,	imperare.	
To persuade.	{ persuadere, persuas, (per, thoroughly ; suadere, advise.)	

Exercise 40.

193. How do you translate *not only—but also* ? (187.)

194. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody, Do not envy the good. It is pleasant to succor the miserable. Atticus pleased me. Nobody will believe the wicked. Death spares nobody. They had spared the gate of the city. Portia will marry Caius. Drusilla married Caius *in the autumn*. He spares himself in the winter. He does not spare even himself. He spares *not only* himself, *but also* his slave. You will never have persuaded me. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

195. Obs. *Est, sunt*, may be rendered 'must,' 'ought,' or 'should,' when they have a participle in *dus* with them; the part in *dus* being translated by the *inf. passive*.

Cæsar legendo libro vacabit. Christiāni est patriæ suæ legibus parere. Ignosce mihi. Nemo tibi credet. Impröbus patriæ legibus non parëbit. Num legibus parëbunt impröbi, violâtâ fide? Discant Christiāni animis suis imperare. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

Lesson 41.

196. The most common terminations of the persons in the active voice are :—

Sing.			Plur.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
m,	s,	t.	mus,	tis,	nt.

197. By changing *t* into these terminations, we may

get all the persons of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, and of *all the subjunctive*.²

198. But observe the vowel before *mus, tis*, is long in these tenses, except in the *perf. subjunctive*, in which it is *common*.³

199. VOCABULARY 37

[Verbs governing the <i>Jative</i> continued.]	
To be the slave of,	<i>servire, servi, (or serviv,) servit.</i>
To devote one's self to; aim at,	<i>studere.</i>
To hurt, injure,	<i>nocere.</i>
To resist,	<i>resistere, resist.</i>
To favor,	<i>favere, favi, favi.</i>
To indulge; humor,	<i>indulgere, indul.</i>

Exercise 41. [See question 28, of "Questions."]

200. I would have favored Caius. You would have resisted anger. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. We would have indulged the desire. I was hurting myself. You were hurting me. You were flaying the sheep, not shearing (them.) Come to shut the gates of the city. Was he come, to shut the gates of the city? You had hurt Caius. You had been-the-slave-of passion. Do not be-the-slave-of passion. You were come to surround the girl's head with a crown. He had displeased Caius. You were sparing the enemies.

[What is the *imperative* of *venire*? What tense is used as an *imperative*? (The subj. present.)]

Violābas legem. Barbāram consuetudinem immo-landōrum hominū retinuissētis. Irā multos annos serviēras. Ne violētis fidem. Portas urbis ne claudātis. Vēni, ut mihi succurras. Regendis animi cupiditatibus studeāmus. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad obtinendam sapientiam. Tondendæ sunt oves, non deglubendæ. Nonnē claudendæ sunt urbis portæ? Exercenda est virtus.

² Refer to the table in the *Accidence*, p. 150.

³ That is, *long* or *short*. The old grammarians made it short in the *perf.*, long in the *fut. perfect*.

Lesson 42.

201. 'Is,' properly 'that,' is used for *he, she, it*, plur. *they*,^b when they do not mean the *same person or thing* that the nominative case means.

202.

'Is' has neuter *id*.The other cases are formed *as if* from '*eus, ea, eum*,' making the gen. *eius*, written *ejus*, and dat. *ei*.But in the plural, the *nom. masc.* and the *dative* are generally *ei*, and *eis*, instead of *eis*.^c

203. VOCABULARY 38.

Long,	diu. Longer, <i>diutius</i> .
To sin,	peccāre.
To recall,	revocāre.
King,	rex, rēgis.
Literature,	litērae, (plur.)
So,	tam.
So great,	tantus.
Multitude,	multitūd-o, G. Inis.
To count,	nūmērāre.
Star,	stella, (con-stella-tion.)

204. Si diutius vixisset, neminem habuisset parem.

*If longer he had lived, nobody he would have had equal.**(If he had lived longer, he would have had no equal.)*205. OBS. ¶ After 'if' the *pluperf. indicative* must be translated by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Exercise 42.

206. If they had lived longer, they would have done that. If Caius had lived longer, he would have given *me*²⁰ an estate. If they had obeyed you, they would be

^b *Is*, 'that person' = *he*.*Ea*, 'that female' = *she*.*Id*, 'that thing' = *it*, &c.^c Hence the cases are,*Is, eā, id*: *G. ejus*: *D. ei*: *Acc. eum, eam, id*: *Abl. eo, eā, eo*.*Plur. il, eā, eā*: *G. eorum, earum, eorum*: *D. and Abl. iis*, (or *eis*): *Acc. eos, eas, eā*. See *Accidence*, p. 146.*Obs.* When *his, her, its*; *theirs*, are to be translated by '*is*,' they are translated by the genitive.When *his, her, its*; *theirs*, are translated by *suus*, *suus* must agree with its substantive.*Ejus libri*, *his books*; *eorum libri*, *their books*; *sui libri*, *his or their books*.

alive.^d So-great is the multitude of the stars, *that*³¹⁾ you cannot count them. I would have pardoned you, if you had done that. They were aiming at recalling the kings.⁴²⁾

✂ [When the imperf. subjunctive has *si*, it must be translated by 'had,' not by 'would have.']

Peccavissent, si id fecissent. Pareat animus, non impēret.^e Nonnē Caius scribendæ epistolæ vācavit? Patriam auro, si potuisses, vendidisses. Nonnē mores puerōrum se *inter ludendum* detēgunt? Malus pastor deglupsisset oves, non totondisset. Si oratōres et poētas legisset, auxisset elegantiam dicendi.

Lesson 43.

207. Sing. Mihī scribendum est, I must or should write.
 Tibi scribendum est, you must or should write.
 Illi scribendum est, he must or should write.
 Plur. Nobis scribendum est, we must or should write.
 Vobis scribendum est, you must or should write.
 Illis scribendum est, they must or should write.

208. (Eng.) I must (or should) write.
 (Lat.) It is to-be-written by me.

209. ☞ After the part. in *dus*, the person by whom is put in the *dative*.

- (a) If *we* or *you* means 'everybody,' or 'people in general,' the pronoun is left out.
 (b) Hence 'edendum est' is { 'we should eat,'
 or 'you should eat.'
 (c) The dative is also left out, whenever the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

Exercise 43.

210. Caius^g must not sleep. (We) must remain at Rome the whole winter.¹²⁾ We must live well. We

^d Translate as if it were 'they would live.'

^e The auxiliary verb is omitted with the second of two verbs. Not, 'let him come, and let him take it;' but, 'let him come and take it.'

^f Explanation. The real meaning of 'scribendum est mihi' is, 'it is to-be-written by me.'

^g In doing the exercise, remember.

(1.) That the *English nominative* is to be put in the *dative*, if a particular person (or persons) is meant; but left untranslated, if what is said holds good of people in general.

(2.) The *participle* in *dus* is to be formed from the verb, and written down in the *neuter gender* with *est*.

must dwell *in the country*. We must remain *at home*. We must fly from the city (into) the country.⁷¹ The wicked *think little of*⁷² virtue. Does not the avaricious man *value* money *very highly*?⁷³ Will a Christian fear death? [No.]

Evolandum est ex urbe. Manendum est Romæ. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. Quiescendum est, ut vitam conservemus. Ambulandum est per urbem. Laborandum est, ut discas. Discrēpat a ludendo laborare. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? Num semper ludendum est? Epistōla suā manu scribenda est. Crabrōnes non sunt irritandi. Crabrōnem ne irrites. Irritasne crabrōnem?

Lesson 44.

211. The third persons of the *pres.* and *imperf. subj.* of *esse* (to be) are *sit, esset*, from which the other persons may be formed by 196.

212. Pres. *sim, sis, sit, simus, sitis, sint.*
Imperf. *essem, esses, esset, essemus, essetis, essent.*

213. From these forms those of *posse* may be got, as before explained: 149.

Present subj. possit. [(that) he may be able.]
Imperf. subj. posset. [(that) he might be able.]

214. VOCABULARY 39.

Self,	}	<i>ipse, h. ipsum, G. ipsius, D. ipsi, &c.</i>	
I myself,			
You yourself,			
Itself, &c.			
To fight,		<i>pugnāre</i>	(<i>pugnacious.</i>)
Rightly; well,		<i>rectē; adv. from rectus, right.</i>	
To hold one's tongue,		<i>tacēre</i>	(<i>tacit consent.</i>)
Even,		<i>etiam; placed before the word</i>	
		<i>it belongs to.</i>	
Bad,		<i>malus.</i>	
Crop,		<i>sēgēs, sēgēt-is, f.</i>	
To sow,		<i>sērere, sēv, sāt.</i>	

⁷¹ 'Ipse' is declined throughout as if it were *ipsus*, making Gen. *tus. Ipse, ipsa, ipsum. G. ipsius. D. ipsi. Acc. ipsum, ipsam, ipsum, &c.* It must be construed as 'I myself,' when the verb is of the first person; 'you yourself,' when the verb is of the second person.

But it is better sometimes to place the 'myself,' 'yourself,' after the verb and in accusative, &c. 'I was breaking the law myself.'

Exercise 44.

215. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. Is it *the business*? of a shepherd to scatter seeds? [No.] The boy must rest, that he may-be-able to play. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. Boys must hold-their-tongues. The girls must walk through the city. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price.

Imprōbis¹ metuendum est. Discendum est,^k ut possis docēre. Edendum est, ut possimus vivēre. Tacendum est. Etiam post malam segētem serendum est. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? Nonne fundum ingenti pecuniā emēras? Nonne Christianōrum est misēris succurrere? Scriptā epistolā, legit.

Lesson 45.

216. If the verb governs *the dative*, (191,) 'we' or 'you' should be untranslated:¹

Credendum est Caio.

We should believe *Caio*. (Not, 'Caius should believe.')

217. VOCABULARY 40.

Sea-water; salt water	aqua marina.	
To invent,	in vēnīre, ^m vēn, vent	(<i>invention.</i>)
Lust,	lūbīd-o, G. Inis. Gender ?	
Old man,	sēnex, G. sēnīs, G. plur. senum	(<i>senility.</i>)
Ignorant,	ignārus. (See 178, t.)	
To abstain (from,)	abstīnēre	(<i>abstinence.</i>)*

(a) To read off such sentences at right, take the *dative* as the nominative as should' or 'must'; and add the verb unaltered:

Omnibus, all men must, moriendum est, die.

(b) If no *dative* is expressed, put 'we' or 'you' for the nominative before 'must.'

^k If the next verb is of the *second person*, put *you* for the nom. of *must*.

^l If it be necessary to express the *agent*, (the person *who is to do the action*), it must be either expressed by the preposition *a*, (or *ab*.) or the form of the expression must be altered. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* expressed the agent.

^m From in, upon; venīre, to come.

* Governs the *abl.* of the thing from which

Exercise 45.

218. We should spare the conquered. We should injure nobody. We should resist anger. Should we not resist anger? We should envy nobody. We should obey the laws of our country. We should succor the miserable. We must not spare even Balbus. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. We must not believe even Cæsar himself.* We must injure neither the good nor the bad. Having written his letter, (169, b,) he will go a-hunting. He has flown into the country[†] to go[‡] a-hunting. We must go to Rome. We must fly out of the country into the city.

Aqua marina inutilis est bibendo. Nonne resistendum est[§] iræ? Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. Artem scribendi Phœnices[¶] invênērunt. Semper pugnandum est contra cupiditâtes et lubidinem. Etiam senibus discendum est. Inutiles sunt libri ignârô legendi. Num puêri regendæ civitatîs peritî esse possunt? Abstinendum est inhonestis voluptatibus. Nonne resistendum est animo? Num credendum est imprôbis?

Lesson† 46.

219. If the Latin verb is a *transitive verb* governing the accusative, (8,) we must not *govern* this accusative

* No Cæsari quidem ipsi, which must begin the sentence.

† When there is only one dative to a verb which governs the dative, supply 'we' as the nominative to 'must,' 'should,' and put the dative 'of course, without a preposition) after the verb.

‡ The Phœnicians.

§ The present and fut. perfect have their first pers. sing. in o.

¶ The fut. has its first sing. in o in the first two conjugations:

Present, o,	as,	et,	amus,	etis,	ant.
eo,	es,	et,	emus,	etis,	ent.
o,	is,	it,	imus,	itis,	unt.
io,	is,	it,	imus,	itis,	iunt.
Future, âbo,	abis,	abit,	abimus,	abitis,	abunt.
êbo,	ebis,	ebit,	ebimus,	ebitis,	ebunt.
am,	es,	et,	emus,	etis,	ent.
iam,	ies,	iêt,	iêmus,	iêtis,	iênt.
Future Perf. (r.) êro,	eris,	erit,	{ êrimus, or }	{ êritis, or }	{ êrint.
			{ êrimus,	{ êritis,	

by the neuter participle ; but the *acc.* must be made the *nominative*, and the participle in *dus* put in agreement with it :

We must cultivate virtue { *Colenda est virtus.*
Not, *colendum est virtutem.*

220 To determine whether you should put the *part.* in *dus* in the neut *gov.* *erning* the noun, or in *agreement* with the *nominative* of that noun, ask yourself two questions :

(1.) Can I turn the sentence into the form '*Virtus is to-be-loved*?'[†]

(2.) If you can, ask yourself whether the verb is one of those which govern the dative. (191.)

(If the verb governs the *dat.*, the *dative* must be retained, and the *participle* in *dus* put in the *neuter*. The *dative*, that is, must not become the *nominative* to the verb.)[‡]

221. ☞ 'Of,' after '*rob,*' '*defraud,*' '*deprive,*'
Is but a sign of *ablative*.[†]

222. VOCABULARY 41.

To rob,	spoliāre	(<i>spoliation.</i>)
To defraud,	fraudāre.	
To deprive,	privāre.	
To deceive,	decipere,* decēp, decept	(<i>deception.</i>)
To remove, (for the purpose of settling elsewhere,)	migrāre	(<i>emigrant.</i>)
Because,	quia.	
Eye,	ocūlus, l	(<i>oculist.</i>)
Apollo,	{ Apoll-o, Iūls, (son of Jupiter and Latōna ; the heathen god of archery, prophecy, and music.)	
Hunger,	fām-os, G. is	(<i>famished.</i>)
Temple,	templum.	
Grain,	grānum.	
One,	ūnus, G. unus, &c.	(<i>unit.</i>)
Poor,	paupēr, G. paupēris	(<i>pauper.</i>)
Judge,	iūdex, iūdicis	(<i>judicial.</i>)
Before, preposition,	ante, (governing acc.)	
Before, conjunction,*	antēquam, priusquam	
Before, adverb,	antea.	

[†] If you answer '*No*' to this question, you need not ask yourself the second except for the purpose of determining *what case* is to be used after the verb.

[‡] Thus. '*We must spare our enemies.*'

(1.) Can we say, '*our enemies are to-be-spared*?' *Ans.* Yes.

(2.) Does '*to spare*' govern the dative in Latin? *Ans.* Yes.

We must therefore not say '*inimici parcendi sunt,*' but (leaving to *parcere* the dative it requires) say, '*parcendum est inimicis.*'

[†] That is, '*of*' is not to be translated, but to serve as a sign or hint that the following noun is to be in the *ablative*.

^{*} From *de*, from; *capere*, take : this verb is one of those which prefix an *i* to the termination, (that is, take the terminations of the fourth,) except in the *present infinitive*, and the two tenses which we have shown how to get from the *present infinitive*; that is, the *imperf. subjunctive*, and the *imperative*. See 187, x. In the *pres. indic.* they follow the *fourth*, but have *i* short, (*io, is, it, imus, itis, iunt.*, See *Accidence*, p. 165.

^{*} Or *conjunctive adverb*; standing first in its sentence, and connecting it with another sentence.

Obs. In *antēquam*, *priusquam*, the words are often separated; *ante—quam*, *prius—quam*.

Exercise 46.

[The *pres. subj.* is used as an imperative.]

223. We should favor the good. We should believe Caius, because he has never deceived us. We must surround the boy's head with a crown. We must shut the gate of the city *in the evening*. Do not defraud (*plur.*) me of my praise. Do not deprive me of my eyes. Having written his letter, (169, *a*.) he *went to bed*. Do not the wicked deprive virtue herself of her praise? You are depriving (*pl.*) me of my praise. Will you break the laws of your country? Virtue must be cultivated, that you may live well and happily. (*Translate as if it were*, may-be-able to live.)

[When '*ante*' or '*prius*' is in one sentence, and the next begins with '*quam*,' take no notice of the word till you get to *quam*, and translate *ante-quam*, *prius-quam*, by '*before*.']

Non est *ante* edendum, *quam* fames impērat. Apollinis templum omni argento spoliāvit. Ne grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. Ne me luce privētis. Ocūlisnē me, iudices, privabitis? Ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt paupēres. Athēnis habitandum est, ut discāmus recte vivēre. Romam migrandum est, ut discātis civitātem regere. Etiam post malam segētem serēmus. Leges patriæ violātis. Violātis patriæ legibus, (169,) meā me laude spoliātis. Num meā me laude spoliabitis? Dicendi elegantia legendis oratoribus et poētis augenda est.

Lesson 47.

224.

Infinitive Mood.

		1.	2.	3.	4.	
Present, }	(R.)	ārē	ērē	ērē	irē	(Active)
Imperf. }		ārī	ērī	ī	irī	(Passive)
Perfect, }		issē	.	.	.	(Active)
Pluperf. }	(r.)	past partic. with <i>esse</i> , 'to be,'				(Passive)

- (a) The *future infinitive active* is made up, as in English, of 'to be,' with the *future participle active*.

In the *passive*, the *future infinitive* is made up of the *supine* with *iri*.

- (b) Thus from *amāre* the infinitives are *am-āre*, *am-av-isse*; *amatūrum esse*, *amātum esse*, and *amātum iri*.

225. ¶ The infinitives made up of *two words* are called *compound infinitives*.

¶ The *participles* of the compound infinitives* must *agree* with their substantives; but of course the *supine* remains *unchanged*.

- (a) Videt te esse beātum
He sees that you are happy.
- (b) Sperat se victūrum esse.
He hopes that he shall live.

226. Two English sentences, joined by the conjunction 'that,' are often made *one* Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the *nominative* into the *accusative*, and the verb into the *infinitive*.

227. To turn such a sentence into Latin,

- (1.) take no notice of 'that';
- (2.) translate the English *nominative* by the Latin *accusative*;
- (3.) translate the English verb by the *infinitive* of the *same tense*.

Exercise 47.

228. He sees, that you are happy. If he had come, he would have seen that you are happy. He says, that you have surrounded the girl's head with a garland. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.² It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. It is certain, that the father will avenge the death of his son. It is certain, that Caius has removed *to Athens*,

* They are set down in the *acc. masc.*

that he may learn to live well. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned to death.

Certum est, in summis Alpibus tantum esse frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat. Certum est, stellârum tantam esse multitudinem, ut numerâri non possint. Certum est, Balbum patriam auro vendidisse. Certum est, avem in summâ quercu nidum constructuram esse. Certum est, Cæsarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superaverit.

Lesson 48.

Forms of the passive. (Tenses from the root of the present.)

229. The third persons of the passive are formed from the third persons of the active by adding *ur*.¹

(a) But the vowel before the *t* is *long*, except from *it*, (of the *third*,) *âbit*, and *êbit*.

230. ☞ The *Imperative pass.* is like the *infinitive active*.

Thus,	Indicative,				Passive.			
	1.	2.	3.	4.	1	2.	3.	4.
Present,	at,	et,	it,	it,	âtur,	etur,	itur,	itur.
Imperfect,	âbat,	âbat,	âbat,	lêbat,	âbâtur,	ebâtur,	ebâtur,	lêbâtur.
Future,	abit,	ebit,	et,	iet,	abitur,	ebitur,	etur,	ietur.
Subjunct.								
Present,	et,	eat,	at,	iat,	etur,	eâtur,	atur,	iatur.
Imperfect,	âret,	êret,	êret,	îret,	ârêtur,	êrêtur,	êrêtur,	îrêtur.
				Infinitive,	âri,	êri,	i,	îri.
				Imperative, (like <i>Inf. act.</i>)	âre,	êre,	êre,	îre.

The *third persons plural* are formed from the corresponding *third persons plural* of the *active*, by adding '*ur*,' without any further change.

☞ The third sing. of the *imperfect subjunct.* may also be got by adding *tur* to the *inf. act.* with its final *e* lengthened.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Inf. pres.,	âre,	êrê,	êrê,	îrê.
Imp. Smlj,	ârê-tur,	êrê-tur	êrê-tur,	îrê-tur.

231. VOCABULARY 42.

To beg for,	{	pētrere, ^a petiv, peti	(petition.)
To make for, ^a	{	orāre.	
To pray; pray for,			
Ambassador,	{	legātus	(the Pope's <i>legate</i> .)
Lieutenant, ^a	{		
Ship,		nāv-is, is	(navy.)
To consult,		consulēre, consulū, consult	

232. Abit visūrus.

He goes away to see.

(Eng.) He goes to see.
 (Lat. sometimes) He goes about-to-see,^v (part. in rus.)

Exercise 48.

The English infinitive expressing the purpose, may often be translated by the future participle.

233. Ambassadors are sent to beg for peace.^{12, b)} Ambassadors will be sent, to pray for peace.^{12, b)} He goes away to consult^{12, c)} Apollo. The law will be broken. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men?) It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked both at Rome and at Athens. Let your word be kept. We must remove to Rome, that our faith may be kept. Money must not be valued at a great price. Let the state be ruled by the wise. The Persians^w make-for their ships.

[Oss. The participle in *rus* may often be translated by the English infinitive.]

Cæsar Romam rediit, copias *quam maximas*⁹ comparatūrus. Patrem suum consultūrus, abit. Mittantur legāti, pacem petitum. Virtus ab omnibus colatur.³⁰⁾ Omnis occasio exercendæ virtutis arripiatur. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem exercendæ virtutis a Christiāno arripi. Paupēres nē grano quidem uno fraudentur. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratoribus et poetis. Abiit dormiturus.

^a *Pētrere* expresses the moving towards or aiming at some object; whether the motion is actual motion towards a place, or a movement of the mind towards that for which it sees.

^v By 'lieutenant' is meant the second in command: a lieutenant-general.

^w Or, 'intending to see,' which is often the meaning of this participle.

^w Persæ, *G. Persarum*.

Lesson 49.

234. Relative Pronoun. (Qui, who, which, that.)

<i>Singular.</i>						<i>Plural.</i>				
	N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.	N.	G.	D.	Abl.	Acc.
Mas.	Qui,	cujus,	cui,	quem,	quo,	qui,	quorum,	quibus,	quos.	
Fem.	Quæ,			quam,	quâ,	quæ,	quarum,		quas.	
Neut.	Quod,			quod,	quo,	quæ,	quorum,		quæ.	

235. ¶ The *substantive* (or *pronoun*) that the relative *stands for*, is to be looked for in the *sentence before*.

(a) The relative must be put in the same *gender*, *number*, and *person*, as its *antecedent*.¹

236. ¶ The *case* of the relative has *nothing to do* with the other sentence.

¶ The relative must be *governed*, as to *case*, by the verb (or some other *governing word*) of *its own sentence*.¹

¶ *Is, ea, id*, is the regular antecedent pronoun to *qui*.

237. ¶ The verbs which govern *the dative* in the active, can only be used *impersonally*² in the *passive*.

Mihi creditur, ^a	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tibi creditur,	<i>Thou art believed.</i>
Illi creditur,	<i>He is believed.</i>
Nobis creditur,	<i>We are believed.</i>
Vobis creditur,	<i>You are believed.</i>
Illis creditur,	<i>They are believed.</i>

238. VOCABULARY 43.

No,	nullus, G. nullus	(null and void.)
Animal,	animal, ^b G. animâlis.	Gender ?
Heart,	cor, G. cordis, n.	(cordial.)

¹ The *ante-cedent* (that is, *going-before* noun) is the *substantive* or *pronoun* for which the relative stands.

² The use of the relative *is*, to prevent the same *substantive* from being expressed in each clause.

The apple which you gave me. (The apple, *which* apple you gave me.) The mountain on whose top, &c. (The mountain, on the top of *which* mountain.) The man who did this, &c. (The man, *which* man did this.)

³ To be used *impersonally*, is to be used only in the *third person singular*, and without a *nominative case*.

^a Hence,

(Eng.) *I am pardoned, favored, persuaded, &c.*

(Lat.) *It is pardoned, favored, persuaded to me.*

^b Nouns, in *e, al, ar*, make their *ablatives* in *i*; *nom. plur. la*; *gen. tum*.

Tree,
Fruit,
To behold,

arbor. G. arbōris, f.
fructus. G. ūs
adspicere, adspex, adspect

(arbor.)
(fructify.)
(aspect.)

Exercise* 49.

239. The good are envied. Have you not spared the conquered? He gave me the crown, with which he had surrounded the girl's head. Let anger be resisted, which has been prejudicial to many states. Caius, who sold his country for gold, should be condemned to death. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treachery. Caius, whose mother lives^e in the country, has himself removed to Rome. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered.

[When a *pass. verb* is one that governs the *dative*, take this *dat.* as if it were the *nom.* to the verb.]

Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest. Arbōres serit agricōla, quārum fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Pauperibus, qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. Parcātur victis. Pepercisti victis. Caio ignoscite. Violavistis fidem. Iræ resistitur Nihil facile persuadētur invitis.

Lesson 50.

240. 'He who,' 'those who,' are generally translated by 'qui' only, instead of by 'is qui,' 'ii qui.'

241. A deponent verb is a verb that has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

242. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles.

* The *second person plural* of the *imperative* may be got by adding *te* to the *second singular*; but in the *third*, *s* must be changed into *i* before this addition is made.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ite,	ite,	ite,	ite.

The terminations of the perfect are for all the conjugations:

isti, -isti, -it, -erunt, -eritis, -erint.

^e Dwells, habitat.

☞ The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs have not got.

[(1.) *Loquens, speaking*; (2.) *locūtus, having spoken*; (3.) *locutūrus about to speak*; (4.) *loquendus, to be spoken.*]

243. VOCABULARY 44.

To recollect,	remīniscī.
To remember,	recordārī.
To enjoy,	frui.
To use,	ūti, ūsus.
To discharge,	fungi, functus.
To get possession,	potīri, potītus, (<i>but potītur.</i>)
To pity,	miserēri.
To forget,	oblīvisci, oblītus.
A benefit,	beneficiū.
An injury,	injūria.
Duty,	officiū.
Arms,	armia, G. ōrum.
Some time or other,	aliquando.
Eternal,	sempiternus.
Crime,	flagitium

(*flagitious.*)

244. After to 'pity,' 'remember,' 'forget,'
A genitive case is properly set.^d

245. With 'use,' 'discharge,' 'possession get,' and also with 'enjoy,'
An ablative correctly stands: remember this, my boy.

Exercise 50.

246. *He who sins unwillingly, is free from blame. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. Let us use our arms and horses. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? Is the life, that we now enjoy, eternal? Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life.*

Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄rum. Homo im-
prōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recor-
dabitur. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. Vincāmus
odium, paceque potiāmur. Christiāni est injuriarum
oblīvisci. Beātus est, qui omnibus vitæ officiis fun-
gitur. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et
poētis auxerant.

^d But 'remember' and 'forget' often govern the accusative.

Lesson 51.

247. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* for the *mas.* and *fem., ius* for the *neuter*.

[Doctus, doct-*ior* ; sapiens, G. sapient-*is*, sapient-*ior* ; tener, tenet-*ior* ; pulcher, (pulchr-,) pulchr-*ior*.^e]

248. The superlative is formed by adding *issimus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(a) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rīmus* (*a, um*) to the nominative.

(Pulcher, pulcherrīmus.)

249. *Similis*, (*like*), *facilis*, (*easy*), and a few more in *lis*, make the superlative in *līmus*.

(Simillīmus, facillīmus.)

250. The following are quite irregular. —

Bonus, (*good*), melior, optimus.
Malus, (*bad*), pejor, pessimus.

magnus, (*great*), major, maximus
parvus, (*little*), minor, minimus.

251. VOCABULARY 45.

Air,	aër, G. aëris, m.	
Light,	lëvis	(<i>levity</i> .)
Heavy,	grāvis	(<i>gravity</i> .)
It is well known, }	constat. ^f	
It is allowed, }		
It is better,	præstat, (præ, before : stat, it stands)	
Sound,	sōnus, G. l.	
Swift,	vél-ox, G. ôcis	(<i>velocity</i> .)
Slow,	tardus	(<i>tardy</i> .)
Summer	æst-as, G. Ætis.	
Dog,	cānis.	
Wolf,	lŭpus, G. l.	
The moon,	lŭna.	
Nearer	prōpior, (with dat.)	
Excellent,	præstan-s, G. tis.	
Strength,	rōbŭr, G. robŏr-is. Gender ?	
Ignorance,	ignoratio.	
Knowledge,	scientia.	
To speak,	lŏqui, lŏcŭtus	(<i>e-location</i> .)
Simple,	simplex, G. simplīc-is.	
Wealth,	ŏpes, G. opum ; plur	

* Remember that for adjectives in *er* the whole nominative is the root ; the preceding *e* being often dropped.

^f Con, together, stat, it stands : 'it stands together' as a consistent truth.

252. Eurōpa minor est quam Asia.

Europe less is than Asia.

Nihil est clementiâ divinius
Nothing is than clemency more godlike.
(Nothing is more godlike than clemency.)

253. ¶ 'Than,' after a comparative, is either translated by *quam*, or omitted, the following noun being put in the *ablative*.

(a) If '*quam*' is expressed, the following noun will of course, be in the *same case* as that to which '*quam*' joins it:—thus, in the example above, *Asia* is the same case as *Europa*.

Exercise 51.

254. (*Quam* expressed.) Air is lighter than water. It is well known that light is swifter than sound.

(*Quam* omitted.) In the spring and summer the days are longer than the nights. Silver is lighter than gold. Is not silver lighter than gold? Is it not well known, that sound is slower than light? Is not a dog very-like a wolf?

Aurum gravius est argento. Luna terræ propior est, quam sol. Constat sonum luce tardiorem esse. Virtus præstantior est robore. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est, quam scientia. Majus est prodesse omnibus, quam opes magnas habere. Certum est solem majorem esse quam terram. Sæpe facere præstat quam loqui. Simplex cibus puëris utilissimus est.

Lesson 52.

255. VOCABULARY 46.

[Prepositions governing the accusative.]

Ad,	to.
Adversus,	against, towards. (See <i>erga</i> .)
Ante,	before.
Apud,	at: before a plural name of persons, <i>amongst</i> . Apud me
Circa,	{ 'with me,' that is, 'at my house.'
Circum,	about, (of time and place.)
	about, (of place only.)

Cis, citra,	on this side of.
Contra,	against: over-against.
Erga,	{ towards, (not of motion; but after words expressing a kind feeling, a duty, &c.)
Extra,	without, (in the sense of <i>not within</i> .) out of; beyond.
Inter,	amongst, (inter se, 'to each other, &c') between.
Intra,	within.

To observe, (duties.)	conservāre	(conservative.)
To move, (transitive.)	mōvēre, mōv, mōt.	
To move, (intransitive.)	mōvēri, mōtus: properly, 'to be moved.'	
Saturn,	{ Saturnus, father of Jupiter, by whom he was dethroned.	
	{ He devoured his own children.	
Jupiter,	{ Jūpter, ^b Gen. Jōvis, (and then formed regularly from	
	{ Jov,) the king of the heathen gods.	
The moon,	luna,	
Dutiful affection,	piētās, G. ātis.	
The Rhine,	Rhēnus, l.	

256. Maris superficies major est, quam
The sea's surface greater is than (that')

terræ.
of the earth.

257. When the same noun would be expressed in both clauses, it is left out in that which follows *quam*, (than.)

(a) In English it is represented in the second clause by 'that,' 'those.' Hence,

(b) *That*, 'those,' after 'than,' are to be untranslated.

Exercise 52.

258. (Our) duties towards (our) parents are to be observed. Do many come to old age? We must fight against the evils of old age. *It is an allowed fact*, that the earth moves round the sun. Your benefits are greater than *those* of your brother. Is not simple food very good for boys? Let us be gentle towards the conquered. The star of Jupiter is nearer the earth than that of Saturn.

Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. Nulla habēmus arma contra mortem. Patrium habet adversus bonos viros

^a After contrarius, *contrary*, &c.

^b Jupiter and Saturn are two of the planets.


^c Here 'that' stands for 'the surface.'

anīn.am. Luna circum terram movētur. Nulla est firma amicitia inter malos. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. Jovis stella intra Saturnum est. Galli cis Rhenum habitant. Pisces extra aquam cito expīrant. Intra muros habitābat. Inter se contraria* sunt beneficium et injuria.

Lesson 53.

259. 'May' and 'might' (when they stand in a *principal* sentence) are translated by *licet*, 'it is allowed.'

260.	<i>May</i> , licet, (= it is allowed.) <i>Might</i> , licuit, (= it was allowed.)	
261.	Mihi ire licet, Tibi ire licet, Illi ire licet, Nobis ire licet, Vobis ire licet, Illis ire licet,	<i>I may go.</i> <i>You may go.</i> <i>He may go.</i> <i>We may go.</i> <i>You may go.</i> <i>They may go.</i>
262.	Mihi ire licuit, Tibi ire licuit, &c. &c.	<i>I might have gone</i> <i>You might have gone.</i>

263.  The *present* infinitive follows '*licuit*,' in spite of '*have*.'

264.	(<i>Eng.</i>) I may go.	(<i>Lat.</i>) it is allowed me to go.
	(<i>Eng.</i>) I might have gone.	(<i>Lat.</i>) it was allowed me (then) to go

265. VOCABULARY 47.

[Prepositions governing the accusative, continued.]

Juxta	close to; by.
Ob,	on account of, (ob oculos, before one's eyes.)
Pōtēs	in the power of.
Per,	through; by means of.
Pōnē,	behind.
Post,	after.
Præter,	besides, beyond.
Propter,	near; on account of
Secundum,	along; according to.
Suprà,	above.
Trans,	across, beyond; on the other side of.
Ultrà,	beyond.
sque,	as far as, (properly an <i>adverb</i> , used with prep. <i>ad</i> .)

Fear,	mētus, G. metūs.
Shore	litūs, ōr-is. Gender?

* When an adjective agrees with two nouns it is in the plural; here, as they are the names of *things*, it is in the *neuter* gender.

A camp,
To place,
Journey; way,

castr-a, ōrum, *p̄*ur.
pōnere, pō-si, pō-sit
iter, G. itinē-ris, *neut.*

(*position.*)
(*itinerant.*)

266. He '*threatens me with death*,' should be
In Latin, '*threatens death to me*'
(*Mihi mortem minātur.*)

Exercise 53.

[37 When the answer '*yes*' cannot possibly be expected, '*an*' should be used rather than '*num.*' (153.) for the *interrogative adverb*.]

267. A man may not be-the-slave of glory. A Christian may not be-the-slave of pleasure. May Christians be-the-slaves of pleasure? We must not be-the-slaves of anger. Might he not *have dwelt* at Rome? No one may break the laws of his country. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. We must remove across the Rhine, that we may learn to devote ourselves to literature.

Servi pārent propter metum; boni propter officium. Navigatio juxta litus sæpe est periculōsa. Cæsar juxta murum castra posuit. Supra nos cælum conspicimus; infra nos terram. Longum iter est per præcepta; breve^k et efficax per exempla. Secundum leges vivendum est. Condita Massilia est prope ostia Rhodāni amnis. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie imminet. Nonne licuit Athēnis habitare? Janus^l bis post Numæ^m regnum clausus fuit. Nonne mortem tibi minabātur? Imperium populōrum est penes magistratus.

Lesson 54

(*On the translation of ought.*)

268. '*Ought*' is translated by the *impersonal verb* '*oportet*,' '*it behooves*.'

^k Of two connected sentences one must borrow its *nominative case* and *verb* from the other. Thus the second will become, *breve et efficax est iter*, &c.

^l Janus was a heathen god, represented with *two faces*, one looking each way; his temple at Rome was *shut* in time of peace.

^m Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

269. Me ire oportet, *I ought to go.*
 Te ire oportet, *You ought to go.*
 &c.
 Me ire oportuit, *I ought to have gone.*
 Te ire oportuit, *You ought to have gone.*
 &c.

270. **Oss.** When the *infm. perfect* follows '*ought*,' *ought* is to be translated by *oportuit*, and the *perfect infinitive* translated by the *present infinitive*.

271. So too after '*could*,' the *perfect infinitive* (which will be without '*to*') will be translated by the *present infinitive*.
 [*Facere potuit, he could have done (it.)*]

272. *Cārēre*, want or am without,
 And *egeo*, require
 Or need, do both, without a doubt,
 An ablative desire.

(a) But *egeo* sometimes, and *indigeo* often, takes the genitive.

273. VOCABULARY 48.

[Prepositions governing the ablative.]

A, ab, abs, ^a	from; by, (before the <i>doer</i> of the action.)
Absquē, ^o	without.
Clam,	without the knowledge of.
Cōram,	before; in the presence of.
Dē,	concerning; about, (<i>of</i> , when it means <i>about</i> .)
E, ex, ^p	out of; from.
Præ,	before; in comparison with.
Prō,	for.
Sinē,	without.
Tēnus,	{ as far as, (which follows its noun, and in the plural may govern the genitive.)

To die, { *mōri*, mortuus, (with terminations of the fourth, except in present, [where it has them in first sing. and third plur. infinitive, imperative, and imperf. subjunctive.]

Exercise 54.

274. Ought we not to succor the miserable? Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? Ought not Balbus to have kept his word? Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? I have received many letters from you. The bird has flown away

^a A before consonants: ab before vowels, and it may stand before any of the consonants in *hujus faris*. Abs only before the consonants in quot.

^o Absque is uncommon.

^p E before consonants; ex before vowels or consonants.

from my hands. He is gone-away *without* his father's knowledge.

275 [Oss. After *oportuit* the present infinitive is to be rendered by 'to have, &c. "He ought to have preserved fidelity," *Adem servari oportuit.*]

Dulce est pro patriâ mori. Coram populo loquētur. Argentum præ auro contemnītur. Cæcus de coloribus judicâre non potest. Etiam sine magistro vitia discuntur. Usitâtæ res facîle e memoriâ elabuntur. Vapôres a sole ex aquis excitantur. Alexander omnia Oceâno tenus vicit. Caius febri caret. Omnes^a paupĕrum auxilio egēmus. Fidem servâri oportuit. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. In illo prælio equites nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis ?

Lesson 55.

276. VOCABULARY 49.

[Prepositions, governing acc. or abl.]

In, with acc.	into, to, towards, against, for.
In, with abl.	in, upon, among, in the case of.
[The prepositions <i>in</i> and <i>sub</i> govern the acc. in answer to <i>whither</i> , (that is, after verbs of motion;) and the <i>ablative</i> in answer to <i>where</i> , (that is, after verbs of rest.)]	
Super, with acc.	{ above, over, beyond, (generally after verbs of motion)
Super, with abl.	{ besides.
	upon; ^r on or of (a subject inquired or written about.) ¹

Sub	Idem tempus,	about the same time.
To heal,	mêdĕri,	governing dative (by 191) (medicine.)
To seem,	vidĕri,	visus.
To desire,	cûpĕre, cûpĭv, cûpĭt,	(with the added i. 187, x.)
More,	plus	G. pluris. ^a

English.	Latin.
271. How much greater,	By how much greater; quanto major.
So much greater,	By so much greater; tanto major.
Much greater,	By much greater; multo major.
Considerably greater,	By some-deal greater; aliquanto major.

^a When the verb is of the first or second person, and an adjective is expressed, put *we* or *you* before the adjective. Thus, *omnes*, we all, &c.

^r This belongs to poetry.

^a It has no other forms in the sing. In plural *plures*, *plura*, G. *plurium*, &c.

278. (Eng.) The more he teaches, the more he learns.
 (Lat.) *By how-much* more he teaches, *by so much* more he learns.
 (or) *By what* more he teaches, *by that* more he learns.

279. ¶ 'The'—'the' before two comparatives must be translated by 'quanto'—'tanto,' or by 'quo'—'eo.'

280. Obs. The *tante* or *eo* goes with that assertion which follows from the other.

If you have any doubt, turn it into a sentence with 'if,' and let the 'if' sentence have the *quanto* or *quo*.

- (a) Thus in the example. (278,) his *learning* more will follow, or be the consequence, of his *teaching* more.

'If' he teaches much, *he will learn more* than he otherwise would.

Exercise 55.

281. How much greater is the sun than the earth? The earth is much greater than the moon. My estate is considerably bigger than yours. The days are considerably longer. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. Is not your garden considerably bigger than mine? Is not my garden much bigger than yours? Is my garden much bigger than yours? [No.]

Quo amarior potio, eo sæpe salubrior est. Quanto æmpus est felicius, tanto brevius esse videtur. Quo plura habent homines, eo plura cupiunt. Nunquam licet peccare. Juvēni pārandum est; seni utendum. Nē jures. Jurasnē?

Lesson 56.

282. VOCABULARY 50.

[The comparative of an adverb is the *neuter* of the comparative adjective :

<i>Facile,</i>	easily, (from <i>facilis</i> , easy :) <i>facilius</i> , more easily.
<i>Cito,</i>	quickly, (from <i>citus</i> , quick :) <i>citius</i> , more quickly.
<i>Bark,</i>	cortex, corticis, m.
<i>To cover, surround,</i>	ob-ducere, dux, duct.
<i>Safe,</i>	tutus.
<i>Virtuous, upright,</i>	honestus. Virtuously, <i>honeste</i> .
<i>Courageously,</i>	fortiter, (comparative, <i>fortius</i> .)

- 283 (Eng.) I ploughed it three times, *that* it might produce the *better* crop.
 (Lat.) I ploughed it three times, *by which* it might produce a *better* crop

284. (a) When '*that*' is in a sentence that has a comparative in it, it may be translated by *quo* with the subjunctive.

(b) '*That*' with comparatives and '*the*,'
 By '*quo*' may best translated be.

285. (Eng.) Some persons think.
 (Lat.) There are who think, (sunt qui putent.)
 (Eng.) Some persons thought.
 (Lat.) There were who thought, (erant qui putarent.)

Exercise 56.

286. Some persons think that faith should not be kept against^u enemies. It is difficult to heal the mind. Hold-your-tongues, *that* you may be the more easily able to learn. He spoke much, *that* he might seem wise. He spoke much, *that* he might seem *the* wiser. He lived virtuously, *that* he might die *the* more courageously. It is certain that Caius lived many years at Carthage. Do not spare me.

[When there is a comparative in the sentence, render *quo* by '*that*,' and put '*the*' before the comparative.]

Trunci arbōrum cortice obducuntur, *quo* sint a frigōre et calōre tutiōres. An licet Christiānis gloriæ servīre? Omnibus ignoscendum est. Ne multa loquere. Misere-re nostri. Natūrā omnes propensi sumus ad discendum. An retinenda est barbāra consuetūdo immolandōrum hominū? Nonne mors quotidie ob oculos ponenda est?

Lesson 57.

English.
 287. I repent of my folly.
 I am vexed at my folly.
 I am ashamed of my folly,
 I pity the poor.
 I am weary of life,

Latin.
 It-repents me of my folly
 It-vexes me of my folly.
 It-shames me of my folly.
 It-pities me of the poor.
 It-irks me of life.

^t Arēvi, &c., *quo* posset meliōres fruges edere.

^u Adversus.

- (a) Me meæ stultitiæ pœnitet.
 (b) Me meæ stultitiæ piget.
 (c) Me meæ stultitiæ pudet.
 (d) Misêret me paupêrum.
 (e) Tædet me vitæ.

288

When 'ut' the word for 'that' would be,
 'That-not' may both be done by nê;
 Unless a 'so' or 'such' preceded,
 For then a 'non' will still be needed.

- 289 (a) Palpēbræ molles sunt ne
The eye lids soft are, that
 premant oculum.
they may not press the eye.
 (b) Tanta est multitūdo, ut non possint
So great is the multitude, that they cannot
 numerāri.
be numbered.

290. VOCABULARY 51.

Slothful,	ignāvus, (in, not; gnāvus, active.)
Sloth,	ignavia.
Some-time-or other,	aliquando.
Physician,	medicus.
Some,	aliquis, (something, <i>aliquid</i> .)
Attentive,	studiōsus.
To order,	jubere. juss, juss, (followed by acc. with <i>infin.</i>)
To learn by heart,	e-discere.
Athenian,	{ Atheniensis. (<i>Ensis</i> is a common termination of names derived (from towns.)
Socrātes,	{ Socrāt-es, G. is, (one of the greatest of heathen men. He taught the <i>immortality of the soul</i> , and was put to death by his countrymen the Athenians.)
To value more highly,	pluris facere.
To cause to be made,	faciendum curare, (the partic. to agree with its noun.)

Exercise 57.

291. It is more pleasant to make a friend, than to have (one.) The slothful man will some-time-or-other repent of his sloth. Christians pity the poor. He will give the physician something, *that* he may be *the* more attentive. I order my son never to remember this injury. We give verses to boys to-be-learnt-by-heart. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. Have you not understood, that I do not need money! Anger

† These verbs are regularly conjugated: pœnitet, pœnitēbat, pœnituit, pœnituerat pœnitēbit, &c.

has cost the state much blood. *I value you more-highly every day.*

292. Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis foveant pullos, ne frigore lædantur. Eorum misereri oportet, qui propter fortunam, non propter malitiam in miseriis sunt. Tui me miseret: mei piget. Raro primi consilii Caium pœnitet. Sapientia semper eo contenta est, quod adest. Scipio dicēbat, malle^w se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidēre. Sic adhuc vixi, ut nemo unquam me ullius injuriæ accusavērit. Pontem in Istro flumine faciendum curavi. *Inter ambulandum multa mecum locutus est*

Lesson 58.

293. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tum* or *quum* followed by *tum*, are *both—and*.

294. Non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.

295. Tam—quam, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so—as : as—as.} \\ \text{as well—as.} \\ \text{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

296. Etiam, *even, also*, (etiam atque etiam, *again and again*;) quoque, *also, too*, (*follows the word it belongs to.*)

Exercise 58.

297. Amphibia et in aquâ et in terrâ vivunt. Et discet puer, et docebit. Etiam tu hinc abis? Rogo te, et etiam oro. Et Romæ vixi et Carthagine. Ut mihi succurras, etiam atque etiam te rogo, (296.) Lupus quum ovem tum canem momorderat. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. Horti parantur tum ad utilitatem, tum ad jucunditatem. Multæ herbæ quum jucun-

^w That he had rather: infinitive of *mālo*, (which see, Accidence, p. 177.)

dis-si-mum tum saluberrimum cibum sup-peditant. Tam canes quam lupi cæcos pariunt catûlos. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est.

Lesson 59.

298. Aut, or.

aut—aut ; vel—vel, *either—or.*

299. sive—sive } *either—or.*

seu—seu } *whether—or.*

vel is sometimes '*even ;*' with superlatives, '*very,*' '*extremely,*' '*possible.*'

300. *Sive** is used, when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided, which of two assertions or names is the right one ; and when a second name is a mere *alias* of the first.

Exercise 59.

301. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites ! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigore rigent, aut uruntur calore. Viri nobiles, vel corrumpere mores civitatis, vel corrigere possunt. Quam sis morosus, vel (299) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese* vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, pœnas persolvêrunt. Nonnulli, sive felicitate quadam, sive bonitate naturæ, sive parentum disciplinâ, rectam vitæ secuti sunt viam. Sine solis calore nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus esto, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpôri prodest. Vel (299) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefêro. Caii eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas.

* *Sive* is si-ve, '*or if.*' Thus, '*Caius sive Balbus,*' is '*Caius, or if you like Balbus,*' (for that is another name of his.)

* See Accidence, p. 144.

Lesson 60.

(Adversative conjunctions, or such as mark an *opposition*.)

302. At, sed, autem, verum, vero, *but*.

Tamen, attāmen, } *yet ; but ; but yet*.

Verrētāmen,

Atqui, *but or now, (as used in reasoning.)*

Exercise 60.

303. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meas ; *at* placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit idem Themistōcles ; *at* Pericles idem non fecit. Si certum est⁷ facere, facias ; *verum* ne post confēras culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impediōr. Aut hoc aut illud est : non *autem* hoc (est ;) ergo (304) illud (est.) Absolutus est Caius ; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniā. Videtis nihil esse morti tam simile, quam somnum : *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

Lesson 61.

304. Nam, namque, enim, *for*.

Igitur, ideo, *therefore*.

Ergo, *therefore, then*.

Itaque, *accordingly ; and so ; therefore*.

Quare, *wherefore*.

Exercise 61.

305. In eā re prudentiā adjūtus est : *nam*, quum devicisset hostes, summā æquitate res constituit. Hac pugna nihil nobilius : nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus tantum exercitum devicit.

⁷ Si certum est, (*if it is fixed,*) *if you are resolved*.

Magno^a Atilio ea cunctatio stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit Illi *igitur* duodēcim cum canibus venaticis exiērunt. Aristūdes æqualis fere fuit Themistōcli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non misit (est?) Nihil labōras: *ideo* nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: *quare* eos infirmisimos esse volebant.

Lesson 62.

306. ¶ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the past tenses of the *indicative*.

(a) But the '*perfect*,' when it answers to our *perfect* with '*have*,' is not considered a *past* tense.

307. 'Ut' with the *subjunct.* { (1) '*in order that*;' '*that*;' '*so that*.'
 (2) the *infinitive*, (expressing the *purpose*.)
 (3) '*as*,' with *infinitive*.
 (4) '*granting that*;' '*although*.'
 (5) '*that*' and carry '*not*,' (after to *fear*.)
- (a) (*Ut* with the *indicative* is '*as*,' '*when*,' '*since*,' '*after*,' '*how*.'

(b) When *ut* introduces a *purpose*, the *subjunctive* verb will be rendered by '*may*,' '*might*.' When it signifies a *consequence*, (which it regularly does after '*so*,' '*such*,') the *subjunctive* verb is rendered by the *indicative*: but the *imperfect* by the English *perfect*.

Exercise 62.

Oss. *possim* (*is, it, &c.*) = '*can*' or '*may*.'
possem (*es, et, &c.*) = '*could*' or '*might*.'

308. (1) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab aliis laudentur. Stellarum tanta multitudo est, *ut* numerari non possint. In summis Alpibus^a tantum est frigus, *ut* nix ibi nun-

Stare magno, to cost a man dear. Magno agrees with *pretio* (price) understood.

^a On the top of the Alps. Summus, imus, medius, primus, extremus, reliquus, &c., agreeing with nouns, are generally rendered by *substantives*, followed by a *genitive* case. Imus mons, the bottom or foot of the mountain. Reliqua Ægyptus, the rest of Egypt. Sapientia prima, the beginning of wisdom. In extremo tercio libro, at the end of the third book.

quam *liquescat*. Hominis corpus celsum et erectum est, ut cœlum intueri possit.

Ursi per hiemem tam gravi somno premuntur, *ut* nē vulneribus quidem excitentur. In Indiā serpentes ad tantam magnitudinem adolescunt, *ut* integros hauriant cervos, taurosque.

(2) Vēnit (*he is come*) ut claudat, (*to shut*,) &c.

Enītar *ut* vincam. Magnopere te hortor, *ut* hos de philosophiā libros studiōse legas. Capram monet, *ut* in pratum *descendat*. Ante senectutem curavi, *ut* bene vivērem. Formica sitiens ad fontem descendit, *ut* bibēret.

(3) No one is so good, *ut* nunquam peccet, (*as never to sin*.)

Quis *tam* demens est, *ut* suā voluntate mœreat? Nulla anus *tam* delira est, *ut* hæc credat.

(4) *Ut* desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. *Ut* circumspiciamus omnia, quæ populo grata atque iucunda sunt, nihil tam populare quam concordiam reperiemus.

☞ For *ut* after *to fear*, see Lesson 66.

Lesson 63.

300. *Nē* with *subjunctive*, { (1) { '*lest*,'
'*that*,' and carry '*not*.'
(2) '*not*,' with the *infinitive*.
(3) '*not*,' with *imperat.* or *subjunct.* used *imperatively*.
(4) '*that*' after *to fear*

Exercise 63

(1) I did it, nē *that*, vidēret *he might not see*, &c.

310. (1) Palpēbræ molles sunt, *ne* premant oculum Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovēt pullos, *ne* frigore lædantur. Nix segētes opērit, *ne* frigore absumantur. Cave *ne* incognita pro cognitis habeas. Cave *ne* quid temere dicas aut facias contra potentes. Oculi palpē-

Ex odoratu et adspectu pomorum dubitare non possūmus, *quin* hominibus ea donata sint. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, *quin* interdum peccet. Caius prohiberi non potuit, *quin* (5) *erumpēret*. Non dubito, *quin* *ascenderis* murum. Nemo erit tam stultus, *quin* (3) *hæc fateatur*. Non possum pro dignitate vivere, *quin* (5) *alterūtram partem offendērem*. Negari non potest, *quin* turpius *sit* fallere quam falli. Nihil in rerum naturā invenitur, *quin* sapientissime institutum *sit*. Qui temere omnibus credit, effugere non potest,^b *quin* sæpius fallatur. Infesta concio vix inhiberi potuit, *quin* protinus saxa in Polemōnem *jacēret*. Timoleonem mater, post fratris necem, nunquam adspexit, *quin* eum fratricidam impiūque *compellaret*.

Lesson 65.

313. After verbs of *hindering*, 'quomīnus' with the subjunct. is more common than *ne*. It may generally be translated by 'from,' the verb being turned into the *participial substantive*: but after 'refuse,' by the *infinitive*.

Exercise 65.

- (1) *Nothing deterred him, quomīnus faceret, (from doing,) &c.*
 (2) *I will not refuse, quomīnus faciam, (to do,) &c.*

314. Nihil impedit, *quomīnus* id facere possimus. Non deterret sapientem mors, *quomīnus*ⁱ in omne tempus reipublicæ, *suisque consulat*. Rebus terrēnis multa externa, *quomīnus perficiantur*, possunt obsistere. Quid obstat, *quomīnus* Caius *sit* beatus? Epaminondas non

^b Cannot avoid being often deceived.

ⁱ Does not deter, &c., from forwarding the interests of the commonwealth, and of his own (friends.) Consulere alicui = to consult a man's welfare; to forward his interests.

[†] Sui is a man's dependents, a man's friends

recusavit, quominus legis pœnam subiret. Non me terrêbis quominus illud faciam. Prohibere Romanos, quominus frumentum sumèrent, non poterant. Non me impediēs, quominus ei pecuniam illam numerem.

(Note. Literally 'quo minus' = *by which the less, or, so that the less.* *Caio nihil obstat, quo minus sit beatus*, is literally, "Nothing stands in the way of Caius, *by which* he should be *the less* happy.")

Lesson 66.

315. After words of '*fearing*,' '*ne*' and '*ut*' appear to change meanings: *ne* = *that*, (or *lest*;) *ut* = *that—not*. (Also the *subjunct. present* must generally be rendered by the *future*.)

Vereor <i>ne</i> ,	I fear he <i>will</i> ; or <i>lest</i> he <i>should</i> , &c.
Vereor <i>ut</i> ,	} I fear he <i>will not</i> ; or <i>lest</i> he <i>should not</i> .
Vereor <i>ne-non</i> ,	

Exercise 66.

316. Vereor, *ne* labores tuos *augeam* Pavor ceperat milites, *ne* mortiferum esset vulnus Scipionis. Homo scelestus semper veretur, *ne* peccata sua *patefiant*. Improbī semper sunt in metu, *ne* pœnâ *afficiantur* aliquando. Vereor, *nē* brevi tempore fames in urbe *sit*. Verebamini, *nē non* id facerem. Vereor, *nē* consolatio *nulla* vera possit reperiri. Timeo, *nē non* impetrem. Metuebant, *nē* dolorem ferre *non* possent.

Timeo, *ut* labores tantos *sustineas*. Avarus semper veretur, *ut* satis habeat. Vereor, *ut* pax firma *sit*. Ignavus semper metuit, *ut* *sustineat* labores.

a. In English we often leave out the conjunction 'that' after a verb of *fearing*, as, "I fear he will," for "I fear *that* he will."

Metuo, ne artificium tuum tibi parum *prosit*.

Lesson 67.

ON INTERROGATIVES.

317. All interrogatives take the indicative, *when the question is put directly*: they then stand at the head of a principal sentence, and are followed, of course, by a note of interrogation.

a. *Num*, *an*, and *nē*, (which is always *appended* to another word,) are not rendered in direct sentences.

b. *Num* (in direct questions) expects the answer '*no*.' *An* expects the answer '*no*,' and expresses *impatience, indignation, &c.* *Nonne* expects the answer '*yes*.'

c. The force of '*an*' may generally be given by adding '*why*' or '*then*' to the question.

An credis ? { *Why*, do you believe . . . ?
 { Do you believe, *then* . . . ?

Exercise 67.

318. *Quis non paupertatem extimescit? Unde lucem suam habet luna? Quid interest^m inter hominem et bestiam? Quid feret crastinus dies? Quare vitia sua nemo confitetur? Cur te excrucias? Quid rides?*

Ubi aut qualis est tua mens? Potesnē dicere?—Num sola maris aqua est salsa? Visne miser esse? Estne animus immortalis? Nonne poētæ post mortem nobilitari volunt? Num scimus, quo se confērant aves peregrinantes? An tu esse me tristem putas? An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?

Obs. *Ne* is often appended to the other particles; *numnē, annē, &c.*

Lesson 68.

319. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when they ask *indirectly* or *doubtfully*; especially when another verb goes before the question.

[†] A question with *nē* may be such as to make us confidently expect '*yes*' or '*no*' for the answer. But the answer is then suggested by the *nature* of the question, not by the *form* of it.

^m *What difference is there?* intersum, interesse.

- (a) Such verbs are *ask, doubt, try, know, not know*; it is uncertain, &c.
 (b) *Num, an, nē*, in a dependent sentence, are '*whether*;' and '*num*' does not imply that the answer '*no*' is expected.
 (c) *An* is never used by Cicero in a single indirect question.

Exercise 68.

320. *Quis enumeretⁿ artium multitudinem? Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. Dic mihi, quem sol nobis ad-
 jerat usum. Nescimus, quid serus vesper advecturus
 sit.^o Quid futurum sit, nescimus. Quid vere nobis
 prosit,^p non semper intelligimus. Olim quæstio erat,
 num terra rotunda esset. Num ægrotum interrogabis,
 an sanari velit? Cogita tecum, an gratiam retuleris,
 quibus gratiam debes. Quæritur^a unquamne fuerint
 monocerotes. Utrum* velis, elige. Non me terrebis,
 quominus, utrum velim, eligam. Quid dicam nescio.*

Lesson 69.

321. In double questions either,

- { (1) the first is introduced by *num, utrum*, or the appended *nē*, and the second by *an*, (*or*;) or,
 (2) the first question has no interrogative adverb; the second, *an* or the appended *nē*.

Exercise 69.

322. (1) [*Direct.*] *Utrum^r major est sol, an minor, quam terra? Casunē mundus est effectus, an vi divinā? Num sol mobilis est, an immobilis? Sumusne mortales, an immortales? [Indirect or dependent.] Quæritur, unusne sit mundus an plures? Nihil refert,^a utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum.*

(2) [*Direct.*] *Uter est infelicior, cæcus an surdus? Utrum est pretiosius, aurum an argentum? [Indirect.]*

ⁿ Who can reckon up?

^o Will bring?

^p Quid vere prosit (prosum) nobis; what is really beneficial to us.

^q It is sought = it's a question, or a disputed point: monocerotes, unicorns.

^a Neut of *utor*.

^r Is the sun . . ?

^s It makes no difference

Stellarum numerus par^t an impar sit, incertum est. Hominibus prodesse^u natura jubet: servi liberine sint, quid refert?^v Dic mihi, æstate^w grandinet, an hieme. Multum interest,^x valentes imbecilline simus.

a. *Necne* in the second question is 'or not.'

Lesson 70.

323. (Some conjunctions that always take the subjunctive.)

Utinam, *would that.*

O si, (O! if,) O! that, *would that.*

licet, *although.*

quasi, tanquam, *as if.*

dum, modo, dummodo, *provided; if only.*

quamvis, *however-much, however.*

Exercise 70.

Note.—With most of these conjunctions, the *present* (subjunctive) must be rendered by a *past* tense.

324. *Utinam* pacis amor omnibus inspirari possit! *Utinam* ense nullus magistratus egeat! O si quisque virtutem colat! O si omnes cogitent, mediocritatem in omnibus rebus esse optimam! Animalibus brutis nulla futuri temporis cognitio est, licet sit aliqua præsentis et præteriti. Impröbus ita vivit, quasi nesciat, rationem vitæ sibi esse reddendam. Nemo, quamvis sit locuples, aliorum ope carere potest. Nulla est regio, quæ non cultores suos, dummodo laborare velint, alat. Ita fac omnia, tanquam spectet aliquis. Si quis nimis obscure dicit, perinde fere est, ac si taceat. *Utinam* hoc verum sit. Sic agis, quasi me ames.

^t Even: impar, *odd.*

^v What matters it, or, what does it signify whether, &c.?

^w In the summer.

^u Prosum

^x It makes a great difference.

Exercise 71.

329. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo *duraturam* pervenient. Nemo, cunctam *intuens* terram, de divinâ providentiâ dubitabit. Hæ sunt divitiæ certæ, semper *permansuræ*. Sapiens bona semper *placitura* laudat. Omnes aliud^r *agentes*, aliud *simulantes*^s impröbi sunt. PISISTRATUS HOMERI libros, *confûsos* antea, disposuisse dicitur. Male *agentis* (5) animus nunquam est sine metu. Garrûlus tacere nequit^a sibi *commissa*, (7.) Adulator aut laudat *vituperanda*, aut vituperat *laudanda*.

Lesson 72.

330. Render the participles in the following Exercise by verbs with 'when,' 'as.'

- (1) *ridens*, { *when he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.
 { *as he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.

331. In a sentence with *when*, we often omit the auxiliary verb : hence

- (2) *ridens* may be construed '*when laughing*.'

332. If the participle stands alone, 'he,' 'they,' 'a man,' 'one,' 'men,' &c., must be supplied as the nom. to the verb.

- (3) *ridenti*, { *when he is laughing*.
 { *when one is laughing*.
 (4) *ridentibus*, *when men* (or *they*) *are laughing*.

Exercise 72.

333. Leo *esuriens* rugit. XERXES a Græcis *victus* in Persiam refûgit. *Esurienti* (3) *gratior est* cibus. Su-

^r The first *aliud* must be construed '*one thing*;' the second, '*another*.'

^s Put in a '*but*' before *simulantes*.

^a Nequeo.

danti (3) frigida potio perniciosissima est. DIONYSIUS tyrannus, Syracūsīs *expulsus*, Corinthi pueros docebat. *Aranti* QUINCTIO CINCINNATO nuntiatum est, eum Dictatōrem esse factum. Hæc poma *sedens* decerpsi. Leōnes *satiati* innoxii sunt. Ne mente quidem recte uti possūmus, multo cibo et potione *imp'ēti*. Alit lectio ingenium. et studio *fatigatum* reficit. Elephantēs nemini nocent, nisi *laccessiti*

Lesson 73.

334. Render the following participles by *verbs* with 'if.'

- (1) *ridens*, { *if he* laughs.*
 { *if a man (or one) laughs.*
 (2) *amatus*, { *if I am loved; if I were loved.*
 { *if I had been loved.*

Exercise 73.

335. Quis est qui, totum diem *jaculans*, non aliquando collineet?^b Equum *empturus*, cave nē decipiaris. Hostes, hanc *adepti* victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confident. *Victi* hostes in Persiam refugient. *Admonitus* (2) venissem. *Liberatus*, rus ex urbe evolabo. Romā *expulsus* Carthagine pueros docebo.

Lesson 74

336. Render the following participles by *verbs* with

* The nom. to be used will be, *I, we, you, they, &c.*, according to the person of the verb.

^b Pres. subj. render by *pres indic.*

because, for, since ; or by the *participial substantive* with *from* or *through*.

dubitans, { (1) because I doubt
(2) for I doubt.
(3) since I doubt.
(4) from doubting.
(5) through doubting.

Exercise 74.

337. Nihil affirmo, *dubitans* plerumque, et mihi ipse^c *diffidens*. Hostes hanc *adepti* (4) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidebant. Sine aquâ anātes degere non possunt, magnam victūs partem in aquâ *quærentes*. Respondent se perfidiam *veritos* revertisse. Stellæ nobis parvæ videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis *disjunctæ*. Cantus olorinus recte fabulōsus habētur, nunquam *auditus*.

Lesson 75. [See note p. 106.]

338. Render the following participles by verbs with *though*, *although*.

(1) ridens, *though he laughs*.
amatus, { (2) *though he is loved*.
(3) *though he was loved*.
(4) *even though he should be loved*.

339. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*. Hence we may sometimes construe

(5) ridens, *though laughing*.
(6) amatus, *though loved*.

^c Render mihi *myself*, and take no further notice of *ipse*.

Exercise 75.

340. Homines non statim pœnis afficiuntur, quotidie *delinquentes*. Multa transimus ante oculos *posita*. Oculis, se non *videns*, alia videt. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum *cupientes* tenēre nequeamus. Scripta tua jam diu *expectans*,^d flagitare non audeo. Quis hoc non intelligit, Verrem *absolutum* (4) tamen ex manibus populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse? Omnia magnā voce *dicens*, simulabat tantum se furēre. Ad cœnam *vocatus*, nondum vēnit.

Lesson 76. [Note p. 106.]

341. Render the following past participles by *after*, with a verb or participial substantive.

- (Act.) passus, { (1) *after he has suffered.*
 (2) *after he had suffered.*
 (3) *after suffering.*
- (Pass.) amatus, { (4) *after he was (or has been) loved.*
 (5) *after he had been loved.*
 (6) *after having been loved.*

Exercise 76.

342. JOSEPHUS in Ægypto, multa mala *perpessus*, (3,) ad summos honores evectus est. Israëlitæ, Ægypto *egressi*, quadraginta annos in Arabiâ sunt commorati. Pleræque scribuntur orationes *habitæ*^e jam, non ut habeantur. DIONYSIUS, a Syracusis *expulsus*,^f Corinthi pueros docebat. ALEXANDER ABDOLONUM diu *contemplatis* interrogavit, quā patientiā inopiam tulisset. *Lauti*^g cibum capiunt Germani.

^d Use the perf. definite 'have been expecting.'

^e Habere orationem, to deliver a speech.

^f Render first by (4;) then by (6.)

^g Partic. from *lavare*, to wash.

Lesson 77.

343. Render the following participles by verbs, and place 'and' before the verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The participle is *generally* to be rendered by the same tense as the other verb.

(1) Ridens *he laughs*, exclamat *and exclaims*.

(2) Ridens *he laughed*, exclamavit *and exclaimed*.

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum* leporem, *he has seized* the hare, lacerat, *and is mangling* it.

Exercise 77.

344. Jussis divinis *obediens* virtuti *studet*. CRÆSUS, a Cyro *victus*, regno *spoliatus est*. Troja, equi lignei ope capta, incendio *delēta est*. Persæ mortuos cerâ *circumlitos*^b condunt. Grues, quum loca calidiora *petentes* maria *transmittunt*, triangūli efficiunt formam. Illud ipsum^c non accidisset, si *quiescens* legibus *paruissem*. Cum legionibus *profectus*^d celeriter *adero*. TITUS MANLIUS Gallum, in conspectu duorum exercituum *cæsum*, torque spoliavit. *Comprehensum* hominem Romanam *ducēbant*, (3.) Mulier ALCIBIADEM suâ veste *connectum* cremavit.

Lesson 78.

345. *Non* before a participle may be rendered *without*; the participle being turned into the participial substantive.

non without, ridens *laughing*.

non without, { amatus *being loved*.
 { amatus *loving him*.

^b From *circumlinere*.

^c Render *ipse* by *euen*.

^d *Profectus*.

Exercise 78.

346. *Non petens regnum accepit. Romani Græcis non rogati ultro offerunt auxilium. Liberalitate utitur, se ipsum non spolians. Neminem in familiaritatem recipe non cognitum.*¹ Multi homines vituperant libros non intellectos.¹ Beneficus est, qui non privatis comōdis permōtus, alios adjūvat.

347. **Obs.** Participles in the ablative absolute may be rendered in the same way: the substantive will be the *nom.* to the verb; or the *acc.* after it.^m

Thus, Tarquinio regnante,
te sedente,
capitā Tyro,
migraturis apibus,
fele comprehensā,
adempto pomo,
radice succisā,
fasce sublato, redit,
te non salutato,

when Tarquinius was king.
as you were sitting.
after Tyre was taken.
when the bees are going to swarm.
if the cat is caught.
because his apple was taken away.
though the root was cut.
he takes up the bundle AND returns.
without saluting you.

348. Participles may often be rendered by *substantives* of a kindred meaning. Thus:

<i>For</i>	<i>We may say,</i>
Ciconiæ redeuntes, The returning storks,	{ The return of the storks.
Januario addito, By January added,	
Leges violatæ, The violated laws,	{ The violation of the laws.
Vere appropinquante, Spring approaching,	
	{ On the approach of spring.

¹ Use *act. partic.*

^m It may sometimes be the accusative after the verb; because 'the bundle being taken *by him*,' = 'the bundle was taken up *by him*;' which may be turned into *he took up the bundle.*

QUESTIONS.

[Those on the *Syntax* have an asterisk before them.]

N. B. The pupil should learn the Terminations of Substantives, (p. 126,) and of the 3d persons of the Verb, (p. 150,) as soon as possible.

1. Give the accusative endings. (9.)
2. Repeat the terminations of the third persons. (32.)
3. Give the genitive endings. (40.)
- *4. In what case is the *price* or *value* put sometimes? [*The Gen.* 47.]
5. What are the endings of nouns expressing *virtues, vices, dispositions, &c.*? (47, h.)
- *6. By what case are some *neuter* adjectives followed? *What* adjectives are so used? (*Ans.* Indefinite numerals.)
What substantive is so used? (*Ans.* The indeclinable substantive '*nihil*, 'nothing,' 56.)
- *7. What often stands as the nominative case to the verb? (60, n.)
When an *infinitive mood* (or *sentence*) is the nominative case to the verb, where is it placed in *English*? (*Ans.* After the verb, being *represented* by the pronoun '*it*,' which is not to be translated. 60, n.)
In what *gender* is the adjective then put? (*Ans.* In the *neuter*.)
8. How is the *acc. plur.* got from the *acc. sing.*? What must '*um*' be turned into, to give the *acc. plur.* of the second? What is always the termination of the *acc. neut. plural*? (64.)
9. By what *prepositions* is the *dat.* rendered? [67. N. B. These prepositions are called *signs of the dative.*]
a) What are the signs of the *ablative*? (C.)
b) By what preposition is an *ablative* of time rendered? (*Ans.* By *in* or *at*.)
c) How is an *acc.* of time rendered? (*Ans.* By '*for*,' or without any *prepos.* 72.)
10. To what declension do adjectives in '*is*' belong? [*The third.*] Of what gender are they? [*m. and f.*] What is their *neuter* form? [*e.*] Is their *ablative e* or *i*? [*i.*]^a
- *11. In what case do you put the name of a town *where* a thing was done? When is the town *where* put in the *abl.*? When in the *gen.*? (72, s.)
- *12. In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *when*? [In the *abl.*]

^aThe manner of declining the other adjectives of the *third* is explained at p. 139

10. In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *how long*? [*In the acc.*]
 Is '*for*' a sign of the *dative*, when it stands before a noun of time? [*Ans. No, of the acc.*]
 13. How may the *third plural* be got from the *third singular*? Into what must '*is*' of the perfect be changed? '*it*' of the fourth? '*it*' in '*erit*' all other *it's*?
 14. Give the terminations of the *nom.* and *gen.* plural.
 15. What case does *in* govern when it means '*into*'? [*Acc.*]
 _____ '*in*'? [*Abi.*]
 _____ *ex* govern? [*Abi.*]
 16. How must '*not*' with the imperative be translated? [*By ne.*]
 What word must stand before the *not* in English? [*The 'do' of the imperative.*]
 17. How is the thing *with which* any thing is done translated? or, what case answers to '*with what*'? [*Abi.*]
 18. When '*thing*' or '*things*' is left out, in what *gender* must the adjective be put? [*Neut.*]
 19. What cases follow verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *condemning*? [*Acc. of person*: *Gen. of the charge.*]
 20. By what cases may '*of great valor*' be translated into Latin? [*Gen. or Abi.*]
 21. In what case does a noun of *price* stand, when it answers to '*for how much*'? [*In the Abi.*]
 22. (a) When must the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, them, &c.*) be translated by *ui, &c.*? [*When the pron. represents the same person as the nom. to the verb.*] (b) What preposition is omitted after *give, cast*, the adj. *like, &c.*? [*To.*]
 23. When is one noun said to be *in apposition* to another? In what case is a substantive *in apposition* to another placed? [*In the same case as the subst. to which it stands in apposition.*]
 24. What case do *dignus, indignus, &c.*, govern? [*Abi.*]
 25. What case does the verb *to be* take after it? [*The same case as before it.*]
 26. What case do the compounds of *esse* govern? [*The dat.*] What exception is there? [*Possum.*]
 27. What does the *English infinitive* often express, but the Latin infinitive *never*? [*A purpose.*]
 28. How may the English infinitive expressing a *purpose* be translated? [*By ut with the subjunctive*: of which the *imperfect* follows the past tenses; the *present*, the other tenses.]
 29. What tense is '*he is come*'? [*Perf.*] What tense is '*he was come*'? [*Plup.*]
 With what auxiliary do neuter verbs of motion form their *perfect definite*?
 30. How is the *subjunctive present*, standing in a principal sentence, to be translated? [*As an imperative, or to express a wish. Veniat = let him come; or, may he come.*]
 (a) How must the *perfect* be rendered, when it is followed by the subjunctive *present*? [*By the perf. definite.*]
 31. When is the English *indicative* after '*that*' to be translated by the *Latin subjunctive* governed by *ut*? [*When that follows so or such.—It then introduces a consequence.*]
 32. What tenses of the subjunctive are the *regular attendants* of the *past tenses* of the *indicative*? [*The imperf. and pluperf.*]
 33. When is '*to*' never a *sign* of the *dative*? [*After verbs of motion: come, send, fetch, &c.*] *How is the place to which translated? [*By Acc.*] *How is the place from which translated? [*By the Abi.*] When must *ad, to,* be expressed? [*Ans. When the place is not the name of a town or small island; and when the motion is to a person.*]
 34. How is the *supine* in *um* used? [*Ans. After verbs of motion.*] How is the *sup.* in *um* Englished? [*Ans. By the infin. act.*] How is the *sup.* in *u* used? [*Ans. After some adjectives, such as hard, disgraceful, pleasant, best, &c.*] How is the *sup.* in *u* Englished? [*Ans. Regularly by the infin. passive: but often by the infin. active.*]

^b How may the *imperative* be got from the *infinitive*? [*By throwing away re.*]

c The ablative after *dignus*, *indignus*, must be Englished by 'of:' after all of them consider what preposition we use in English, and use that, without thinking about the usual *signs* of the ablative.

- *35 How is the want of the *perfect* participle† *active* supplied? (*Ans.* By *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf.* of the subjunctive; or by the *abl. absol.*.)
- *36 What is the *ablative absolute*? *Is the substantive of the *abl. absol.* to be rendered by a *preposition*? [*No.*] *By what participle *governing* its noun may the *ablative absolute* often be rendered, when the participle is of the *perf. pass.*? [*By the partic. with 'having.'*]
- *37 What substantives follow the rules for the proper names of towns? [*Ans.* *Domus* and *rus*: also the genitives *humi* and *militiæ*. See 33.]
38. Where is '*cum*' placed with the *ablatives* of personal pronouns? [*After them and joined to them: mecum, &c.*]
- *39. What case do adjectives signifying *desire, &c.*, govern? [*Gen.*]
- *41 In what case is the *agent* or *person by whom* put? (*Ans.* In the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*: but after the *part. in dus*, in the *dative*.)
42. Mention some words, &c., after which the *gerund* or *part. in dus* follows in the *dat.* [*Utile, profitable or good for; inutill, unprofitable; idoneus, fit for; tempus impendere, to spend time in or on; vacare, to have leisure; studere, aim at; devote one's self to.*]
- *43. How is what is in *form* the *pass. infin.* to be translated after '*is*,' '*are*'? [*Ans.* By the *part. in dus*.]
- *44. What verbs govern the *dative*? (191.) *How is the *pluperf. indic.* to be translated after '*if*'? [*By plup. subj*]
45. In the infinitives made up of *two words*, is the participle to agree with its substantive or not? (*Ans.* To agree.) Is the word in *um* in the *fut. infin. pass.* a participle? What is it? [*Supine.*]
Can it then agree with the substantive? [*No.*]
- *46. Must you look for the *antecedent* to the relative in the relative sentence or not? [*Generally not.*] *Is the *case* of the relative determined by a word in its own, or in the preceding sentence?
47. Can the verbs that govern the *dative* be used in the *first* or *second* persons in the *passive*? In what person only can they be used in the *passive*? [*In the third sing.*]
48. How is the present *infin.* rendered after *licuit*? *oportuit*? [*Generally by the perf.*]
- *49. What verbs govern the *gen.*? (244.)
- *50. ——— *abl.*? (221, 245.)
- *51. What cases do *panitet, pudet, &c.*, take after them? (*Ans.* An *accusative* of the *person, feeling*; a *gen.* of the *thing* or *person* about which the emotion is felt.)
- *52. How is '*must*' translated? [*By the part in dus with the verb esse.*] When is the *part. in dus* to agree with the *subst.*? [*When the verb governs the accusative.*] When the verb does not govern the *acc.*, in what case, &c., must the participle stand? [*In the nom. neut., and then esse will always stand in the third singular.*]

Go through *prodesse*, (129, p. 51.)

——— *occidere, killing*, (175, p. 63.)
 ——— *epistola scribenda*, (181, p. 64.)
 ——— *scribendum est mihi*, (207, p. 71.)
 ——— *mihi creditur*, (237, p. 80.)
 ——— *mihi ire licet*, (261, p. 86.)
 ——— *mihi ire oportet*, (269, p. 88.)

Mention the participles of *loquor*, (242, p. 82.)§

† What English participle answers to the *partic. in us*? [*Part. in ng.*] in *us*? [*Part. in d, t, or n.*] *rus*? [*Going to—; or, about to—.*] in *idus*? [*Form of inf. pass.*]
 ‡ The *subst.*, that is, which is governed by the verb that follows *must*. The *nom.* before *must* becomes the *dat.* after *esse*, but is often omitted.

§ The *fut. inf.* of a deponent verb is the *fut. in rus* with *esse*.

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1 To think nothing of.	To reckon at nothing, (<i>nihil ducere in factore.</i>)
2 To value highly. ^a	To value at a high price, (<i>magni aestimare.</i>)
3. { To think little of ^b { To hold cheap.	To value at a little price, (<i>parvi aestimare.</i>)
4. No stability. Some time. Much good. How much pleasure.	Nothing of stability, (<i>nihil stabilitatis.</i>) Something of time, (<i>aliquid temporis.</i>) Much of good, (<i>multum boni.</i>) How much of pleasure, (<i>quantum voluptatis.</i>)
Hence 'no,' 'some,' (when they denote <i>quantity</i> , not <i>number</i> .) 'much,' 'how much,' are to be translated by 'nihil,' 'aliquid,' 'multum,' 'quantum,' followed by the <i>gen.</i>	
5. He did it <i>unwillingly</i> .	He, <i>unwilling</i> , did it
6. It is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful
7. It is the part _____ duty _____ business _____ mark _____ character } of a wise man.	It is of a wise man.
8. To condemn a man to death.	To condemn a man of the head.
9. As many as possible. _____ he can or could. } The greatest possible. } _____ he can or could. }	As the most, (<i>quam plurimi.</i>) As the greatest, (<i>quam maximus.</i>) [That is, 'as many as the most,' 'as great as greatest,' &c.]
10. On the top of the mountain. In the middle of the water.	On the mountain highest. In the water middle, (<i>in summo monte; in media aqua.</i>)
11. Is going to bed.	Is going to lie down, (<i>cubitum</i> , sup.)
12. It is hard to say.	It is hard in saying, (<i>difficile est dictu; supine.</i>)
13. While they were (are, &c.) playing.	During playing, (<i>inter ludendum.</i>)

^a To value very highly. (*maximi aestimare.*)

^b The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the 'of,' for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH

14. The intention of writing a letter.
 15. We must cultivate virtue.
 16. Caius must write.
 17. We must believe Caius.
 18 The ways of expressing the *purpose* are,

He comes to see the games

19. (a) I may go.
 (b) I might have gone.
 20 (a) I ought to go.
 (b) I ought to have gone

LATIN.

The intention of a letter *to-be-written*,
 (scribendæ epistolæ.)
 Virtue is *to-be-cultivated*, (colenda es
 virtus.)
 It is *to-be-written* by Caius, (Caius scriben-
 dum est.)
 It is *to-be-believed* to Caius, (credendum
 est Caio.)

- { (a) Venit ut ludos spectet.
 (b) Venit ludos spectatum, (*sup.*)
 (c) Venit ludos spectaturus.
 (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos.
 To which add,
 (e) Venit causâ (*for the purpose*) ludô-
 rum spectandorum; and
 (f) Instead of *ut*, the relative may be
 used:

He sent ambassadors, *qui pacem petē-
 rent*, (to sue for peace.)

Mihi ire licet, (*it is permitted to me to go.*)
 Mihi ire licuit, (*it was permitted to me to
 go.*)
 Me ire oportet.
 Me ire oportuit.

PART II.

A SECOND LATIN BOOK

AND

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

A
SECOND LATIN BOOK
AND
PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

BY
THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD M.A.,
RECTOR OF LYNDON,
AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED
BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

TWENTY-FIFTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON & CO., 443 & 445 BROADWAY.
1867.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846
By D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

PREFACE

TO THE FIRST ENGLISH EDITION.

THE following work is founded on Augustus Grotefend's *Lateinisches Elementarbuch*, from which the Latin portions are taken without alteration.

The work is a Practical Latin Grammar, with Reading Lessons and Exercises. It assumes that the pupil can decline and conjugate with accuracy; at which stage of his progress it is of great importance that he should be made acquainted with the principles on which derivative words are formed. For this purpose I have given a list of the principal terminations employed, and added to the earlier Exercises Vocabularies, in which the principles of *Word-building* are practically applied.

T. K. A.

[Consult Preface to Part I., or First Latin Book.]

J. A. S.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART II.

	Page
I. SKETCH OF LATIN ACCIDENCE.....	123
Terminations of Substantives.....	126
General Rules of Gender.....	127
First Declension.....	128
Second do.	130
Third do.	132
Gender of the Third Declension.....	132
Fourth Declension.....	135
Fifth do.	136
Adjectives.....	137
The Numerals.....	142
Comparison of Adjectives.....	143
Pronouns.....	144
The Verb.....	147
Conjugations.....	149
Terminations of the Verb.....	150
The verb <i>sum</i>	154
First Conjugation.....	155
Second do.	159
Third do.	162
Fourth do.	165
List of Verbs.....	168
Deponent Verbs.....	174
Impersonals.....	176
Irregular Verbs.....	177
Adverbs.....	179
Prepositions.....	180
Principles of Word-building.....	181
Table of Genders.....	186

	Page
BRIEF SKETCH OF LATIN SYNTAX	189
I. Subject and Predicate	189
II. Of the Cases	190
III. Use of the Tenses	198
IV. Of the Moods	199
Gerunds, Gerundive	202
Participles	203
Supines	204
II. EXERCISES	205
III. READING LESSONS	255
IV. VOCABULARIES ON THE EXERCISES	265
V. QUESTIONS ON THE LATIN ACCIDENCE	281
VI. QUESTIONS ON LATIN SYNTAX, (including Answers, and the principal Rules in Latin from the Eton Grammar)	291
VII. CAUTIONS	314
VIII. DISTINCTION OF SYNONYMS	315
Appendix I.—Verbs with Dative, &c	316
“ II.—Greek Nouns, &c.	317
“ III.—Conjunctions	318
Latin Index	321
English-Latin Index	344

EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS.

S. refers to the Rules of Syntax	291
C. “ Cautions	314
Syn. “ Synonymes distinguished	315

I. SKETCH OF LATIN ACCIDENCE.

1. THERE are in Latin nine parts of speech ; viz.—

(a) NOUN, ADJECTIVE, PRONOUN, VERB, PARTICIPLE,—which are declined :

(b) ADVERB, PREPOSITION, INTERJECTION, and CONJUNCTION,—which are undeclined.

2. Latin nouns are declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers*.

3. There are *three* genders : *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

4. There are *six* cases : *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

5. There are *two* numbers : *Singular and Plural*.

6. There are *five* declensions, which are distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular.

7. The *first* declension makes the genitive ending in *æ* diphthong; the *second*, in *i*; the *third*, in *is*; the *fourth*, in *us*; the *fifth*, in *ei*.*

* The two dots over the *e*, are a *separation-mark*, (*dierësis*), meaning that the two vowels are to be pronounced separately; thus : *re-i*.

§ 8. TERMINATIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. neut.</i>		<i>m. neut.</i>	<i>f.</i>
Nom.	ā	ūs, ēr um	various*	ūs u	es
Gen.	ae	i	is	ūs ūs	ei
Dat.	ae	ō	i	ui	ei
Acc.	am	um um	em (im)	um u	em
Voc.	ā	ē, ēr um	like nom.	ūs	es
Abl.	ā	ō	ī (i)	ū	ē
<i>Plural.</i>					
Nom.	ae	i	ēs	ūs uā	ēs
Gen.	arum	orum	um or ium	uum	arum
Dat.	is	is	ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs
Acc.	ās	ōs	ēs	ūs uā	ēs
Voc.	ae	i	ēs	ūs	ēs
Abl.	is	is	ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs

9. The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English :—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	..... a or the boy	Nom.	..... boys
Gen.	of a or the boy	Gen.	of the boys
Dat.	to or for a or the boy	Dat.	to the boys
Acc.	..... a or the boy	Acc.	..... the boys
Voc.	O boy	Voc.	O boys
Abl.	with, from, in, or by... a or the boy	Abl.	with, from, in, or by.... the boys

10. OBS. That in *neuter* nouns the *accusative* is like the *nominative*, and that in the plural the *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* end in *ā*.

11. The *vocative* is always like the *nominative*, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. *ē*. Proper names in *ius*, with *filius*, *genius*, contract *ie* into *i*.; as, Virgilius, Virgili, &c.

12. In the third, *vis*, with *sitis*, *tussis*, *amussis*, and a few more, have Acc. *im*, Abl. *i* only.

Febris, puppis, securis, turris, &c., prefer im, i.
Neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, have Abl. *i*, N. plur. *ia*, G. plur. *ium*.

13. Besides the neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, the following classes of words generally make G. plur. *ium*.

* In repeating the Table, let the pupil say, "Nom., various,—generally not containing the unaltered root." See 42.

- (a) Nouns in *es, is, er*, not increasing in the Gen.
 (b) Nouns in *s, z*, after a consonant, except words of more than one syllable in *ps*.
 (c) Monosyllables.
 (d) National names in *es, is*, that make their genitives in *stis, tis*, respectively.

EXCEPTIONS.

- (e) *But vates, proles, juvenis, senex, canis,*
Take um; with pater, frater, mater, panis.
- (f) Of monosyllables, the following, with a few more,¹ take *um* :
Dux, vox, grex, lex,
Pes, fur, prex, rex,
Mos, flos, fraus, laus.

14. The fourth declension is a *contracted* form of the third declension : G. *ũs, ūs*. Abl. *ũē, ū*, &c. The dat. is often *u*, (for *ui*.)

15. The following words of the *fourth* have Abl. *ũbus* :

arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus,
Et tribus, et partus; specus addē, veruque, pecuque.

16. In the fifth declension, *e* of G. and D. is *long*, if it follows a vowel; *short*, if it follows a consonant, (*faciēi, fidēi*).²

§ 17. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

18. Names of men and of male beings, and the names of rivers, winds, and months, are *masculine*.

19. Names of women and female beings; most of names of trees, towns, countries, and islands, are *feminine*.

20. Nouns which signify either male or female, are of the *common* gender. The following lines contain most of the Latin nouns of two genders :

¹ The following lines give a more complete list :—

ren, fur, and lar, with es, dux, fraus, and dos,
grus, laus, and pes, with sus, cruz, faz, and mos;
 Add *grex* with *bos* and *flos*; add *fecz* and *fruz,*
lez, prex, and rez, with crus, and vox and nux.

² Compare note, First Latin Book, p. 25

*Antistes, vates, adolescens, auctor et augur,
Dux, iudex, index, testis, cum cive sacerdos,
Municipi adde parens, patrueli affinis et heres,
Artifici, conjux utque incola, miles et hostis,
Pars, juvenis, martyr, comes, infans, obse et hospes,
Interpres, præsul, custos, vindex que satellites.*

21 Names of animals which include both sexes, but which admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. Such nouns commonly follow the gender of their terminations. But if the sex of the particular animal is to be stated, the word *mas* or *femina* is added; as, *anas mas*, *anas femina*, &c.

22. All indeclinable nouns; names of the letters of the alphabet, &c., are *neuter*.

23. The mode of determining the gender of nouns from their terminations, will be explained under each declension. See also "Table of Genders," 171

§ 24. FIRST DECLENSION.

25. Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, and *es*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine, with the exception of a few names of *men*, and *designations of men*; as, *poëta*, a poet; *agricola*, a husbandman; &c. Those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. Mus- <i>a</i>	.....	<i>a muse</i>	N. Mus- <i>æ</i>	.....	<i>muses</i>
G. Mus- <i>æ</i>	.....	<i>of a muse</i>	G. Mus- <i>arum</i>	.....	<i>of muses</i>
D. Mus- <i>æ</i>	.....	<i>to a muse</i>	D. Mus- <i>is</i>	.....	<i>to muses</i>
A. Mus- <i>am</i>	.....	<i>a muse</i>	A. Mus- <i>as</i>	.....	<i>muses</i>
V. Mus- <i>a</i>	.....	<i>O muse</i>	V. Mus- <i>æ</i>	.....	<i>O muses</i>
A. Mus- <i>â</i>	.....	<i>with a muse</i>	A. Mus- <i>is</i>	.....	<i>with muses</i>

26. In like manner decline—

terra.....	<i>earth, land.</i>	culpa.....	<i>a fault.</i>
âqua.....	<i>water.</i>	cura.....	<i>care.</i>
aquila.....	<i>an eagle.</i>	femina.....	<i>a woman.</i>
arëna.....	<i>sand.</i>	farina.....	<i>meal.</i>
barba.....	<i>the beard.</i>	flamma.....	<i>flame.</i>
catëna.....	<i>a chain.</i>	forma.....	<i>form, beauty.</i>
cëra.....	<i>wax.</i>	galea.....	<i>helmet.</i>
copïa.....	<i>plenty</i>	gratia.....	(1) <i>agreeableness, dis-</i>
corôna.....	<i>crown.</i>		<i>grance, (2) favor, (3) thanks.</i>

<i>hasta</i>	<i>spear.</i>	<i>patria</i>	<i>country.</i>
<i>hora</i>	<i>hour.</i>	<i>pecunia</i>	<i>money.</i>
<i>insula</i>	<i>island.</i>	<i>pœna</i>	<i>a punishment.</i>
<i>ira</i>	<i>anger.</i>	<i>porta</i>	<i>a gate.</i>
<i>lacryma</i>	<i>a tear.</i>	<i>præda</i>	<i>booty, plunder.</i>
<i>lana</i>	<i>wool.</i>	<i>ripa</i>	<i>bank.</i>
<i>libra</i>	<i>a balance.</i>	<i>rôta</i>	<i>a wheel.</i>
<i>lingua</i>	<i>tongue.</i>	<i>sagitta</i>	<i>arrow.</i>
<i>littera, a letter; litteræ, plur., a letter, (i. e. an epistle,) literature.</i>		<i>stella</i>	<i>a star.</i>
<i>luna</i>	<i>the moon.</i>	<i>turba</i>	<i>tumult, a crowd.</i>
<i>mora</i>	<i>delay.</i>	<i>vacca</i>	<i>a cow.</i>
<i>mensa</i>	<i>a table.</i>	<i>via</i>	<i>way.</i>
		<i>umbra</i>	<i>shade.</i>
		<i>unda</i>	<i>wave.</i>

27. Nouns of this declension ending in *as, es, &c.*, are of Greek origin.

EXAMPLES.

"A Turban."				"A Comet."			
Sing.		Plur.		Sing.		Plur.	
N. Tiâr-as		N. Tiâr-æ		N. Comêt-(s		N. Comêt-æ	
G. Tiâr-æ		G. Tiâr-ârum		G. Comêt æ		G. Comêt-ârum	
D. Tiâr-æ		D. Tiâr-is		D. Comêt-æ		D. Comêt-is	
A. Tiâr-am or an		A. Tiâr-âs		A. Comêt-æn		A. Comêt-âs	
V. Tiâr-â		V. Tiâr æ		V. Comêt-ê		V. Comêt-æ	
A. Tiâr-â		A. Tiâr-is		A. Comêt-ê		A. Comêt-is	

"Aloes."

Sing.	Plur.
N. Alo-ê	N. Alo-æ
G. Alo-ês	G. Alo-ârum
D. Alo-æ	D. Alo-is
A. Alo-ên	A. Alo-âs
V. Alo-ê	V. Alo-æ
A. Alo-ê	A. Alo-is

28. Some nouns of this declension have *abus* in the dat. and abl. plur., to distinguish them from masculine nouns in *us* of the second declension; as, *Dea, Filia, Equa, Mula*, and a few others.

29. The following words are plurals with a singular meaning:—

Divitiæ, riches; *tenibræ*, darkness; *litteræ*, a letter, (in the sense of an epistle;) *mandina*, a market or fair; *nuptiæ*, a wedding

30. Also, some names of towns.—

Athina, Athens; *Syracûsæ*, Syracuse; *Thebæ*, Thebes.

§ 31. SECOND DECLENSION.

32. Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, *um*, *os*, *on*.

33. In nouns in *er* in this declension, the whole nominative is the *root*; but most of them throw away the *e*: as, *Magister*, *magistri*, &c., not *magisteri*.

Puer, boy *gener*, son-in-law; *socer*, father-in-law; *Liber*, Bacchus; *libera* children; with *adulter*, and those in *fer*, *ger*, &c., retain the *e*.

34. Nouns in *us*, *er* of this declension are masculine; except,—

(1) Feminine:

<i>alvus</i>	<i>belly</i> .	<i>humus</i>	<i>ground</i> .
<i>domus</i>	<i>house, home</i> .	<i>vannus</i>	<i>winnowing fan</i> ,
and a few others.			

(2) Neuter:

virus, juice, poison. *pelagus*, sea. *vulgus*, [also masc.] common people

35. Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; nouns in *os* masculine.

EXAMPLES.

"A Son-in-law."				"A Field."			
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
N	Genēr	N.	Genēr-i	N.	Agēr	N.	Agr-i
G	Genēr-i	G.	Genēr-ōrum	G.	Agr-i	G.	Agr-ōrum
D	Genēr-o	D.	Genēr-is	D.	Agr-o	D.	Agr-is
A	Genēr-um	A.	Genēr-ōs	A.	Agr-um	A.	Agr-ōs
V	Genēr	V.	Genēr-i	V.	Agēr	V.	Agr-i
A.	Genēr-o	A.	Genēr-is	A.	Agr-o	A.	Agr-is

"A Raven."				"A Kingdom."			
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
N	Corv-us	N.	Corv-i	N.	Regn-um	N.	Regn-i
G	Corv-i	G.	Corv-ōrum	G.	Regn-i	G.	Regn-ōrum
D	Corv-o	D.	Corv-is	D.	Regn-o	D.	Regn-is
A	Corv-um	A.	Corv-ōs	A.	Regn-um	A.	Regn-i
V	Corv-e	V.	Corv-i	V.	Regn-um	V.	Regn-i
A.	Corv-o	A.	Corv-is	A.	Regn-o	A.	Regn-is

36. In like manner decline,—

<i>æcervus</i>	<i>heap</i>	<i>aromer</i>	<i>an umpire</i> .
<i>agnus</i>	<i>lamb</i> .	<i>asīnus</i>	<i>an ass</i> .
<i>amicus</i>	<i>a friend</i> .	<i>astrum</i>	<i>constellation</i> .
<i>angulus</i>	<i>corner</i> .	<i>avus</i>	<i>grandfather</i> .
<i>animus</i>	<i>mind</i> .	<i>bellum</i>	<i>war</i> .
<i>annus</i>	<i>year</i> .	<i>cancer</i>	<i>a crab</i>

caper.....	a goat.	mendicus.....	a beggar.
capillus.....	the hair of the human head; a hair.	mōdus.....	a measure.
cælum.....	heaven.	morbus.....	disease.
[plur. cœli.]		mundus.....	world.
cumflus.....	heap.	mŭrus.....	wall.
Deus ¹	God.	nā-us.....	nuss.
digitus.....	finger, toe.	nŭdus.....	a nest.
dominus.....	a master, a lord.	nōdus.....	knot.
dōmus ²	a house, home. [partly of decl. 4.]	nōmērus.....	number.
dōnum.....	gift.	nummus.....	coin, money.
ēquus.....	a horse.	nundus.....	a messenger; message.
ferrum.....	iron.	ocŭlus.....	eye.
filius.....	a son. [voc. fili.] ³	plumbum.....	lead.
fōcus.....	hearth.	pōpŭlus.....	people.
fōliam.....	leaf.	prētium.....	value, price.
fūmus.....	smoke.	rādus.....	the spoke of a wheel; a ray.
glādus.....	a sword.	rāmus.....	branch.
hāmus.....	hook.	scopŭlus.....	rock.
hortus.....	a garden.	servus.....	a slave.
jūgum.....	yoke.	socius.....	an associate, partner. an ally.
lētum.....	death.	somnus.....	sleep.
līber.....	the inner bark of a tree; a book.*	taurus.....	bull.
līnum.....	flax.	tŭlum.....	weapon.
lōcus.....	place. [plur. loci and loca.]	terminus.....	end.
lŭdus.....	play; a school.	ventus.....	wind.
maritus.....	a husband.	verbum.....	a word.
		vestigium.....	footstep.
		vir ⁴	a man.

Obs. The above list does not contain the names of females and female designations; nor those of trees, of which many are feminine.

37. (Plural words with sing. meaning :)

castra..... a camp. | fasti..... the calendar

And the towns *Gabii, Veii, &c.*

38. Greek nouns ending in *os* and *on* are thus declined :—

		"A Lyre."	
		Sing.	Plur.
N. Dēl-os.....	Delos	N. Barbit-on	N. Barbit-ā
G. Dēl-i.....	of Delos	G. Barbit-i	G. Barbit-ōn
D. Dēl-o.....	to Delos	D. Barbit-o	D. Barbit-is
A. Dēl-on.....	Delos	A. Barbit-on	A. Barbit-ā
V. Dēl-e.....	O Delos	V. Barbit-on	V. Barbit-ā
A. Dēl-o.....	with Delos	A. Barbit-o	A. Barbit-is

¹ Voc. sing. *Deus*; plur. nom. *Dii, Di, or Dei*; dat. abl. *Diis, Dis, or Deis*

² Sec 52, 53.

³ So proper names in *ius*; as, *Virgili, Pompei*, from *Virgilius, Pompeius*. *Meus* voc. masc. *mi*.

⁴ The only noun in *ir*; it is declined like *gener*.

* So called, because the ancients used to write on this inner rind

39. Greek proper names in *eus* (ς) are usually declined like *corvus*, except in the vocat., which ends in *eu*. They are sometimes of the third declension

§ 40. THIRD DECLENSION.

41. The number of final letters of this declension is twelve. Five are vowels, *a, e, i, o, y*, and seven are consonants, *c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

42. Tabular view of the terminations :—

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
N. a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.		N. es. neut. <i>ū</i> or <i>ia</i>	
G. is		G. um or ium	
D. i		D. ibus	
A. em (neut. like nom.)		A. like nom.	
V. like nom.		V. like nom.	
A. ē or i		A. ibus	

§ 43. GENDER OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.¹

44. The following are the masculine terminations :

ER, OR, OS, ES, when the gen. increases ; and any termination in *e*, except *do, go, io*.

45. The following are the feminine terminations :

do, go, lo, as, is, aus, x, ^{as} not increasing in the genitive, & impure.

46. The other terminations are neuter : that is,—

c, a, t, e, l,² nar, ur, us.

EXAMPLES.

"A Poem."		"A Speech." masc.	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Poēmā	N. Poēmāt-ē	N. Sermo	N. Sermōn-es
G. Poēmāt-is	G. Poēmāt-um	G. Sermōn-is	G. Sermōn-um
D. Poēmāt-i	D. Poēmat-ibus	D. Sermōn-i	D. Sermōn-ibus
A. Poēmā	A. Poēmāt-ē	A. Sermōn-en-	A. Sermōn-es
V. Poēmā	V. Poēmāt-ē	V. Sermo	V. Sermōn-es
A. Poēmāt-ē	A. Poēmat-ibus	A. Sermōn-ē	A. Sermōn-ibus

¹ See "Table of Genders," 171

² Those letters are contained in the word *catilla*.

"A Sea."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Mār-e	N. Mār-īš
G. Mār-īs	G. Mār-īum
D. Mār-I	D. Mār-ībus
A. Mār-ē	A. Mār-īā
V. Mār-ē	V. Mār-īā
A. Mār-I	A. Mār-ībus

"A Virgin."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Virgo	N. Virgīn-ēs
G. Virgīn-īs	G. Virgīn-um
D. Virgīn-I	D. Virgīn-ibus
A. Virgīn-em	A. Virgīn-ē
V. Virg-o	V. Virgīn-ēs
A. Virgīn-ē	A. Virgīn-ibus

"An Animal."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Animal	N. Animāl-īā
G. Animāl-īs	G. Animāl-īum
D. Animāl-I	D. Animāl-ībus
A. Animal	A. Animāl-īā
V. Animal	V. Animāl-īā
A. Animāl-I	A. Animāl-ībus

"A Verse."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Carmen	N. Carmīn-ā
G. Carmīn-īs	G. Carmīn-um
D. Carmīn-I	D. Carmīn-ibus
A. Carmen	A. Carmīn-ā
V. Carmen	V. Carmīn-ā
A. Carmīn-ē	A. Carmīn-ibus

"Labor."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Lābor	N. Labōr-ēs
G. Labōr-īs	G. Labor-um
D. Labōr-I	D. Labor-ibus
A. Labōr-em	A. Labor-es
V. Labor	V. Labor-es
A. Labōr-ē	A. Labor-ibus

"A Rock."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Rup-ēs	N. Rup-es
G. Rup-īs	G. Rup-um
D. Rup-I	D. Rup-ibus
A. Rup-em	A. Rup-es
V. Rup-ēs	V. Rup-es
A. Rup-ē	A. Rup-ibus

"Art."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Ars	N. Art-ēs
G. Art-īs	G. Art-īum
D. Art-I	D. Art-ībus
A. Art-em	A. Art-ēs
V. Ars	V. Art-ēs
A. Art-ē	A. Art-ībus

"A Soldier."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Miles	N. Milit-ēs
G. Milit-īs	G. Milit-um
D. Milit-I	D. Milit-ibus
A. Milit-em	A. Milit-ēs
V. Miles	V. Milit-ēs
A. Milit-ē	A. Milit-ibus

"A Father."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Pater	N. Patr-ēs
G. Patr-īs	G. Patr-um
D. Patr-I	D. Patr-ibus
A. Patr-em	A. Patr-ēs
V. Pater	V. Patr-ēs
A. Patr-ē	A. Patr-ibus

"A Woman."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Mulier	N. Mullēr-ēs
G. Mullēr-īs	G. Mullier-um
D. Mullēr-I	D. Mullēr-ibus
A. Mullēr-em	A. Mullier-ēs
V. Mulier	V. Mullēr-ēs
A. Mullēr-ē	A. Mullier-ibus

"A Work."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Ōpus	N. Opēr-ā
G. Opēr-īs	G. Opēr-um
D. Opēr-I	D. Opēr-ibus
A. Ōpus	A. Opēr-ā
V. Ōpus	V. Opēr-ā
A. Opēr-ē	A. Opēr-ibus

"A Stone."

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Lāpis	N. Lapid-ēs
G. Lapid-īs	G. Lapid-um
D. Lapid-I	D. Lapid-ibus
A. Lapid-em	A. Lapid-ēs
V. Lapis	V. Lapid-ēs
A. Lapid-ē	A. Lapid-ibus

"A Tower."				"A Journey."			
Sing.		Plur.		Sing.		Plur.	
N. Turr- <i>is</i>		N. Turr- <i>ēs</i>		N. Itēr		N. Itinēr- <i>ā</i>	
G. Turr- <i>is</i>		G. Turr- <i>um</i>		G. Itinēr- <i>is</i>		G. Itinēr- <i>um</i>	
D. Turr- <i>i</i>		D. Turr- <i>ibus</i>		D. Itinēr- <i>i</i>		D. Itinēr- <i>ibus</i>	
A. Turr- <i>em</i> or <i>im</i>		A. Turr- <i>ēs</i>		A. Itēr		A. Itinēr- <i>ā</i>	
V. Turr- <i>is</i>		V. Turr- <i>ēs</i>		V. Itēr		V. Itinēr- <i>ā</i>	
A. Turr- <i>ē</i> or		A. Turr- <i>ibus</i>		A. Itinēr- <i>ē</i>		A. Itinēr- <i>ibus</i>	

"A Head."				"Night"			
Sing.		Plur.		Sing.		Plur.	
N. Caput		N. Capit- <i>ā</i>		N. Nox		N. Noct- <i>ēs</i>	
G. Capit- <i>is</i>		G. Capit- <i>um</i>		G. Noct- <i>is</i>		G. Noct- <i>ium</i>	
D. Capit- <i>i</i>		D. Capit- <i>ibus</i>		D. Noct- <i>i</i>		D. Noct- <i>ibus</i>	
A. Caput		A. Capit- <i>ā</i>		A. Noct- <i>em</i>		A. Noct- <i>ēs</i>	
V. Caput		V. Capit- <i>ā</i>		V. Nox		V. Noct- <i>ēs</i>	
A. Capit- <i>ē</i>		A. Capit- <i>ibus</i>		A. Noct- <i>ē</i>		A. Noct- <i>ibus</i>	

"Thirst."				"Snow."			
Sing.		Plur.		Sing.		Plur.	
N. Sit- <i>is</i>		N. Sit- <i>ēs</i>		N. Nix		N. Niv- <i>ēs</i>	
G. Sit- <i>is</i>		G. Sit- <i>ium</i>		G. Niv- <i>is</i>		G. Niv- <i>ium</i>	
D. Sit- <i>i</i>		D. Sit- <i>ibus</i>		D. Niv- <i>i</i>		D. Niv- <i>ibus</i>	
A. Sit- <i>im</i>		A. Sit- <i>ēs</i>		A. Niv- <i>em</i>		A. Niv- <i>ēs</i>	
V. Sit- <i>is</i>		V. Sit- <i>ēs</i>		V. Nix		V. Niv- <i>ēs</i>	
A. Sit- <i>i</i>		A. Sit- <i>ibus</i>		A. Niv- <i>ē</i>		A. Niv- <i>ibus</i>	

47. In like manner decline,—

āēr, aēris ¹ the lower air.	fānus, ēris a funeral, death
æther, æris ¹ the upper and purer air.	frons, frontis forehead.
arbor, ōris, f. tree.	grex, grēgis, m. flock.
āpis, (g. pl. <i>ium</i> and <i>um</i>) a bee.	jūdex, icis a judge.
āvis bird.	hæres, hærēdis an heir.
cālor, ōris heat.	hospēs, hospītis, c. . . . a host, a guest.
calx, calcis lime; the heel.	ignis, m. fire.
carbo, ōnis ² coal.	jūvēnis a young man.
carcer, ēris a prison.	hostis, c. an enemy.
cāro, carnis, f. flesh.	index, indīcis an informer, a sign.
cinis, cinēris, m. ashes.	laus, laudis praise.
civis, c. a citizen.	lātus, ēris side.
civitas, ātis a state.	legio, ōnis a body of Roman soldiers; 6000 men and 300 horse.
classis a class, a fleet.	lex, lēgis law.
cor, cordis, n. heart.	lis, litis strife.
corpus, corpōris body.	lūmen, inis light.
crimen, inis a crime. a charge.	lux, lūcis light.
crux, crūcis a cross.	māter, matris mother.
custos, ōdis a keeper.	frāter, fratris brother.
dens, dentis, m. a tooth.	pāter, patris father.
sex, facis drugs.	mens, mentis mind.
dōlor, ōris pain, sorrow.	merx, mercis merchandise.
febris a fever.	mons, montis, m. mountain.
fīnis, m. f. end.	mors, mortis death.
flos, flōris a flower.	mūnus, munēris a gift.
fons, fontis, m. fountain.	nāvis a ship.
fœdus, ēris a treaty.	nōmen, inis name.
frigus, frigōris cold.	

¹ These words have mostly the Greek acc. in ā: *āērā*, *ætherā*.² Properly, a dead, extinguished coal

onus, onēris	a burden.	rūs, rūris	country
os, oris, n.	mouth.	salūs, salūtis, f.	safety, health.
os, ossis, n.	bone.	sanguis, sanguinis, m.	blood.
pastor, ōris	a shepherd.	semen, inis	seed.
pax, pācis	peace.	tempus, ōris	time.
pes, pēdis	a foot.	testis, c.	a witness.
pondus, ōris	weight.	timor, ōris	fear.
pons, pontis, m.	bridge.	urbs, urbis	city.
pulvis, ōris, m.	dust.	uxor, ōris	a wife.
quies, ōtis, f.	rest, quiet.	venter, ventris	the belly.
rādx, radīcis	root.	vesper, ōris	he evening.
requies, (gen. ētis and ei : acc. requiem) f.	rest.	vōluntas, ātis	will, inclination.
		voluptas, ātis	pleasure.

§ 48. FOURTH DECLENSION.

49 Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine, except these feminines :

Acus	a needle.	Mānus	a hand
Idus (pl.)	the Ides.	P. rīcus	a portico.
Dōmus	a house.	Ficus	a fig.
Tribus	a tribe.	Pēnus	a storehouse.

50. This declension is really a contracted form of the third :

gen. gradūs, *gradūs* ; acc. gradūem, *gradum* ; abl. gradue, *gradū*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

"Fruit."		"A Horn."	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. Fruct-us	N. Fruct-us	N. Corn-u	N. Corn-ūā
G. Fruct-ūs	G. Fruct-uum	G. Corn-ūs ¹	G. Corn-uum
D. Fruct-ūi	D. Fruct-ibus	D. Corn-u	D. Corn-ibus
A. Fruct-um	A. Fruct-us	A. Corn-u	A. Corn-ūā
V. Fruct-us	V. Fruct-us	V. Corn-u	V. Corn-ūā
A. Fruct-u	A. Fruct-ibus	A. Corn-u	A. Corn-ibus

51. In like manner decline,—

cantus	a song.	querens	an oak.
currus	a chariot.	senātus	the senate.
exercitus	an army.	sensus	a sense, feeling
fluctus	a wave.	sexus	a sex.
gēlu	ice.	sinus	a bosom.
gēnu	the knee	sumptus	expense.
lācus	a lake.	tōnitrū	thunder.
luctus	grief.	tumultus	an uproar.
manus	hand.	venātus	hunting.
motus	motion.	vēru	a spit.
portus	a port.	victus	food.
passus	a pace.	vultus	the countenance.

¹ The genit. of nouns in *u* of the fourth declension, was in *ūs*. See note, "First Latin Book," p. 16.

52. *Dŏmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth, and partly of the second declension. It is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
N. Dŏmus		N. Dom-us
G. Dom-ūs or ŭ		G. Dom-uum or ūrum
D. Dom-uit or ō		D. Dom-ibus
A. Dom-um		A. Dom-us or ūs
V. Domus		V. Dom-us
A. Dom-ō		A. Dom-ibus

53. NOTE. *Domūs* in the genit. signifies of a house ; and *domi*, at home or of home

§ 54. FIFTH DECLENSION.

55. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*. They are all feminine excepting *dies* ; which is masculine or feminine in the singular ; *masculine only* in the plural. Its compound *meridies* (noon) is masculine.

56. REM. The *e* of the gen. is *long*, when it follows a *vowel* ; *short*, when it follows a *consonant* ; *rēi, fidēi, faciēi*.*

EXAMPLES.

<i>"A Thing."</i>		<i>"A Day."</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. Res	N. Res	N. Di-ēs	N. Di-ēs
G. Rē-i	G. Rē-rum	G. Di-ēi	G. Di-ērum
D. Rē-i	D. Rē-bus	D. Di-ēi	D. Di-ēbus
A. Rem	A. Res	A. Di-ēin	A. Di-ēs
V. Res	V. Res	V. Di-ēs	V. Di-ēs
A. Re	A. Rē-bus	A. Di-ē	A. Di-ēbus

57. In like manner decline,—

acies.....the edge or point of a thing ; line of battle.	sānles .....gore.
facies.....the face.	sēries.....an order or row.
fidēs.....faith.	spēcies .....appearance,
glaciēs .....ice.	fora.
perulciēs .....destruction.	spēs .....hope.
	temperies .....temperateness.

* See note, "First Latin Book, p 25.

§ 58. ADJECTIVES.

59. An adjective is a word added to a substantive, to qualify or limit its meaning.

60. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

61. Adjectives of *three* terminations are of the first and second declensions; adjectives of *one* or *two* terminations are of the third.

62. Adjectives of three terminations end in *us, a, um*; and *er, a, um*.

63. In the *masc.* and *neut.* these adjectives are declined like substantives of the *second declension*; in the *fem.* like substantives of the *first declension*.

64. A few make the gen. in *ius* and the dat. in *i* for all genders.

65. Terminations :—

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>			A few are declined thus:
	2	1	2	2	1	2	
Nom.	us	a	um	i	æ	ī	us a um
Gen.	i	æ	i	orum	arum	orum	ius
Dat.	o	æ	o	is			i
Acc.	um	am	um	os	as	a	um am um
Voc.	e	a	um	i	æ	a	e a um
Abl.	o	ā	o	is			o ā o

66. Adjectives of three terminations are thus declined :—

Bōnus, "good."

	<i>Sing.</i>		
N. Bōn-us	bōn-ā	bōn-um	
G. Bōn-i	bōn-æ	bōn-i	
D. Bōn-ō	bōn-æ	bōn-o	
A. Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	
V. Bōn-e	bōn-a	bōn-um	
A. Bōn-o	bōn-ā	bōn-o	
	<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Bōn-i	bōn-æ	bōn-ī	
G. Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum	
D. Bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is	
A. Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ī	
V. Bōn-i	bōn-æ	bōn-ī	
A. Bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is	

Tener, "tender."

	<i>Sing.</i>		
N. Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	
G. Tener-i	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-i	
D. Tener-o	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-o	
A. Tener-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	
V. Tener	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	
A. Tener-o	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-o	
	<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Tēnēr-i	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ī	
G. Tener-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum	
D. Tener-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	
A. Tener-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ī	
V. Tener-i	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ī	
A. Tener-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	

67. Most adjectives in *er* drop the *e* in declension:*Æger*, "sick."

<i>Sing.</i>		
N. <i>Æger</i>	ægr- <i>f</i>	ægr-um
G. <i>Ægr-i</i>	ægr-æ	ægr-i
D. <i>Ægr-ō</i>	ægr-æ	ægr-o
A. <i>Ægr-um</i>	ægr-am	ægr-um
V. <i>Æger</i>	ægr- <i>f</i>	ægr-um
A. <i>Ægr-ō</i>	ægr- <i>f</i>	ægr-ō

<i>Plur.</i>		
N. <i>Ægr-i</i>	ægr-æ	ægr- <i>f</i>
G. <i>Ægr-ōrum</i>	ægr- <i>f</i> rum	ægr-ōrum
D. <i>Ægr-is</i>	ægr-is	ægr-is
A. <i>Ægr-ōs</i>	ægr- <i>f</i> s	ægr- <i>f</i>
V. <i>Ægr-i</i>	ægr-æ	ægr- <i>f</i>
A. <i>Ægr-is</i>	ægr-is	ægr-is

68. Six adjectives in *us* and three in *er* have their gen. sing. in *ius*, and dat. in *i*, in all the genders, viz.—*Alius*, a, ud; *Nullus*; *Solus*; *Totus*; *Ullus*; *Unus*; *Alter*, -*ēra*, -*ērum*; *Uter*, ra, rum; *Neuter*, ra, rum.

Unus, "one."

<i>Sing.</i>		
N. <i>Unus</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>	unum
G. <i>Unius</i> ¹	un ¹ - <i>f</i> us	un ¹ - <i>f</i> us
D. <i>Unī</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>
A. <i>Unum</i>	unam	unum
V. <i>Un¹</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>	unum
A. <i>Unō</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>	unō

<i>Plur.</i>		
N. <i>Unī</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>
G. <i>Unorum</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i> rum	un ¹ - <i>f</i> orum
D. <i>Unis</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i> is	un ¹ - <i>f</i> is
A. <i>Unos</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i> as	un ¹ - <i>f</i>
V. <i>Unī</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i>
A. <i>Unis</i>	un ¹ - <i>f</i> is	un ¹ - <i>f</i> is

69. Adjectives of *one* and *two terminations* are of the *third* declension.

70. Adjectives in *is* have neut. *e*; Abl. *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*; G. *ium*.

71. Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us*; Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *a*; G. *um*.

¹ *Solius* appears to have *i*, though commonly considered as *long*

72. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the *neut. sing.*, and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.*, (except in *Nom. sing.*)

73. They have *Abl. e* or *i*. *Neut. plur. ia*; *G. ium*.

For participles *abl. e* { is the more common.
For adjectives *abl. i* {

74. But

Pauper, superstes, caelebs, ales, nospes,
Have *e*, with compos, puber, index, sospes,

and a few more; these have also *G. plur. um*. *Vetus* (*G. veteris*) has *neut. pl. vetēra*.

75. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of two and three terminations, are,—

	Two Terminations.				Comparatives.				One Termination.			
	S.		P.		S.		P.		S.		P.	
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	(N.)	M.F.	N.
N. V.	<i>is</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ores</i>	<i>ora</i>	—	—	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>
G.	<i>is</i>		<i>ium</i>		<i>oris</i>		<i>orum</i>		<i>is</i>		<i>ium</i>	
D.	<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>		<i>ori</i>		<i>oribus</i>		<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>	
Acc.	<i>em</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>orem</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ores</i>	<i>ora</i>	<i>em</i>	as nom.	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>
Abl.	<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>		<i>ore</i> (ori)		<i>oribus</i>		<i>e</i> or <i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>	

Acer, "sharp."

Sing.

N. Acer or acris	acr-is	acr-e
G. Acr-is	acr-is	acr-is
D. Acr-i	acr-i	acr-i
A. Acr-em	acr-em	acr-e
V. Acer or acris	acr-is	acr-e
A. Acr-i	acr-i	acr-i

Plur.

N. Acr-ēs	acr-ēs	acr-ī
G. Acr-ium	acr-ium	acr-ium
D. Acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus
A. Acr-es	acr-es	acr-ī
V. Acr-es	acr-es	acr-ī
A. Acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus

Mitis, 'mild.'

	<i>Sing.</i>		
N	Mit-is	mit-is	mit-ē
G	Mit-is	mit-is	mit-is
D	Mit-i	mit-i	mit-i
A	Mit-em	mit-em	mit-e
V	Mit-is	mit-is	mit-e
A	Mit-i	mit-i	mit-i

	<i>Plur.</i>		
N	Mit-ēs	mit-es	mit-ī
G	Mit-ium	mit-ium	mit-ium
D	Mit-ibus	mit-ibus	mit-ibus
A	Mit-es	mit-es	mit-ī
V	Mit-es	mit-es	mit-ī
A	Mit-ibus	mit-ibus	mit-ibus

Mitior, 'milder.'

	<i>Sing.</i>		
N	Mit-ior	mit-ior	mit-ius
G	Mit-iōris	mit-iōris	mit-iōris
D	Mit-iōri	mit-iōri	mit-iōri
A	Mit-iōrem	mit-iōrem	mit-ius
V	Mit-ior	mit-ior	mit-ius
A	Mit-iōre (ri)	mit-iōre (ri)	mit-iōre (ri)

	<i>Plur.</i>		
N	Mit-iōres	mit-iōres	mit-iōrā
G	Mit-iōrum	mit-iōrum	mit-iōrum
D	Mit-iōribus	mit-iōribus	mit-iōribus
A	Mit-iōres	mit-iōres	mit-iōrā
V	Mit-iōres	mit-iōres	mit-iōrā
A	Mit-iōribus	mit-iōribus	mit-iōribus

76. In like manner all comparatives, except *plus*, are declined.

Felix, "happy."

	<i>Sing.</i>		
N	Fēl-ix	Fēl-ix	Fēl-ix
G	Fel-icis	Fēl-icis	Fel-icis
D	Fel-ici	Fel-ici	Fel-ici
A	Fel-icem	Fel-icem	Fēl-ix
V	Fel-ix	Fel-ix	Fel-ix
A	Fel-ice or ci	Fel-ice or ci	Fel-ice or ci

	<i>Plur.</i>		
N	Fēl-icēs	Fēl-icēs	Fel-iciā
G	Fel-icium	Fel-icium	Fel-icium
D	Fel-icibus	Fel-icibus	Fel-icibus
A	Fel-ices	Fel-ices	Fel-iciā
V	Fel-ices	Fel-ices	Fel-iciā
A	Fel-icibus	Fel-icibus	Fel-icibus

Prudens, "prudent"

	<i>Sing.</i>		
N	Prud-ens	prud-ens	prud-ens
G	Prud-entis	prud-entis	prud-entis
D	Prud-enti	prud-enti	prud-enti
A	Prud-entem	prud-entem	prud-ens
V	Prud-ens	prud-ens	prud-ens
A	Prud-ente or ti	prud-ente or ti	prud-ente or ti

	<i>Plur.</i>		
N	Prud-entes	prud-entes	prud-entiā
G	Prud-entium	prud-entium	prud-entium
D	Prud-entibus	prud-entibus	prud-entibus
A	Prud-entes	prud-entes	prud-entiā
V	Prud-entes	prud-entes	prud-entiā
A	Prud-entibus	prud-entibus	prud-entibus

77. In like manner decline,—

acerbus.....sour.	facilis.....easy
acūtus ¹.....sharp.	festus.....festive, joyful.
emulus.....rivalling.	fortis.....brave, strong.
amarus.....bitter.	frigidus.....cold.
æquus.....even, equal, just.	gravis.....heavy, important,
amœnus.....pleasant, delightful, (to the sight.)	serious.
altus.....high; deep.	intēger.....whole, (hence upright, honest.)
asper (era, erum).....rough.	lātus.....broad.
bonus.....good.	longus.....long.
brevis.....short.	laxus.....louse.
candidus.....bright, white.	magnus.....great.
cavus.....hollow.	matūrus.....ripe.
clārus.....clear, illustrious.	mi-ser (era, &c.).....miserable.
clēmēns.....mild, clement.	mollis.....soft.
commōdus.....suitable, convenient; (of persons) agreeable, com- plaisant.	prōbus.....honest, good.
crassus.....thick, coarse.	plu. ².....more.
crūdus.....raw, unripe.	plēnus.....full.
curvus.....bent.	par.....equal, like.
densus.....thick.	stērilis.....barren.
difficilis.....difficult.	{ sēnex (g. senis).....old, { (of persons.)
dignus.....worthy, deserving.	{ senior.....older.
dubius.....doubtful.	sollicitus.....disturbed, unquiet, anxious.
dūrus.....hard.	vērū.....true
ebrius.....drunk, drunken.	vētus, vetēris.....old.

alter ³.....the other, (of two;) one more.	neuter ³.....neither of the two.
	totus ³.....wholes.
solus ³.....alone.	

78. There are some adjectives, such as, *summus*, (*highest*,) *medius*, (*middle*,) *imus*, (*lowest*,) *reliquus*, (*remaining*,) *ultimus*, *extremus*, (*last*,) &c., which are generally translated into English by substantives; as

(The top of the mountain.)	(The foot of the oak.)	(The rest of the work.)
N. <i>summus mons</i>	ima <i>quercus</i>	reliquum <i>opus</i>
G. <i>summi montis</i>	imæ <i>quercus</i>	reliqui <i>operis</i>
D. <i>summo monti</i>	imæ <i>quercui</i>	reliquo <i>operi</i>
	and so on	

¹ *Acuo*, to sharpen.

² *Sino*. Nom. Acc. Neut. *plus*; gen. *pluris*; no other cases. PLUR. *plures*. neut. *plura*; gen. *plurium*; dat. abl. *pluribus*.

³ These make gen. *ius*; dat. *i*. See 68. So *ullus*, (*any*;) *nullus*, (*none*;) *uter*, (*which of two*;) with its compounds; *uterque*, (*each*;) *utervis*, (*which of the two you please*;) gen. *utriusque*, *utriusvis*, &c.—In *unusquisque*, both words are declined; gen. *uniuscujusque*. *Alius*, neut. *aliud*; gen. *alius*; dat. *alii*, &c. *Alter*, gen. *alterius*.

79. *Duo* and *tres* are thus declined.

N. Duo ¹	duo	duo	N. Tres	tres	tri
G. Duorum	duorum	duorum	G. Trium	trium	trium
D. Duobus	duobus	duobus	D. Tribus	tribus	tribus
A. Duo <i>or</i> duo	duo	duo	A. Tres	tres	tri
V. Duo	duo	duo	V. Tres	tres	tri
A. Duobus	duobus	duobus	A. Tribus	tribus	tribus

80. THE NUMERALS.

(1) CARDINALS. (answering to <i>how many?</i> (the first three declinable.))	ORDINALS. (marking the <i>place</i> any thing holds in a <i>series</i> .)	DISTRIBUTIVES. (answering to <i>how many apiece</i> .)	ADVERBS
1. unus	primus	singuli (<i>pl.</i>)	semel
2. duo	secundus	bi	bis
3. tres	tertius	terni	ter
4. quatuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
5. quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
6. sex	sextus	sexi	sexies
7. septem	septimus	septeni	septies
8. octo	octavus	octeni	octies
9. novem	nonus	noveni	novies
10. decem	decimus	deni	decies
11. undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
12. duodecim	duodecim	duodeni	duodecies
13. tredecim	the two forms used, (tertius decimus, &c.)	the two forms used, (terni deni, &c.)	tredecies
14. quattuordecim			quattuordecies
15. quindecim			quindecies ²
16. sedecim			sedecies
17. septendecim	duodevicesimus undevicesimus	viceni	septiesdecies
18. duodeviginti			duodevices
19. undeviginti			undevices
20. viginti	vicesimus	centeni	vicies
100. centum	vigesimus		centies
1000. mille	centesimus	milleni	millies
2000. { bis mille } { bina millia }	millesimus	bis milleni	millies
	bis millesimus		bis millies

(2) Terminations of the multiples of *ten* and a *hundred*.

CARD	ORD.	DISTRIB.	ADV.
(Tens)	ginta	gesimus cesimus	{ gēni } gies { cēni } cies
			{ added to <i>tri, quadra, quingua, sexta, septua, octo, nona.</i> The forms in <i>c</i> are used for 30 only.
(Hundreds)	{ genti } { centi }	gentesimus centesimus	{ gēni } genties { cēni } centies
			{ added to <i>du, tre, quadrin, quinquin, sex, septin, octin, non,</i> (for <i>adv.</i> also <i>nonin</i> .) The forms in <i>c</i> are for 2, 3, 6 (2 × 3 = 6.)

¹ So *ambo, both*.² Various forms are used besides those set down; especially two uncombined forms are often used where *one compound form* is given. Thus in the adverbs, for *quindecies, quinque decies* and *quinquies decies* may be used: so *sexies decies, &c.*

Oss. (1) The terminations of so many *tens* and so many *hundreds* are alike in the distributive series. But ~~the~~ the *hundreds* have a *consonant*, the *tens* a *vowel* before the termination, except for the multiples by three, in which observe that the *hundreds* have the *earlier vowel*, (tre for *hundreds*; tri for *tens*.) The forms in *genteni*, *centeni*, are also used for the *hundreds*.

Oss. (2) The intermediate forms are made up of two or more of the forms given : *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*, (one and twenty, or twenty-one; as in English;) but the forms *duode-*, *unde-*, (*two-from one-from*), are mostly used for the *two before every ten or hundred*. Above 100 (in the *cardinal numbers*) the *larger precedes*, with or without *et*; but *et* is never used twice.

(*Trecenti sexaginta sex*; or, *trecenti et sexaginta sex*.)

Mille is an indeclinable *adj.*: but *millia* (thousands) is a *plural substantive*; *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

~~With~~ With substantives used in the plural only, the *distributives* are used instead of the *cardinals*; *binæ literæ*, *two letters*. But *uni*, *a*, *a*, is used, (not *singuli*), and *trini* is used for *three*, not *terni*.

§ 81. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

82. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* for the *masc.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*; thus : *Doctus*, *doct-ior*; *sapiens*, *G. sapient-is*, *sapient-ior*; *tener*, *tener-ior*; ¹*pulcher*, (*pulchr.*) *pulchr-ior*.¹

83. The superlative is formed by adding *issimus* (*a*, *um*) to the root.

(a) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rimus* (*a*, *um*) to the nominative; as, *Pulcher*, *pulcherrimus*.

84. *Facilis* *easy*, *difficilis* *difficult*, *similis* *like*, *dis-similis* *unlike*, *gracilis* *slender*, *humilis* *low*, make the superlative in *limus*; as, *Simillimus*, *facillimus*, &c.

85. The following are quite irregular:—

(1) <i>Bonus</i> , (<i>good</i>), <i>melior</i> , <i>optimus</i> .	<i>Magnus</i> , (<i>great</i>), <i>major</i> , <i>maximus</i> .
<i>Malus</i> , (<i>bad</i>), <i>peior</i> , <i>pessimus</i> .	<i>Parvus</i> , (<i>little</i>), <i>minor</i> , <i>minimus</i> .
<i>Multus</i> ' <i>much</i> , pl. <i>many</i> .' plur-	<i>Plus</i> , (<i>neut.</i>) <i>G. pluris</i> , are the only
<i>mus</i> ,	forms in sing.
<i>Multum</i> , (<i>much</i>), <i>plus</i> , <i>plurimum</i> .	<i>Plures</i> , <i>neut.</i> , <i>plura</i> : <i>G. plurium</i> , &c.
<i>Plerque</i> (<i>-æque</i> , <i>-aque</i>) is used for " <i>most</i> " without a substantive.	

¹ Remember that for adjectives in *er*, the whole nominative is the root, the preceding *e* being often dropped.

(2) *Defectives.*

	Comparative.	Superlative.
(<i>citra, on this side,</i>)	citerior, nearer,	citimus, nearest. ¹
(<i>intus, within,</i>)	interior, inner,	intimus, inmost.
(<i>proprie, near,</i>)	proprior, nearer,	proximus, nearest.
(<i>ultra, beyond,</i>)	ulterior, further	ultimus, furthest off, last
(<i>celeris, swift,</i>)	ocior, swifter,	ocissimus, swiftest.
	prior, former,	primus, first.
[<i>deter, (obsolete,)</i>]	deterior, worse, ²	deterimus, worst.

(3) *Abundant.*

extērus,	exterior,	extrēmus,	seldom extimus, (outermost, last.)
infērus,	inferior,	infimus,	imus, (lowest.)
supērus,	superior,	suprēmus,	summus, (highest.)
posterus,	posterior,	postrēmus,	postūmus, (but only in the sense of a posthumous child.)

Also *maturrimus* and *maturrissimus*.
imbecillimus — *imbecillissimus*.

dives, (rich,) *divitiar,* } *divitissimus*. { Cicero uses the longer forms. The shorter
ditior, } *ditissimus*. { come from *dis*, G. *ditis* : of which the N
pl. *ditia* is now the only proper form for
that case.

Jūvēnis, *sēnex*, have comp. *jūnior*, *sēnior*. (*Senex*, old man ; G. *senis*. G. pl. *um*.)

§ 86. PRONOUNS.

87. A Pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

88. There are eighteen simple pronouns :—

Ego, <i>I.</i>	Hic, <i>this or he.</i>	Suus, <i>his, her, its, &c.</i>
Tu, <i>Thou.</i>	Is, <i>that or he.</i>	Cujus ? <i>whose ?</i>
Sui, <i>of himself, &c.</i>	Quis ? <i>who ?</i>	Noster, <i>our.</i>
Ille, <i>that or he.</i>	Qui, <i>who.</i>	Vester, <i>your.</i>
Ipsē, <i>himself.</i>	Meus, <i>my.</i>	Nostras, <i>of our country.</i>
Iste, <i>that or he.</i>	Tuus, <i>thy.</i>	Cujas ? <i>of what country ?</i>

89. Three of these, *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, are substantives ; the remaining fifteen, and all the compound pronouns, are adjectives.

¹ Nearer and nearest to the speaker, with reference to some point or line on this side of which it is situated. Ulterior, ultimus, mark remoteness on the other side.

² In the sense of less good

90. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
N	Ego,	I.	N	Nos,	we.
G.	Mei,	of me.	G.	Nostr-um or -i,	of us.
D.	Mihi,	to me.	D.	Nobis,	to us.
A.	Me,	me.	A.	Nos,	us.
V	—	—	V.	—	—
A	Me,	from or by me.	A.	Nobis,	from or by us.

Singular.			Plural.		
N	Tu,	thou or you.	N	Vos,	ye or you.
G.	Tui,	of thee or you.	G.	Vestr-um or -i,	of you.
D.	Tibi,	to thee or you.	D.	Vobis,	to you.
A.	Te,	thee or you.	A.	Vos,	you.
V.	Tu,	O thou or you.	V.	Vos,	O ye or you.
A.	Te,	with thee or you.	A.	Vobis,	with you.

91. *Sui*, of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined:—

Singular and Plural.		
N.	—	} herself, themselves, &c.
G.	<i>Sui</i> , of himself,	
D.	<i>Sibi</i> , to himself,	
A.	<i>Se</i> , himself,	
V.	—	
A.	<i>Se</i> , by himself,	

92. Adjective pronouns are divided into various classes; as *demonstrative*, *interrogative*, *relative*, *possessive*, *patrial*, &c.

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ille	Ille	Ille-ud	N. Illi	Illæ	Illi
G. Illi-tus	Illius	Illius	G. Illi-orum	Illarum	Illorum
D. Illi	Illis	Illis	D. Illis	Illis	Illis
A. Illi-um	Illam	Ille-ud	A. Illi-os	Illas	Ille-ud
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. Illi-o	Illam	Ille-o	A. Illi-is	Illis	Illis

93. *Iste* is declined like *ille*. *Ipse* makes *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative sing. neut.

Sing.			Plur.		
N	Ille	hoc	N	Hi	hec
G.	Hujus	hujus	G.	Horum	horum
D	Huic	huic	D.	His	his
A	Hunc	hoc	A.	Hos	hos
V	—	—	V.	—	—
A.	Hoc	hoc	A.	His	his

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. <i>Is</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>id</i>	N. <i>Ī</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eā</i>
G. <i>Ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	G. <i>Eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D. <i>Ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	D. <i>Iis</i> <i>or</i> <i>eis</i>	<i>iis</i> <i>or</i> <i>eis</i>	<i>iis</i> <i>or</i> <i>eis</i>
A. <i>Eam</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	A. <i>Eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eā</i>
V. <u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	V. <u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
A. <i>Eo</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eo</i>	A. <i>Iis</i> <i>or</i> <i>eis</i>	<i>iis</i> <i>or</i> <i>eis</i>	<i>iis</i> <i>or</i> <i>eis</i>

94. *Idem, eādem, ĭdem* (compounded of *is* and *dem*) is declined like *is* with *dem* added.

95. The interrogative *quis, quæ, quid*, is generally used as a *substantive*. The interrogative *qui, quæ, quod* is generally used as an *adjective*. It is declined exactly like the relative.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. <i>Quis</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quid</i>	N. <i>Qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quæ</i>
G. <i>Cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	G. <i>Quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
D. <i>Cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	D. <i>Quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>
A. <i>Quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i>	A. <i>Quōs</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quæ</i>
V. <u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	V. <u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
A. <i>Quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	A. <i>Quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. <i>Qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quod</i>	N. <i>Qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quæ</i>
G. <i>Cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	G. <i>Quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
D. <i>Cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	D. <i>Quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>
A. <i>Quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	A. <i>Quōs</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quæ</i>
V. <u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	V. <u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
A. <i>Quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	A. <i>Quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>

96. *Quis* is also "any," (indefin. ;) the fem. sing. and neut. plur. are then sometimes *qua*.

97. The compounds of *qui, quis*, follow the declension of those pronouns. In the following list the appended syllables in italics are added unaltered to the case of *quis* or *qui*.

<i>Quidam</i>	<i>a certain one.</i>
<i>Qui-vis</i> {	<i>any you please.</i>
<i>Qui libet</i> }	
<i>Quis-quam</i>	<i>any; any single one, (when it is denied that there are any.)</i>
<i>Aliquis</i>	<i>any; some, (though not much or many: ali-quis, -qua, -quid or -quod. Neut. pl. -qua.)</i>
<i>Quis-piam</i>	<i>some, somebody.</i>
<i>Quis-que</i>	<i>each. (Unusquisque each one.)</i>

Quisquis	whoever, (used without a substantive: neut. <i>quicquid</i> .)
Qui-cunque	whoever; whatever, (used with a subst.)
Ecquis ?	{ (does) any? (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always <i>ecquis</i> It expects the answer <i>none</i> .)
Uter	which, (of two:) uterque each, (utraque, utrumque; G. -lusque.)
Alius, (a, ud.) . .	another; other. (The first of two <i>alii</i> 's is <i>some</i> .)
Alter	the other, (of two;) another; one more.
Talis	such; antecedent to <i>qualis</i> , (as.)
Tantus	so great; antecedent to <i>quantus</i> , (as.)
Tot	so many; antecedent to <i>quot</i> , (as.)

98. ¶ The compounds of *quis* have generally—

Neuter *quid* when used *without* } a substantive.
 Neuter *quod* when used *with* }

99. ¶ The *quid* is generally written *quic* before *q*. Thus, *quicquam*, (*quidquam*), “any thing;” *quicquid*, (*quidquid*), “whatever.”

100. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *cujus* are declined like *bonus*, (66); but *cujus* is defective: *meus* has vocative sing. masc. *mi*, rarely *meus*.

101. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *æger*, (67.)

102. *Nostras*, *nostratis*; *cujas*, *cujatis*, are of one termination, and declined like *felix*, (76.)

§ 103. THE VERB.

104. A verb expresses that which is affirmed of a person or thing; or, a verb is that part of speech which signifies *to be*, *to do*, or *to suffer*.

105. Verbs are either *active* or *passive*.

106. Active verbs express action, and necessarily imply an agent and an object acted upon; as, *amo te*, “I love thee;” *puer legit librum*, “the boy is reading a book.”

107. Active verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*, which latter are also called *neuter*.

108. An active intransitive verb expresses an action which does not pass over to any object; as, *curro*, “I run;” *ambulo*, “I walk;” *aves volant*, “birds fly.”

109. Passive verbs represent the object as acted upon by the agent; thus, *liber legitur a puero*, "the book is read by the boy;" *tu amāris a me*, "thou art loved by me."

110. *Deponent* verbs are those which have laid aside their active form and passive signification; as, *sequor* "I follow;" *morior*, "I die."

111. Besides the active and passive voices, a verb has moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

112. The moods are four: *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

113. The tenses are six: *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Future*, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future-perfect*.

114. The numbers are two: *Singular* and *Plural*.

115. The persons are three: *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

• 116. Verbs have also *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*.

117. A participle is derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature of a verb and an adjective.

118. Active verbs have usually *four* participles; two in the active, a present and future—as, *amans*, "loving," *amatūrus*, "about to love;" and two in the passive, a perfect and future—as, *amātus*, "loved or having been loved," and *amandus*, "to be loved."

119. Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

120. Deponent verbs, both active and neuter may have the participles of both voices.

121. Gerunds are verbal nouns used only in the oblique cases and sing. number. They express the action or state of the verb.

122. Supines are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accus. and ablat. singular. The supine in *um* is commonly used in an *active*, the supine in *u* in a *passive* sense.

§ 123. CONJUGATIONS.

124. There are *four* conjugations of verbs in Latin, distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the present infinitive active.

The *first* conjugation has *ā* long before *re*; as, am-āre, nat-āre, &c.

The *second* conjugation has *ē* long before *re*; as, mōn-ēre, doc-ēre, &c.

The *third* conjugation has *ě* short before *re*; as, rēg-ěre, lēg-ěre, &c.

The *fourth* conjugation has *ī* long before *re*; as, aud-īre, hīnn-īre, &c.

§ 125. TERMINATIONS

INDICATIVE					
(ACTIVE VOICE.)					
PRESENT.					
1. ō,	ās,	āt,	āmūs,	ātīs,	ant.
2. eō,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
3. ō,	īs,	īt,	īmūs,	ītīs,	unt.
4. iō,	īs,	īt,	imūs,	itīs,	iunt.
IMPERFECT. (R.)					
ābam,	ābās,	ābāt,	ābāmūs,	ābātīs,	ābant.
ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.
ibam,	ībās,	ībāt,	ībāmūs,	ībātīs,	ībant.
iēbam,	iēbās,	iēbāt,	iēbāmūs,	iēbātīs,	iēbant.
FUTURE. (R.)					
abō,	abīs,	abīt,	abīmūs,	abītīs,	abunt.
ebō,	ebīs,	ebīt,	ebīmūs,	ebītīs,	ebunt.
am,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
iam,	iēs,	iēt,	iēmūs,	iētīs,	ient.
PERFECT.					
ī	istī,	īt,	imūs,	istīs,	{ ērunt, or ērē. }
PLUPERFECT. (r.)					
ēram,	ērās,	ērāt,	ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
FUTURE-PERFECT. (r.)					
ēro	{ ērīs, or ērīs, }	ērīt,	{ ērīmūs, or ērīmūs,	{ ērītīs, or ērītīs,	ērint.
IMPERATIVE					
2	3	2 pl.		3 pl.	
ā, āto,	āto,	ātē,	ātōtē,	anto.	
ē, ēto,	ēto,	ētē,	ētōtē,	ento.	
ī, īto,	īto,	ītē,	ītōtē,	unto.	
i, ito	ito,	iē,	iētē,	iunto.	

Obs. R, r, p, stand respectively for "root of present," "root of perfect," "root of supine." In repeating the table, the pupil should always say *which root* the termination is to be added to. Thus: "Pluperfect; root of perfect, *it*."

OF THE VERB.

MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT.

ēr,	āris(e),	ātūr,	āmār,	āmīnī,	antār.
ēōr,	ēāris(e),	ēātūr,	ēāmār,	ēāmīnī,	entār.
ēr,	ēris(e),	ītūr,	īmār,	īmīnī,	untār.
lōr,	īris(e),	itūr,	imār,	iminī,	iuntār.

IMPERFECT. (R.)

ābār,	ābāris(e),	ābātūr,	ābāmār,	ābāmīnī,	ābantār.
ēbār,	ēbāris(e),	ēbātūr,	ēbāmār,	ēbāmīnī,	ēbantār.
ībār,	ībāris(e),	ībātūr,	ībāmār,	ībāmīnī,	ībantār.
iēbār,	iēbāris(e),	iēbātūr,	iēbāmār,	iēbāmīnī,	iēbantār.

FUTURE. (R.)

ābōr,	ābēris(e),	ābītūr,	ābīmār,	ābīmīnī,	ābuntār.
ēbōr,	ēbēris(e),	ēbītūr,	ēbīmār,	ēbīmīnī,	ēbuntār.
ēr,	ēris(e),	ītūr,	īmār,	īmīnī,	untār.
lār,	īris(e),	itūr,	imār,	iminī,	iuntār.

PERFECT. (r.)

Made up of the *past partic.* with *sum*—(sometimes *fui*).¹

PLUPERFECT. (r.)

Made up of the *past partic.* and *eram*—(sometimes *fueram*).¹

FUTURE-PERFECT. (r.)

Made up of *past partic.* with *ero*—(sometimes *futuro*).¹

MOOD. (R.)

2.		3.	2 pl.		3 pl.
ērē,	ātōr.	ītōr,	āmīnī,	āmīnōr,	antōr.
ēērē,	ēātōr,	ēītōr,	ēāmīnī,	ēāmīnōr,	entōr.
ērē,	ītōr,	ītōr,	īmīnī,	īmīnōr,	untōr.
lērē,	itōr,	itōr,	iminī,	iminōr,	iuntōr.

Oss. 3. Passive adds *r* to the tenses that end in *e*; changes *m* into *r* in those that end in *m*. Oss. The (e) after 2d person sing. means that the termination is *re* or *ris*.

¹ Thus, *amatus sum*, *monitus sum* or *fui*, &c. The participle must be inflected to agree in gender and number with the subject; as, *puer amatus est*; *nos moniti sumus*; *hoc audītum est*; &c.

TERMINATIONS

SUBJUNCTIVE

(ACTIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT. (R.)

1	em,	ēs,	ēt,	ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.
2	eam,	eās,	eēt,	eēmūs,	eētīs,	eant.
3	am,	ās,	āt,	āmūs,	ātīs,	ant.
4	iam,	iās,	iāt,	iāmūs,	iātīs,	iant.

IMPERFECT. (R.)

ārem,	ārēs,	ārēt,	ārēmūs,	ārētīs,	ārent.
ērem,	ērēs,	ērēt,	ērēmūs,	ērētīs,	ērent.
īrem,	irēs,	irēt,	irēmūs,	irētīs,	īrent.

PERFECT. (r.)

ērim,	{ ērīs, or ērīs }	ērīt,	{ ērimūs, or ērīmūs }	{ ērītīs, or ērītīs }	ērint.
-------	-------------------------	-------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------	--------

PLUPERFECT. (r.)

issem,	issēs,	issēt,	issēmūs,	issētīs,	issent.
--------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

INFINITIVE

PRESENT.	{ (R.)	1.	2.	3.	4.
IMPERFECT.		ārē,	ērē,	ērē,	irē,
PERFECT.	{ (r.)	isse.			
PLUPERFECT.					

FUTURE. Part. of fut. (in *rus*) with *esse*

PARTICIPLES, &c.

GERUNDS. (R)	andi,	endi	endi,
SUPINE (root of its own.)	{ (after verbs of <i>motion</i> .) um. (after some adjectives,) u.		
PARTIC. PRESENT. (R.)	ans,	ens,	ens,
PARTIC. FUTURE. (p.)	urus.		

OF THE VERB.

MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT. (R.)

ēr,	ērīs(e),	ētūr,	ēmūr,	ēmīnī,	entūr.
eār,	eārīs(e),	eātūr,	eāmūr,	eāmīnī,	eantūr.
ār,	ārīs(e),	ātūr,	āmūr,	āmīnī,	antūr.
iār,	iārīs(e),	iātūr,	iāmūr,	iāmīnī,	iantūr.

IMPERFECT. (R.)

ārēr,	ārērīs(e),	ārētūr,	ārēmūr,	ārēmīnī,	ārētūr.
ērēr,	ērērīs(e),	ērētūr,	ērēmūr,	ērēmīnī,	ērētūr.
ārēr,	ārērīs(e),	ārētūr,	ārēmūr,	ārēmīnī,	ārētūr.
īrēr,	īrērīs(e),	īrētūr,	īrēmūr,	īrēmīnī,	īrētūr.

PERFECT.

Past partic. with *sūm*—(sometimes *fūdrim*.)

PLUPERFECT.

Past partic. with *essem*—(sometimes *fuissem*.)

MOOD.

PRESENT.	}	1	2.	3.
IMPERFECT.		ārī,	ērī,	ī,
PERFECT.	}	Past partic. with <i>esse</i> —(sometimes <i>fuisse</i> .)		
PLUPERFECT.				
FUTURE.		Supine (in <i>um</i>) with <i>iri</i> .		

PARTICIPLES.

PAST PARTIC. (p.) *us*

PARTIC. FUTURE. (R.) (Implying *duty*, *necessity*, &c.)

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus.

126. The auxiliary verb *sum* is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic	Fut. Part.
Sum	Esse	Fui	Futurus

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT. *am.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1. Sum,	<i>I am,</i>	Sumus,	<i>We are,</i>
2. Es,	<i>Thou art or you are,</i>	Estis,	<i>Ye or you are,</i>
3. Est,	<i>He is ;</i>	Sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

1. Eram,	<i>I was,</i>	Erāmus,	<i>We were,</i>
2. Eras,	<i>Thou wast or you were.</i>	Erātis,	<i>Ye or you were</i>
3. Erat,	<i>He was ;</i>	Erant,	<i>They were.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

1. Ero,	<i>I shall be,</i>	Erimus,	<i>We shall be,</i>
2. Eris,	<i>Thou wilt be,</i>	Eritis,	<i>Ye will be,</i>
3. Erit,	<i>He will be ;</i>	Erunt,	<i>They will be</i>

PERFECT. *have been or was.*

1. Fui,	<i>I have been,</i>	Fuimus,	<i>We have been,</i>
2. Fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been,</i>	Fuistis,	<i>Ye have been,</i>
3. Fuit,	<i>He has been ;</i>	Fuerunt or -ere,	<i>They have been</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1. Fuēram,	<i>I had been,</i>	Fuerāmus,	<i>We had been,</i>
2. Fuēras,	<i>Th u hadst been,</i>	Fuerātis,	<i>Ye had been,</i>
3. Fuērat,	<i>He had been ;</i>	Fuērunt,	<i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have.*

1. Fuēro,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	Fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been,</i>
2. Fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been,</i>	Fueritis,	<i>Ye will have been,</i>
3. Fuērit,	<i>He will have been ;</i>	Fuērint,	<i>They will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may or can.*

1. Sim,	<i>I may be,</i>	Simus,	<i>We may be,</i>
2. Sis,	<i>Thou mayest be,</i>	Sitis,	<i>Ye may be,</i>
3. Sit,	<i>He may be ;</i>	Sint,	<i>They may be.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

1. Essem,	<i>I might be,</i>	Essemus	<i>We might be,</i>
2. Esset,	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>	Essetis,	<i>Ye might be,</i>
3. Esset,	<i>He might be ;</i>	Essent,	<i>They might be.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

1. Fuérim	<i>I may have been,</i>	Fuerimus,	<i>We may have been,</i>
2. Fuéris,	<i>Thou mayest have been,</i>	Fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
3. Fuérít,	<i>He may have been ;</i>	Fuérint,	<i>They may have been</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might could, would, or should have.*

1. Fuíssem	<i>I might have been,</i>	Fuíssemus,	<i>We might have been,</i>
2. Fuísset,	<i>Thou mightest have been,</i>	Fuíssetis,	<i>Ye might have been.</i>
3. Fuísset,	<i>He might have been ;</i>	Fuísset,	<i>They might have been</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Es or esto,	<i>Be thou,</i>	Este or estóte,	<i>Be ye or be you,</i>
3. Esto,	<i>Let him be ;</i>	Sunto,	<i>Let them be</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Esse,	<i>To be.</i>
PERF. Fuísse,	<i>To have been.</i>
FUT. Esse futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to be.</i>
Fuísse futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE

FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to be.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------

§ 127. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infín.	Perf. Indic.	Supine.	
Am-o	am-āre	amāv-i	amāt-um	<i>To love.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *love, do love, or am loving.*

	Singular.		Plural.
Am-o,	<i>I love,</i>	Am-āmus,	<i>We love,</i>
Am-as,	<i>Thou lovest,</i>	Am-ātis,	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
Am-at,	<i>He loves ;</i>	Am-ant,	<i>They love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was*

Am-ābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	Am-ābāmus,	<i>We were loving,</i>
Am-ābas,	<i>Thou wast loving,</i>	Am-ābātis,	<i>Ye or you were loving</i>
Am-ābat,	<i>He was loving ;</i>	Am-ābant,	<i>They were loving.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

Amāv-i,	<i>I have loved,</i>	Amav-īmus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
Amav-istī,	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>	Amav-istis,	<i>Ye or you have loved,</i>
Amāv-it,	<i>He has loved ;</i>	Amav-ērunt or -avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Amav-eram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	Amav-eramus,	<i>We had loved</i>
Amav-eras,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>	Amav-eratis,	<i>Ye or you had loved,</i>
Amav-erat,	<i>He had loved ;</i>	Amav-erant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

Am-abo,	<i>I shall love,</i>	Am-abimus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
Am-abis,	<i>Thou wilt love,</i>	Am-abitis,	<i>Ye or you will love,</i>
Am-abit,	<i>He will love ;</i>	Am-abunt,	<i>They will love.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have.*

Amav-ero,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	Amav-erimus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
Amav-eris,	<i>Thou wilt have loved,</i>	Amav-eritis,	<i>Ye or you will have loved</i>
Amav-erit,	<i>He will have loved ;</i>	Amav-erint,	<i>They will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may or can.*

Am-ein,	<i>I may love,</i>	Am-emus,	<i>We may love,</i>
Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>	Am-etis,	<i>Ye or you may love,</i>
Am-et,	<i>He may love ;</i>	Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

Am-arem,	<i>I might love,</i>	Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
Am-eres,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>	Am-arētis,	<i>Ye or you might love,</i>
Am-eret,	<i>He might love ;</i>	Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

Amav-erim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	Amav-erimus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
Amav-eris,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>	Amav-eritis,	<i>Ye or you may have loved,</i>
Amav-erit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>	Amav-erint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

Amav-issēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	Amav-issēmūs,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
Amav-isses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>	Amav-issētis,	<i>Ye or you might have loved,</i>
Amav-isset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>	Amav-issent,	<i>They might have loved</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a or am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3. Am-āto,	<i>Let him love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte or am-ātōte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
3. Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Amav-isse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse amat-ūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
Fuisse amat-ūrus, -a, -um	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
Fut. Amat-ûrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

GERUNDS

G. Am-andi,	<i>Of loving.</i>
D. Am-ando,	<i>To loving.</i>
A. Am-andum	<i>Loving.</i>
V. ———	
A. Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

SUPINES.

Former. Amât-um,	<i>To love.</i>
Latter. Amât-u,	<i>To love or to be loved.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Part.	
m or,	am-âri,	amât-us.	<i>To be loved.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT am.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
Am-âris or âre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
Am âtur,	<i>He is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am âmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
Am-amini,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT was.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-âbar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
Am-abâris or -abâre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
Am-abâtur,	<i>He was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-abâmur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
Am-abamini,	<i>Ye or you were loved</i>
Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

PERFECT have been, was, or am

<i>Sing.</i> Amât us sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
Amât-us es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
Amât-us est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amât-i sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
Amât-i estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been loved,</i>
Amât-i sunt or fuerunt or fuêre,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us eram or fuēram, Amāt-us eras or fuēras, Amāt-us erat or fuērat,	<i>I had been loved, Thou hadst been loved, He had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i erāmus or fuerāmus, Amāt-i erātis or fuerātis, Amāt-i erant or fuerant,	<i>We had been loved, Ye or you had been loved, They had been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābor, Am-abēris or -abēre, Am-abitur,	<i>I shall be loved, Thou wilt be loved, He will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-abimur, Am-abimini, Am-abuntur,	<i>We shall be loved, Ye or you will be loved, They will be loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us fuēro, Amāt-us fuēris, Amāt-us fuērit,	<i>I shall have been loved, Thou wilt have been loved, He will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i fuerimus, Amāt-i fueritis, Amāt-i fuerint,	<i>We shall have been loved, Ye or you will have been loved, They will have been loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-er, Am-ēris or -ēre, Am-etur,	<i>I may be loved, Thou mayest be loved, He may be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ēmur, Am-emini, Am-entur,	<i>We may be loved, Ye or you may be loved, They may be loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ārer, Am arēris or -arēre, Am-arētur,	<i>I might be loved, Thou mightest be loved, He might be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-arēmur, Am-aremini, Am-arentur,	<i>We might be loved, Ye or you might be loved, They might be loved.</i>

PERFECT *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us sim or fuērim, Amāt-us sis or fuēris, Amāt-us sit or fuērit,	<i>I may have been loved, Thou mayest have been loved, He may have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i simus or fuerimus, Amāt-i sitis or fueritis, Amāt-i sint or fuērint,	<i>We may have been loved, Ye or you may have been loved, They may have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us essem or fuissem, Amāt-us esses or fuisses, Amāt-us esset or fuisset,	<i>I might have been loved, Thou mightest have been loved, He might have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i essemus or fuissēmus, Amāt-i essētis or fuissetis, Amāt-i essent or fuissent,	<i>We might have been loved, Ye or you might have been loved, They might have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre or am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
3. Am-ētor,	<i>Let him be loved,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amini,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Esse or fuisse amāt-us, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Amāt-um iri,	<i>To be about to be loved</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PERF.</i> Amāt-us, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

§ 128. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i> Mōn-eo
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> Mōn-āre
<i>Perf. Indic.</i> Monu-i
<i>Supine</i> Monit-um

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i> Mon-eor
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> Mon-ēri
<i>Perf. Part.</i> Monit-us

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.

<i>I advise.</i>	<i>I am advised.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> Mōn-eo	<i>Sing.</i> Mōn-eor
Mon-es	Mon-ēris or ēre
Mon-et	Mon-etur
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ēmus	<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ēmur
Mon-ētis	Mon-ēmini
Mon-ent	Mon-entur

IMPERFECT

<i>I was advising.</i>	<i>I was advised.</i>
<i>S</i> Mōn-ēbam	<i>S.</i> Mōn-ēbar
Mon-ēbas	Mon-ēbaris or -bāre
Mon-ēbat	Mon-ēbatur
<i>P</i> Mon-ēbamus	<i>P.</i> Mon-ēbāmur
Mon-ēbātis	Mon-ēbāmini
Mon-ēbant	Mon-ēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise

- S. Mōn-ēbō
Mon-ēbis
Mon-ēbit
P. Mon-ēblinus
Mon-ēblitis
Mon-ēbunt

I shall or will be advised

- S. Mōn-ēbor
Mon-ēbēris or bēro
Mon-ēbitur
P. Mon-ēblimur
Mon-ēblimīni
Mon-ēbuntur

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised

- S. Mōnū-l
Monu-isti
Monu-it
P. Monu-imus
Monu-istis
Monu-erunt or ēre

I was or have been advised.

- S. Monitus sum or fui
Monitus es or fuisti
Monitus est or fuit
P. Moniti sumus or fuimus
Moniti estis or fuistis
Moniti sunt or fuerunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

- S. Monu-eram
Monu-eras
Monu-erat
P. Monu-eramus
Monu-eratis
Monu-erant

I had been advised.

- S. Monitus eram or fuēram
Monitus eras or fueras
Monitus erat or fuerat
P. Moniti erāmus or fuerāmus
Moniti erātis or fuerātis
Moniti erant or fuerant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

I shall have advised.

- S. Mōnū-ēro
Monu-eris
Monu-erit
P. Monu-erimus
Monu-eritis
Monu-erint

I shall have been advised.

- S. Monitus ēro or fuēro
Monitus eris or fueris
Monitus erit or fuerit
P. Moniti ērimus or fuērimus
Moniti eritis or fueritis
Moniti erint or fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT

I may or can advise.

- S. Mōn-eam
Mōn-eas
Mon-eat
P. Mon-eāmus
Mon-eātis
Mon-eant

I may or can be advised

- S. Mōn-ear
Mon-eāris or eāre
Mon-eātur
P. Mon-eāmur
Mon-eāminī
Mon-eantur

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, &c. advise

- S. Mōn-ērem
Mon-ēres
Mon-ēret
P. Mon ērēmus
Mon ērētis
Mon-ērent

I might, could, &c., be advised.

- S. Mōn-ērer
Mon-ēreris or ērēre
Mon-ērētur
P. Mon-ēremur
Mon ērēmini
Mon-ērentur

PERFECT.

I may have advised

- S. Mōnu-ērim
Monu-ēris
Monu-ērit
P. Monu ērimus
Monu-ēritis
Monu-ērint

I may have been advised.

- S. Monitus sim or fuērim
Monitus sis or fuēris
Monitus sit or fuerit
P. Moniti simus or fuerimus
Moniti sitis or fueritis
Moniti sint or fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., have advised

- S. Mōnu-isse
Monu-isses
Monu-isset
P. Monu-issēmus
Monu-issētis
Monu-issent

I might, could, &c., have been advised

- S. Monitus essem or fuisset
Monitus esses or fuisses
Monitus esset or fuisset
P. Moniti essēmus or fuissēmus
Moniti essētis or fuissētis
Moniti essent or fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Advise thou.

- S. Mōn-e or mōn-ēto
Mon-ēto
P. Mon-ēte or mon-ētōte
Mon-ēnto

Be thou advised.

- S. Mon-ēre or mon-ētor
Mon-ētor
P. Mon-ēmini
Mon-ēntor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES Mōn-ēre, *to advise.*PERF Monu-isse, *to have advised.*FUT. Moniturus esse, *to be about to advise.*PRES. Mōn-ēri, *to be advised.*PERF. Mōnitus esse or fuisse *to have been advised.*FUT. Monitum iri, *to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLES

PRES Mōn-ens, *advising.*FUT Monit-ūrus *about to advise.*PERF. Mōn't-us, *advised.*FUT. Mōn endus, *to be advised.*

GERUNDS.

N. ———	
G. Mōn-endi,	<i>Of advising</i>
D. Mon-endo,	<i>To advising.</i>
A. Mon-endum,	<i>Advising.</i>
V. ———	
A. Mon-endo.	<i>With advising.</i>

SUPINES.

Former. Monſt-um, *to advise* | *Latter.* Monſt-u, *to be advised*

§ 129. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Rēg-o
Pres. Infm. Rēg-ēre
Perf. Indic. Rex-i
Supine. Rect-um

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Rēg-or
Pres. Infm. Rēg-i
Perf. Part. Rect-us

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I rule
 S. Rēg-o
 Reg-is
 Reg-it
 P. Reg-ŷmus
 Reg-ŷtis
 Reg-unt

I am ruled.
 S. Rēg-or
 Reg-ēris or -ēre
 Reg-itur
 P. Reg-ŷmur
 Reg-ŷmini
 Reg-untur

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling
 S. Rēg-ēbam
 Reg-ēbas
 Reg-ēbat
 P. Rēg-ēbāmus
 Reg-ēbātis
 Reg-ēbant

I was ruled.
 S. Rēg-ēbar
 Reg-ēbāris or -ēbāre
 Reg-ebātur
 P. Reg-ebāmur
 Reg-ebāmini
 Reg-ebāntur

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

- S. Rēg-am
Reg-es
Reg-et
P. Reg-ēmus
Reg-ētis
Reg-ent

I shall or will be ruled.

- S. Rēg-ar
Reg-ēris or -āre
Reg-ētur
P. Reg-ēmur
Reg-ēmini
Reg-entur

PERFECT

I ruled or have ruled

- S. Rex-l
Rex-isti
Rex-it
P. Rex-īmus
Rex-istis
Rex-ērunt or -ēre

I was or have been ruled.

- S. Rect-us sum or fui
Rect-us es or fuisti
Rect-us est or fuit
P. Rect-i sumus or fuimus
Rect-i estis or fuistis
Rect-i sunt, fuērunt or fuēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

- S. Rex-eram
Rex-eras
Rex-erat
P. Rex-erāmus
Rex-erātis
Rex-erant

I had been ruled

- S. Rect-us eram or fueram
Rect-us eras or fuēras
Rect-us erat or fuerat
P. Rect-i erāmus or fuerāmus
Rect-i erātis or fuerātis
Rect-i erant or fuerant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

I shall have ruled.

- S. Rex-ero
Rex-eris
Rex-erit
P. Rex-erimus
Rex-eritis
Rex-erint

I shall have been ruled.

- S. Rect-us ero or fuero
Rect-us eris or fueris
Rect-us erit or fuerit
P. Rect-i erimus or fuerimus
Rect-i eritis or fueritis
Rect-i erunt or fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

- S. Rēg-am
Reg-as
Reg-at
P. Reg-āmus
Reg-ātis
Reg-ant

I may or can be ruled.

- S. Rēg-ar
Reg-āris or reg-ere
Reg-atur
P. Reg-āmur
Reg-āmini
Reg-antur

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., rule

- S. Rēg-ērem
Rēg-eres
Rēg-eret
P. Rēg-ērāmus
Rēg-erētis
Rēg-erent

I might, could, &c., be ruled

- S. Rēg-ērer
Rēg-ērēris or rēg-ērēre
Rēg-ērētur
P. Rēg-erēmur
Rēg-erēmini
Rēg-erēntur

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

- S. Rēx-ērim
Rēx-ēris
Rēx-ērit
P. Rēx-ērimus
Rēx-ēritis
Rēx-ērint

I may have been ruled.

- S. Rēct-us sim or fu-ārim
Rēct-us sis or fueris
Rēct-us sit or fuerit
P. Rēct-i simus or fuerimus
Rēct-i sitis or fueritis
Rēct-i sint or fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., have ruled.

- S. Rēx-isse
Rēx-isses
Rēx-isset
P. Rēx-issēmus
Rēx-issētis
Rēx-issent

I might, could, &c., have been ruled.

- S. Rēct-us essem or fuisset
Rēct-us esses or fuisses
Rēct-us esset or fuisset
P. Rēct-i essemus or fuisset
Rēct-i essētis or fuisset
Rēct-i essent or fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rule thou.

- S. Rēg-e or rēg-ito
Rēg-ito
P. Rēg-ite or rēg-ittōte
Rēg-unto

Be thou ruled.

- S. Rēg-ēre or rēg-itor
Rēg-itor
P. Rēg-imini
Rēg-untor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Rēg-ēre, to rule.

PERF. Rēx-isse, to have ruled.

FUT. Rēct-ūrus esse, to be about to rule.

PRES. Rēg-i, to be ruled.

PERF. Rēctus esse or fuisset, to have been ruled.

FUT. Rēctum iri, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.. Rēg-ens, ruling.

FUT. Rēct-ūrus, about to rule.

PERF. Rēctus, ruled.

FUT. Rēg-endus, to be ruled

GERUNDS

N	—	
G.	Rēg endi,	<i>Of ruling.</i>
D.	Rēg-endo,	<i>To be ruling</i>
A.	Rēg-endum,	<i>Ruling.</i>
V.	—	
A.	Rēg-endo,	<i>With ruling.</i>

SUPINES.

Former Rect-um, *to rule.**Latter.* Rect-u, *to be ruled.*

130. Some verbs of the third conjugation end in *io*. They drop the *i* in the *imperative*, *infinitive*, and *imperfect subjunctive* of both voices :

	Imperat.	Infinitive	Imperfect Subj.
(a) <i>Active.</i>	suscipio,	suscipe,	suscipere,
<i>Passive.</i>	suscipior,	suscipere,	suscipere.
(b) In the present of both voices they retain the <i>i</i> in the third person plural, and drop it in the other persons :			
<i>Active.</i>	suscipio,	suscipis, it, &c.	3 plur. <i>suscipiunt.</i>
<i>Passive.</i>	suscipior,	suscipieris, itur, &c.	3 plur. <i>suscipiuntur.</i>

§ 131. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Aud-io
Pres. Infinitive. Aud-ire
Perf. Indic. Aud-iv-i
Supine. Aud-it-um

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Aud-ior
Pres. Infinitive. Aud-iri
Perf. Part. Aud-it-us

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT

<i>I hear</i>	<i>I am heard</i>
S. Aud-io	3. Aud-ior
Aud-is	Aud-iris or ire
Aud-it,	Aud-itur
P. Aud-imus	Aud-imur
Aud-itis	Aud-imini
Aud-iunt	Aud-iuntur

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing

- S** Audiē-bam
Audiē-bas
Audiē-bat,
P Audiē-bāmus
Audiē-bātis
Audiē-bant

I was heard.

- S.** Aud-iēbar
Aud-iēbāris or -iēbāre
Aud-iēbātur
P. Aud-iēbāmur
Aud-iēbāmini
Aud-iēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear

- S** Audi-am
Audi-es
Audi-et
P Audi-ēmus
Audi-ētis
Audi-ent

I shall or will be heard.

- S.** Aud-iar
Aud-iēris or iēre
Aud-iētur
P. Aud-iēmur
Aud-iēmini
Aud-iēntur

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard

- S** Audiv-i
Audiv-isti
Audiv-it
P Audiv-imus
Audiv-istis
Audiv-erunt or ēre

I have been or was heard

- S.** Auditus sum or fui
Auditus es or fuisti
Auditus est or fuit
P. Auditi sumus or fuimus
Auditi estis or fuistis
Auditi sunt or fuerunt or fuere

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard

- S** Audiv-eram
Audiv-eras
Audiv-erat
P Audiv-erāmus
Audiv-erātis
Audiv-erant

I had been heard.

- S.** Auditus eram or fuēram
Auditus eras or fueras
Auditus erat or fuerat
P. Auditi erāmus or fuerāmus
Auditi erātis or fuerātis
Auditi erant or fuerant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

I shall have heard

- S** Audiv-ero
Audiv-eris
Audiv-erit
P Audiv-erimus
Audiv-eritis
Audiv-erint

I shall have been heard.

- S.** Auditus ero or fuēro
Auditus eris or fueris
Auditus erit or fuerit
P Auditi erimus or fuerimus
Auditi eritis or fueritis
Auditi erunt or fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

- S Audi-am
Audi-as
Audi-at.
P. Audi-amus
Audi-atis
Audi-ant

I may or can be heard.

- S. Aud-iar
Aud-iaris or aud-iaris
Aud-latur
P. Aud-iāmur
Aud-iamini
Aud-lantur

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., hear.

- S. Aud-irem
Aud-ires
Aud-iret
P. Aud-irēmus
Aud-irētis
Aud-irent

I might, could, &c., be heard.

- S. Aud-irer
Aud-irēris or aud-irēre
Aud-irētur
P. Aud-irēmur
Aud-irēmini
Aud-irentur

PERFECT

may have heard.

- S Audiv-erim
Audiv-eris
Audiv-erit
P Audiv-erimus
Audiv-eritis
Audiv-erint

I may have been heard.

- S. Auditus sim or fuerim
Auditus sis or fueris
Auditus sit or fuerit
P. Auditi simus or fuerimus
Auditi sitis or fueritis
Auditi sint or fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., have heard.

- S. Audiv-issem
Audiv-isses
Audiv-isset
P Audiv-issēmus
Audiv-issētis
Audiv-issent

I might, could, &c., have been heard

- S. Auditus essem or fuisset
Auditus esses or fuisses
Auditus esset or fuisset
P. Auditi essēmus or fuissēmus
Auditi essētis or fuissētis
Auditi essent or fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Hear thou.

- S Aud-i or aud-ito
Aud-ito
P. Aud-ite or aud-ite
Aud-iunto

Be thou heard.

- S. Aud-ire or aud-itor
Aud-itor
P. Aud-imini
Aud-iuntor

INFINITIVE MOOD

PRES. Aud-ire, <i>to hear.</i>	PRES. Aud-iri, <i>to be heard.</i>
PERF. Audiv-isse, <i>to have heard.</i>	PERF. Audit-us esse or fuisse, <i>to have been heard.</i>
FUT. Audit-urus esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	FUT. Audit-um iri, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Aud-ens, <i>hearing.</i>	PERF. Audit-us, <i>heard.</i>
FUT. Audit-urus, <i>about to hear.</i>	FUT. Aud-lendus, <i>to be heard</i>

GERUNDS

N. ———
G. Aud-iendi
D. Aud-lendo
A. Aud-iendum
V. ———
A. Aud-iendo

SUPINES.

Former. Audit-um, <i>to hear.</i>	Latter. Audit-u, <i>to be heard.</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

§ 132. LIST OF VERBS.

§ 133. FIRST CONJUGATION.

134. I. Am-o, amāv-i, amāt-um.

So *āro*, *to plough*; *crēmo*, *burn-down*; *rōgo*, *ask*; *līgo*, *bind*; *pāro*, *procure*; *jāro*, *swear*; *nō*, *swim*; *ōro*, *pray*; *pecco*, *sin*; *postūlo*, *demand*; *gūberno*, *govern*, *vīto*, *avoid*.

135. I. *With reduplication.*

Do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, *give*. [Obs. the *short a*.]

Sto, stāre, stēti, stātum, *stand*. Verbs compounded with *sto* and a dissyllable take *stēti*; the rest *stīti*. Their future participles take *a*: *constaturus*, *exstaturus*.

136. II. -ui, -tum, (ītum.)¹

Crēpo, crepāre, crepui, crepītum, *make a noise*. Just so, *concrepo*, but *increpo*, *discrepo*, *have also increpavi, discrepavi*, *increpo both increpatum and increpitum*. Cūbo, cubare, cubui, (*seldom cubavi*), cubītum, *lie down*.

¹ Observe that all these, except *pōto*, have the first syll. *short*

Dōno, domāre, domui, domitum, *tame*.

Plico, plicui, plicitum, and plicavi, plicatum, *fold*. (Duplicare, supplicare, and other verbs derived from adjectives in -plex, are regular.)

Sōno, sonāre, sonui, sonitum, *sound*.

Tōno, tonāre, tonui, tonitum, (*seldom tonatum*), *thunder*.

Vāto, vetare, vetui, vetitum, *forbid*.

Frico, fricare, fricui, fricatum and frictum, *rub*.

Jāvo, juvare, jūvi, jutum, *help*.

Lāvo, lavare, lavavi, lavatum, and lavi, lautum or lotum, *wash*.

Sēco, secare, secui, sectum, *cut*. Part. Fut. Pass. secaturus.

Mico, micare, micui, move quickly or tremulously; glitter. The compounds take the regular supine in atum.

Pōto, potare, potavi, potatum, (*generally potum*), *drink* Its partic. perf. pass is generally potus.

§ 137. SECOND CONJUGATION.

138. The only verbs that take the regular ēvi, ētum, are leo (obsolete) with its compound deleo, (*blot out; destroy utterly*;) fleo, *weep*; neo, *spin*; pleo, (obsolete,) *fill*, with its compounds; and (from the obsolete oleo, *grow*) aboleo, *abolish*; adoleo, generally *adolesco*, *grow up*; obsoleo, generally *obsolesco*, *grow out of date*. Oleo, *smell*, has olui without supine.

I. -ui, -itum.

Cāleo, *am warm*; cāreo, *am without, want*; dēbeo, *owe*; dōleo, *am pained, grieve* hābeo, *have*; jāceo, *lie low*; mēreo, *deserve*; mōneo, *warn*; nōceo, *hurt*; pāreo, *obey*; plāceo, *please*; prābeo, *afford, supply*; tāceo, *hold my tongue*; terreo, *terrify*; vāleo, *am well*.

II. -ui, -tum.

Dōceo, docēre, docui, doctum, *teach*.

Misceo, miscēre, miscui, mistum or mixtum, *mix*.

Tēneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *hold*.

Torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostum, *parch, roast*.

III. -ui, -sum.

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum, *value, am of opinion*. Recenseo has also recensitum.

IV. -ui, without supine.

Areo, *ward off, keep off*; āreo, *am dry*; ēgeo, *need*; fīdeo, *flower, flourish*; horreo, *shudder*; languéo, *am languid*; lāteo, *lie hid*; mādeo, *am wet*; mōreo, *mourn*; nīleo, *shine*; ōleo, *smell*; palleo, *am pale*; pāteo, *stand open*; rīgeo, *am stiff*; rūbeo, *am red*; sīleo, *am silent*; sorbeo, *suck in or up, (sorbiui and sorpsi)*; splendéo, *glitter*; stūdeo, *peruse as a study*; stūpeo, *am astounded*; tīmeo, *fear*; torpeo, *am torpid*; tūmeo, *swell, (neut.)*; vīgeo, *am vigorous, flourish*; vīreo, *am green*.

V. -si, -tum, (and -xi, -ctum.)

Indulgeo, indulgēre, indulsi, indultum, *indulge*.
 Torqueo, torquēre, torsi, tortum, *twist*.
 Augeo, augēre, auxi, auctum, *increase*.
 Lugeo, lugēre, luxi, luctum, *mourn*.

Without supine are

Algeo, algēre, alsi, *feel cold, am cold*.
 Fulgeo, fulgēre, fulsi, *shine, glitter*.
 Frigeo, frigere, frixi, *am cold*.
 Luceo, lucēre, luxi, *am bright, shine*.

VI. -si, -sum.

Ardeo, ardēre, arsi, arsum, *burn, am on fire*.
 Hæreo, hære-re, hæsi, hæsum, *cling to, stick, hesitate*.
 Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum, *bid, order*.
 Mæneo, manēre, mansi, mansum, *remain*.
 Mulceo, mulcēre, *soothe, and mulgeo, milk, mulsi, mulsus*.
 Rideo, ridēre, risi, risum, *laugh*.
 Suadeo, suadēre, suasi, suasum, *advise, persuade*.

VII. -i, -sum.

Mordeo, mordēre, momordi, morsum, *bite*.
 Pendeo, pendēre, pependi, pensum, *hang, (Intrans.)*
 Spondeo, spondēre, spondidi, sponsum, *promise solemnly*.
 Tondeo, tondēre, totondi, tonsum, *shear, shave*.
 Sædeo, sedēre, sædi, sessum, *sit. Of the compounds, dissideo and præsidio have no supine*.
 Video, vidēre, vidi, visum, *see. (Videor, generally seem.)*

VIII. -i, -tum.

Caveo, cavēre, cavi, cautum, *beware of, beware*.
 Faveo, favēre, favi, fautum, *favor*.
 Foveo, fovēre, fovi, fõtum, *cherish*.
 Moveo, movēre, movi, mõtum, *move*.
 Voveo, vovēre, vovi, võtum, *vow*.

IX. -i, *without supine*.

Ferveo, fervēre, fervi and ferbul, *glow; am hot*.

X. *without perfect or supine*.

Albeo, *am white*; Aveo, *long*; hibeo, *am blunt*; hūneo, *am moist*; liveo, *am lively*;
 reudeo, *glitter*; scæteo, *gush out; abound*.

§ 139. THIRD CONJUGATION.

140. I Roots with a *p* sound. *b* or *p*.

Carpō, carpēre, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*. *Comp.* discerpo, &c.
 Nūbō, nubēre, nupsi, nuptum, *veil*; *marry*, (of the female.)
 Rēpō, repēre, repsi, reptum, *creep*.
 Scalpō, scalpēre, scalpsi, sculptum, *grave, cut*.
 Scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum, *write*.
 Sculpō, sculpēre, sculpsi, sculptum, *carve*.
 Serpō, serpēre, serpsi, serptum, *crawl*.
 Cāpio, capēre, cēpi, captum, *take*. *Compounds*, -cipio, -cepi, -ceptum.
 Rumpō, rumpēre, rūpi, ruptum, *burst*.
 Bibō, bibēre, bibi, bibitum, *drink*.
 Lambō, lambēre, lambi, lambitum, *lick*.
 Rapio, rapēre, rapui, raptum, *snatch*.
 Sapio, sapēre, sapui, (*sup. doubtful*;) *taste, (intrans.;* *) am wise. Comp.* xnds
 resipui, &c.
 Strēpō, strepēre, strepui, strepitum, *make a noise*; *roar*.
 Cūpio, cupēre, cupivi, cupitum, *desire*.

141. II. Roots with a *t* sound: *d* or *t*.

Claudo, claudēre, clausi, clausum, *shut*. *Comp.*, -clūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum.
 Divido, dividēre, divisi, divisum, *divide*.
 Lædo, lædēre, læsi, læsum, *injure, hurt*. *Comp.*, -līdo, -līsi, -līsum.
 Lūdo, ludēre, lusi, lusum, *play*.
 Trūdo, trudēre, trūsi, trusum, *thrust, push*.
 Vādo, vadēre, vasi, vasum, *go*. *Perf. and sup. only found in its compounds*.
 Cēdo, cedēre, cessi, cessum, *yield*.
 Mitto, mitēre, misi, missum, *send*.
 Quāto, quatēre, (quassi,) quassum, *shake*. *The perfect is only found in the compounds*: e. g. concussi.
 Flecto, flectēre, flexi, flexum, *bend*, { from simpler roots with
 Necto, nectēre, nexi and nexui, nexum, *knit, join together*, } a *k* sound, (*sec nec.*)
 Accendo, accendēre, accendi, accensum, *light*. *So* incendio.
 Edo, edēre, ēdi, esum, *eat*.
 Defendo, defendēre, defendi, defensum, *ward off, defend*. *So* offendo.
 Fundo, fundēre, fūdi, fusum, *pour*.
 Prehendo,prehendēre,prehendi,prehensum, *take hold of*.
 Scando, scandēre, scandi, scansum, *climb*.
 Verto, vertēre, verti, versum, *turn*.
 Cādo, cadēre, cecīdi, cāsum, *fall*. *The compounds take i, as* incīdo, incīdi, incīsum;
so occīdo and recīdo. *The rest have no supine*.
 Cædo, cædēre, cecīdi, cæsum, *cut, fell, hew*. *The compounds take i, as* accīdo, accīdi, accīsum.
 Pendo, pendēre, pependi, pensum, *hang, (trans.)*
 Tendo, tendēre, tetendi, tensum and tentum, *stretch*.
 Fodio, fodēre, fōdi, fossum, *dig*.
 Pando, pandēre, pandi, pansum and passum, *spread open*.
 Scindo, scindēre, scīdi, scissum, *cut*.
 Sīdo, sidēre, sīdi, sessum, *settle down*.
 Peto, petēre, petivi, petitum, *aim at, seek*.

142. III. Roots with a *k* sound. *c, g, qu, h*.

Cingo, cingēre, cinxi, cinctum, *gird, surround*.
 Cūquo, coquēre, coxi, coctum, *cook*.
 Dico, ducēre, dixi, dictum, *say, call*.
 Ducō ducēre, duxi, ductum, *lead, think*.

Flīgo, flīgēre, flīxi, flīctum, strike. *Generally only the compounds, affligo, &c.*
Lācio, (obsolete,) entice, allure. Hence **alicio, allexi, (allicui,) allectum; elicui, elicium; illicio, illexi, illectum; pellicio, pellicui, and pellexi, pellectum.**
Rēgo, regēre, rexi, rectum, direct, govern. *Comp., -rigo.*
Specio, (obsolete,) behold, see. Hence **adspecio, conspecio, inspecio, perspecio, -spexi, -spectum, -spicere.**
Tēgo, tegēre, texi, tectum, cover.
Tingo, tingēre, tinxi, tinctum, dip, dye.
Trāho, trahēre, traxi, tractum, draw, drag.
Ungo, ungēre, unxi, unctum, anoint.
Vēho, vehēre, vexi, vectum, carry, (in a ship, carriage, &c.)
Fingo, fingēre, finxi, fictum, fashion, feign.
Jungo, jungēre, junxi, junctum, join.
Pango, pangēre, panxi and pepigi, pactum, drive in, fasten—bargain
Pingo, pingēre, pinxi, pictum, paint.
Stringo, stringēre, strinxi, strictum, bind, compress, grasp tight.
Ango, angēre, anxī, throttle, torment.
Mergo, mergēre, mersi, mersum, dip or plunge into, (trans.)
Spargo, spargēre, sparsi, sparsum, scatter. *Comp., dispergo, &c.*
Figo, figēre, fixi, fixum, fix.
Ago, agēre, ēgi, actum, drive, do. *Compound, -igo, -egi, -actum: cōgo has cōegi, coactum.*
Fācio, facēre, fēcī, factum, do. *Fio is used for its passive. The compounds with prepositions take ficio, ficēre, feci, sectum: pass. ficior. The rest retain facio: pass. fio.*
Jācio, jacēre, jēcī, jactum, throw. *Comp., adjicio, jeci, jectum, &c.*
Lēgo, legēre, lēgi, lectum, gather, choose, read. *Some of the compounds retain e, (allēgo, perlēgo, relēgo; some take i, (colligo, deligo, elligo.) Diligo, intelligo, negligo, take perf. -lexi.*
Frango, frangēre, frēgi, fractum, break. *Comp., -fringo.*
Pungo, pungēre, pupūgi, punctum, prick. *The compounds have punxi.*
Tango, tangēre, tetigi, tactum, touch. *The compounds attingo, attingi, &c.*
Vinco, vincēre, vici, victum, conquer.
Fūgio, fugēre, fūgi, fugitum, fly from.
Parco, parcēre, peperci and parsi, parcitum and parsum, spare.

143. IV. Roots with *l m, n*.

Cōlo, colēre, colui, cultum, cultivate.
Consulo, consuliēre, consului, consultum, consult.
Alō, alēre, alui, alitum and altum, nourish.
Fullo, fallēre, fefelli, falsum, deceive.
Pello, pellēre, pepūli, pulsum, drive away.
(Cello, move, drive on.) Percello, percūli, percusum, strike down. *Antecello and excello have no supine: excelsus is an adj., and means high.*
Vello, vellēre, velli and vulsi, vulsum, pluck.
Cōmo, comēre, compsi, comptum, deck.
Dēmo, demēre, dempsi, demptum, take away.
Prōmo, promēre, pronipsi, promptum, draw forth.
Sūmo, sumēre, sumpsī, sumptum, take.
Prēmo, premēre, pressi, pressum, press. *Comp., opprimo.*
Emo, emēre, ēni, emptum, take, buy. *Comp., adīmo, redīmo.*
Frēmo, fremēre, fremui, fremitum, murmur.
Gēmo, gemēre, genui, genitum, groan, sigh.
Trēmo, tremēre, tremui, tremble.
Cāno, canēre, cecini, cantum, sing. *Comp., occīno, accīno, &c.*
Temno, generally contemno, contempsī, contemptum, despise.
Gigno, gignēre, genui, genitum, beget, bring forth.
Pōno, ponēre, pōsui, positum, place, put down.
Cerno, cernēre, crēvi, cretum, see, perceive. *The perfect and supine have not this meaning; the real meaning is to separate.*
Sitō, sinēre, sivi, situm, suffer. *Desīno, leave off.*
Sperno, spernēre, sprēvi, sprētum, despise.

Sterno, sternēre, strāvi, strātum, *throw down, strew*.
Gāro, gerēre, gessi, gestum, *carry, bear*.
Uro, urēre, ussi, ustum, *burn*.
Pario, parēre, peperī, partum, *bring forth*. *Part. Fut. pariturus*.
Curro, currēre, cucurri, cursum, *run*.
Sēro, serēre, serui, sertum, *connect, join*.
Sēro, serēre, sēvi, sātum, *sow*.
Quæro, quærēre, quæsi, quæsītum, *seek*. *Comp., acquirō, &c.*
Terō, terēre, trivi, tritum, *rub*

144. V. Roots with *s, x*, (= *cs.*)

Texo, texēre, texui, textum, *weave*.
Arcesso, arcessēre, arcessi, arcessītum, *send for*.
Capesso, capessēre, capessi, capessītum, *seize hold of, undertake*.
Lacesso, lacessēre, lacessi, lacessītum, *provoke, harass*.
Viso, visēre, visi, *visit*.

145. VI. Roots in *u* and *v*.

Acuo, acuēre, acui, acūtum, *sharpen*.
Arguo, arguēre, argui, argūtum, *prove, convict*.
Exuo, exuēre, exui, exūtum, *put off*.
Imbuo, imbuēre, imbul, imbūtum, *dip, imbue*.
Induo, induēre, indui, indūtum, *put on*.
Minuo, minuēre, minui, minūtum, *lessen*.
Ruo, ruēre, rui, rūtum, *rush*; and (*trans.*) *hurl down*. *Fut. Part. ruiturus*.
Statuo, statuēre, statui, statūtum, *establish, determine*.
Suo, suēre, sui, sūtum, *sew*.
Tribuo, tribuēre, tribui, tribūtum, *allot to*.
Solvo, solvēre, solvi, solūtum, *loosen, pay*.
Volvo, volvēre, volvi, volūtum, *roll*.
Siruo, struēre, struxi, structum, *pile up, build*.
Vivo, vivēre, vixi, victum, *live*.
Fluo, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow*.
 (*Without supine.*)
Metuo, metuēre, metui, *fear*.
Pluo, pluēre, plui, *rain*.

146. VII. Roots with *sc* in the present. The perf. shows that these verbs are derived from pure roots. The only exceptions are *disco*, *didici*, learn; *posco*, *pōposci*, demand.

Crēscō, crescēre, crēvi, crētum, *increase, (intrans.)*
Nosco, noscēre, nōvi, nōtum, *make myself acquainted with, (novi = I know.) In the compounds the fut. part. is iturus, except ignosco, pardon; ignoturus.*
Pasco, pascēre, pāvi, pastum, *feed, (trans.)*
Quiesco, quievēre, quīēvi, quīētum, *rest*.
Suesco, suescēre, suevi, suetum, *accustomed, to grow accustomed.*

To this class belong the Inchoatives which express the beginning of an action or state. They either borrow the perfect and supine from their roots, or are without supine. Of the former kind are—

Coalesco, coalescēre, coalui, coalitum, (*alo,*) *grow together*.
Concupisco, concupiscēre, concupivi, concupitum, (*cupio,*) *desire*.
Condolesco, condolescēre, condolui, condolitum, (*dolo,*) *feel pain*.
Convalesco, convalescēre, convalui, convalevitum, (*valeo,*) *get well*

Exardesco, exardescere, exarsi, exarsum, (ardeo,) take fire.
(Oresco.) Hence *adulesco, adolescere, adolevi, adultum, grow up.*
Revivisco, reviviscere, revixi, revictum, come to life again.

Of the other kind are—

Calasco, calascere, calui, grow warm.
Conticesco, conticescere, conticui, hold my tongue.
Contremisco, contremiscere, contremul, tremble.
Extimesco, extimescere, extimui, dread.
Horresco, horrescere, horruī, shudder.
Tepesco, tepescere, tepui, grow warm.
Ditesco, grow rich, pinguesco, grow fat, and a few more, have neither perfect nor supine.

§ 147. FOURTH CONJUGATION. NEUT. PASSIVES.

Sepello, sepellere, sepelivi, sepultum, bury.
Farcio, farcire, farsī, fartum, stuff.
Fulcio, fulcire, fulsi, fultum, prop.
Sarcio, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, patch, repair.
Sēpio, sepire, sepsi, septum, hedge in.
Sancio, sancire, sanxi and sancivi, sanctum, confirm, make binding
Vincio, vincire, vinxi, victum, bind.
Amicio, amictre, amictum, clothe.
Sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, feel, perceive by the senses.
Comperio, comperire, compēri, compertum, ascertain.
Haurio, haurire, hausi, haustum, draw, (of liquids.)
Reperio, reperire, repēri, repertum, find.
Vēnio, venire, vēni, ventum, come.
Aperio, aperire, aperui, apertum, open.
Sālio, salire, salui and salii, saltum, spring, leap. The compounds have -sillo, -sillui.
Cæcuto, am blind, ferio, strike, prurio, itch, have no perf. and supine.

148. Neuter-passives ; or, neuters with a perfect that is passive in form. .

Their past participle is the part. of perfect active. **Ausus, having dared.**

audeo	ausus	sum..... to dare.
gaudeo	gavisus	sum..... rejoice.
soleo	solutus	sum..... am wont

§ 149. DEPONENT VERBS.

150. Deponents of active signification have generally four participles ; as, *sequens, secutūrus, secūtus, sequendus*, from *sequor*, "to follow." Those of a neuter signification have generally but three ; as, *labens, lapsus, lapsurus*, from *lābor*, "to slip," or "glide."

151. Deponent verbs are conjugated regularly, like the passive voice of the fourth conjugation.

§ 152. FIRST CONJUGATION.

153. The first conjugation has a vast number of deponent verbs, of which all are *regular*.—The following are the most common :—

abominor.....	regard as a bad omen ;	gratulor ²	to congratulate
adversor	abhor, abominate.	hortor (acc. ut)	exhort.
adūlor (dat. or acc.)	oppose myself.	imitor	imitate.
amulor	flatter.	insidor (dat.)	plot against.
alucinator.....	emulate, rival.	interpretor	interpret.
arbitror	play the fool ; talk idly.	jōcor	jest.
aspēnor.....	think.	lātor (abl. de, in).....	rejoice.
astipulor (dat.)	despise.	mētor ³	measure.
avisor	to join in an engage- ment ; to consent, approve.	minor { dat. pers. }	threaten.
auxilior (dat.)	turn away from, dislike.	minitor { acc. thing }	wonder.
bacchor	help.	miror (acc. and infin. quod)	moderate, rule.
bacchor	revol (as a Bacchanalian.)	moderor (dat. acc.)	delay (intrans. and trans.)
calumnior.....	calumniate.	mōror ⁴	think.
cavillor	banter, cavil.	opinor	think.
causor	allege as an excuse.	pōpūlor {	lay waste.
cōmissor	revol, feast.	depōpūlor {	pray
comitor	accompany.	prēcor	to fight ; battle
commentor	to meditate upon, contrive.	prēlor	remember.
conciōnor	harangue.	recordor (gen., acc., or de).....	remember.
cōnor	endeavor.	sōlor	console.
contemplor	contemplate.	consolōr {	suspect.
crimīnor	accuse.	suspīcor	bear witness ; call to witness.
cunctor	delay.	testor	bear witness
dignor (abl.)	deem worthy.	testificor	bear witness
dēignor {	disdain.	veneror	venerate.
indignor {	disdain.	vēnor	hunt.
domīnor (dat. in ¹)	rule.	versor.....	to be turned in or among ; to dwell ; to be employed about.
glōrior (abl. de)	boast.		

§ 154. SECOND CONJUGATION.

fateor, fassus	confess.	misereor, miseritus misertus (gen.,	pity
liceor, licitus	bid for any thing.	reor, ratus	think
medeor (no perf., dat.)	heal.	tueor, tuitus.....	look at ; protect
mereor, meritus (acc., de aliquo)	deserve.	vereor, veritus.....	be shy of ; to fear.

¹ The mention of a preposition or conjunction after a verb shows that it is followed by that preposition or conjunction.

² Dat. of person ; the thing in acc. or with *de*.—*quod*.

³ *Castra metari* : to measure out the ground for a camp ; to pitch a camp.

⁴ (*Illud*) nihil moror, (do not detain it, as a thing 'to be regarded or valued = ' do not care for.

§ 155. THIRD CONJUGATION.

adipiscor, adeptus.....	obtain.	nascor, natus	am born
amplector, amplexus, }	embrace.	nitor, nisus or nixus..	(abl. in with acc.)
conplector, complexus, }			rely on; strive
divertor, diversus.....	put up at an inn; lodge.	obliscor, oblitus (gen. acc.)....	to forget
expergiscor, expectatus.....	awake.	paciscor, pactus	bargain, (intrans.)
fruor, frui, fructus (abl.)	enjoy.	pascor, pastus.....	feed, (intrans.)
fungor, functus (abl.)	discharge.	pātor, passus	suffer
gradior, gressus	step, walk.	proficiscor, profectus.....	set out; to march
invēhor, invectus	inveigh against.	quēror, questus.....	complain
irascor, iratus (dat.)	be angry.	revertor, reversus	return
lābor, lapsus	to slip down; glide.	sēquor, secūsus	follow
moriātor, mortuus	die.	vescor, (without perf.) (abl.)....	feed on
nanciscor, nactus	get.	ulciscor, ultus	revenge; punish
		ūtor, usus (abl.)	use

§ 156. FOURTH CONJUGATION.¹

adsentior, adsensus (dat.).....	assent to.	oppērior, oppertus (oppertus)....	wait for.
blandior (dat.)	fawn on; flatter.	ordior, orsus.....	begin.
expetior, expertus	try.	ōrior, ortus, oriri ²	arise.
largior.....	give money.	partior	divide.
mentior.....	lie.	pōrior ³ (gen or abl.)	to get possession of
mensior, mensus	measure.	sortior	to cast lots; obtain, (by lot.)
mōrior	plan.		

§ 157 IMPERSONALS.

158. Impersonals that are never used *personally*.⁴

oportet, oportuit.....	it behooves; one ought.	*pōnit, pōnituit	it repents
libet, libuit	it pleases.	*pudet, puduit.....	(one) is ashamed
licet, licuit	it is permitted; one may.	*miseret	one pities
*piget.....	it grieves (one.)	*tēdet	it irks; one is tired of
		rēfert (gen.) ⁵	it concerns

159. Impersonals that are also used personally in the third person sing. or plur.

tonat.....	it thunders.	fulminat.....	it lightens
pluit.....	it rains.	rorat.....	the dew falls.
ningit	it snows.	vesperascit.....	it grows dusk.
grandinat	it hails.	lucescit	it grows light.

¹ When the *partic.* is not set down, it is *itus*.² So *orirer*, &c., but in the *present* it is of the third; *oriris*, *oritur*.³ *Pōiri*, *pōitus*; but *pōiris*, *pōitur*, &c., in *pres.* like the third; and so *pōiterer* &c.⁴ Those that have an asterisk prefixed take acc. of person, gen. of the thing, (or object of the feeling.) It *repenteth* me of my folly.⁵ Abl. sing. fem. of a possessive pronoun.

160. Personal verbs that have also an *impersonal* use, in a particular meaning.

stat.....	it is resolved.	solet, assolet.....	it usually happens
constat.....	it is agreed upon; it is well known.	accidit.....	it happens
præstat.....	it is better.	accidit ¹	it is added
restit.....	it remains.	excidit ²	it has escaped me
delectat.....	it is delightful.	conducit.....	it is serviceable, or conducive
juvat.....	it is pleasant.	confert.....	
vacat.....	[I, you, &c.] have leisure.	contingit.....	it happens; falls to the lot of
placet.....	[I, you, &c.] resolves.	sufficit.....	it suffices
at'inet.....	it relates to; concerns.	interest ³ (gen.).....	it concerns; is of importance to
apparet.....	it appears.	crebescit.....	[a report] spreads
deceat.....	it is becoming.	evenit.....	it turns out
dedæcet.....	it is unbecoming.	expedit.....	it is expedient
liquet.....	it is clear.	fit.....	it happens
patet.....	it is plain.	convēnit ⁴	it is suitable
latet.....	it is concealed; unknown.		

161. The compounds of *sum* are conjugated exactly in the same way as the verb itself. (See 126.)

absum,	am absent.	desum,	am wanting.
adsum,	am present.	præsum,	am before; or at the head of.
intersum,	am amongst; am engaged in.	prosum,	profit; do good to.
obsum,	am in the way of; hinder.		

- (1.) *Prosum* inserts a "d" before those tenses of *sum* that begin with a vowel:

Not *pro-es, pro-eram*: but *prodes, proderam*.

- (2.) *Absum, præsum* have present participle *absens, præsens*: but the latter only in the sense of "present."

§ 162. IRREGULAR AND OTHER VERBS.

- (1.) *Possum*, { I am able; I can. (*Possum. potēs, potest; possumus, potestis, possunt.* Imp. *poteram.* Fut. *potero.* Subj. pres. *possim.* Imp. *posses.* Root of perf. *potu.* See First Lat. Book, p. 56.)
- (2.) { *Volo*, am willing; wish.
{ *Nōlo*, am unwilling. (*for non volo.*)
{ *Mālo*, had rather. (*for magis or magne volo.*)

¹ *Accedit quod* or *ut* may generally be rendered by, *moreover; besides this.*

² Properly, *de memoriā* excidit, it has slipped my memory; I have forgotten.

³ Abl. sing. fem. of possessive pronouns.

⁴ *Ut convenerat*, as had been agreed upon. In this sense a *nom.* is generally expressed.

Pres.	volo, nōlo, mālo	vis non vis mavis,	vult, non vult, mavult,	volūmus, nolūmus, malūmus,	vultis, non vultis, mavultis,	volunt. nolunt. malunt.
Subj. Pres.	vēlim,	nōlim,	mālim.	(is, it: imus, itis, int.)		
Subj. Imperf.	vellem,	nollem,	mallem.			
Infinitive.	velle,	nolle,	malle.			

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or participles, (except *vōlens, nūlens,*) nor imperative, except *nōlī nolito, — nolite.*

Nōlī putāre, (be unwilling to think, =) *do not think.*

(3.) Fēro, (tūlī, lātum,) bear. (Imperative, *fer — ferte.*)

This verb has *fers, fert, fertur*, for *feris, ferit, feritur*; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r*'s. Hence *ferrem, ferre, &c.*, for *ferērem, ferēre.*

4.) Fīo, become; am made or done: partly used as pass. of fācio.

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has *fīerem* for *fīrem*, and an irregular infin. *fīeri*. It has no perfect; *factus sum, eram, &c.*, being in use.

(5.) Edo, (ē,) eat.

This verb is conjugated regularly after the third; but has also some forms which are common to it and *sum*.

Present.	<i>edo, &c.,</i>	and also,	<i>ēs,</i>	<i>est,</i>	— <i>estis,</i>	—
Imperative.	<i>ede, &c.,</i>	and also,	<i>es,</i>	<i>esto,</i>	— <i>este,</i>	<i>estote.</i>
Subj. Imperf.	<i>edērem,</i>	and also,	<i>essēm,</i>	<i>esses, &c.</i>		
Infinitive.	<i>edere,</i>	and	<i>esse.</i>			

N. B. These forms must be distinguished from those of *sum* by their transitive meaning. *ēs*, thou eatest; *es*, thou art.

(6.) Eo, (ivi,¹ itum,) go. (Pres. *eo, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.* Imp. *ibam.* Fut. *ibo.* Imperat. *i.* Subj. pres. *eām.* Imp. *īrem.* Part. *iens, euntis, &c.* Ger. *eundi, &c.*)

(7.) { *Queo,* am able; can. | These verbs are conjugated like *eo*, as far
{ *Nequeo,* am unable; cannot. | as they are in use: 3 plur. *queunt, nequeunt.* Subj. pres. *queam, nequeam, &c.*

(8.) { *Memīni,* { I remember; with only the tenses derived from the perfect, which
{ has the meaning of a present. Imper. *memento.*
{ *Cepi,* I have begun, (*captus est* before pass. infin.)
{ *Odi,* I hate, (with meaning of present. See *memini.*)

(9.) Inquam, I say: *inquit*, says he: *inquiunt*, say they, &c.

¹ In the compounds of *eo*, the perf. is generally *ii*

§ 163. ADVERBS.

164. ADVERBS OF PLACE¹ are fivefold, viz. :--

ADVERBS SIGNIFYING MOTION (OR REST.)

(1) <i>In a place.</i>			
Ubi ?	<i>Where ?</i>	Versus,	<i>Towards.</i>
Hic,	<i>Here.</i>	Sursum,	<i>Upwards.</i>
Illic,	<i>There.</i>	Deorsum.,	<i>Downwards.</i>
Istic,	<i>There, where you are.</i>	Retrorsum,	<i>Backwards.</i>
Ibi,	<i>There.</i>	Dextrorsum,	<i>To the right hand</i>
Intus,	<i>Within.</i>	Sinistrorsum,	<i>To the left hand.</i>
Foris,	<i>Without.</i>		
Ubique,	<i>Everywhere.</i>		
Nusquam,	<i>Nowhere.</i>		
Alicubi,	<i>Somewhere.</i>		
Alibi,	<i>Elsewhere.</i>		
Ubivis,	<i>Anywhere, (you please.)</i>		
Ibidem,	<i>In the same place.</i>		
(2) <i>To a place—(o, uc.)</i>		(4) <i>From a place— nc, nde</i>	
Quo ?	<i>Whither ?</i>	Unde ?	<i>Whence ?</i>
Huc,	<i>Hither.</i>	Hinc,	<i>Hence.</i>
Illuc,	<i>Thither.</i>	Illic,	<i>Thence.</i>
Istuc,	<i>Thither, to where you are</i>	Istinc,	<i>Thence, from where you are</i>
Intro,	<i>To within.</i>	Inde,	<i>Thence.</i>
Foras,	<i>To without.</i>	Allunde,	<i>From elsewhere.</i>
Eo,	<i>To that place.</i>	Alicunde,	<i>From some place.</i>
Allo,	<i>To another place.</i>	Sicunde,	<i>Is from any place.</i>
Alloquo,	<i>To some place.</i>	Utrinque,	<i>On both sides.</i>
Eodem,	<i>To the same place.</i>	Superne,	<i>From above.</i>
		Inferne,	<i>From below.</i>
		Cœlitus,	<i>From heaven.</i>
		Funditus,	<i>From the ground.</i>
(3) <i>Towards a place.</i>		(5) <i>Through or by a place</i>	
Quorsum ?	<i>Whitherward ?</i>	Qua ?	<i>Which way ?</i>
		Hac,	<i>This way.</i>
		Illac,	<i>That way.</i>
		Istac,	<i>That way, by you</i>
		Alia,	<i>Another way.</i>

165. ADVERBS OF TIME are threefold, viz. :—

SUCH AS SIGNIFY,—

(1) <i>Being in time, either</i>		3. <i>Future.</i>	
1. <i>Present.</i>		(Very near.)	
Nunc,	<i>Now.</i>	Jamjam,	<i>Presently.</i>
Hodie	<i>To-day.</i>	Mox,	<i>Immediately.</i>
		Statim,	<i>By-and-by.</i>
2. <i>Past.</i>		Protinus,	<i>Instantly.</i>
Tunc, }	<i>Then.</i>	Illico,	<i>Straightway</i>
Tum, }			
Heri, .	<i>Yesterday.</i>		
Dudum, }			
Prædixi, }	<i>Heretofore.</i>		
Prædie,	<i>The day before.</i>		
Nudiustertius,	<i>Three days ago.</i>		
Nuper,	<i>Lately.</i>		
		(Remote.)	
		Cras,	<i>To-morrow.</i>
		Postridie,	<i>The day after.</i>
		Perendie,	<i>Two days hence</i>
		Nondum,	<i>Not yet.</i>

¹ From Ruddiman.

4. *Indefinite.*

Quando ?	<i>When ?</i>
Aliquando,	} <i>Sometimes</i>
Nonnunquam,	
Interdum,	
Semper,	<i>Always.</i>
Nunquam,	<i>Never.</i>
Intèrim,	} <i>In the mean time.</i>
Interea,	
Quotidie,	<i>Daily.</i>

(2) *Continuance of Time.*

Quamdiu ?	<i>How long ?</i>
Diu,	<i>Long.</i>
Tamdiu,	<i>So long</i>
Jamdiu,	} <i>Long ago</i>
Jamhūdum,	
Jampridem,	

(3) *Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time*1. *Indefinite.*

Quoties ?	<i>How often.</i>
Sæpe,	<i>Often.</i>
Raro,	<i>Seldom.</i>
Toties,	<i>So often.</i>
Aliquoties,	<i>For several times</i>
Vicissim,	<i>By turns</i>
Rursus,	<i>Again.</i>
Iterum,	<i>A second time.</i>
Subinde,	<i>Immediately after</i>
Identidem,	<i>Several times.</i>

2. *Definite, or in Number.*

Semel,	<i>Once</i>
Bis,	<i>Twice.</i>
Ter,	<i>Thrice.</i>
Quater,	<i>Four times.</i>

166. ADVERBS OF ORDER : as,—

Inde	<i>then.</i>	Denuo	<i>anew</i>
Deinde	<i>thereafter.</i>	Denique	<i>finally</i>
Dehinc	<i>henceforth.</i>	Postremo	<i>lastly</i>
Porro	<i>moreover.</i>	Primo, -um	<i>first</i>
Deinceps	<i>successively.</i>	Secundo	<i>secondly</i>

&c. &c.

§ 167. PREPOSITIONS.

168. The prepositions governing the accusative are twenty-eight :—

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,
Circum, circa, citrà, cis,
Ergà, contra, inter, extrà,
Infrà, intrà, juxtà, ob,
Pènes, pòne, post, et præter,
Pròpe, propter, per, sècundum,
Suprà, versus, ultra, trans.

169. Fourteen prepositions govern the ablative :—

Absque, -a, ab, abs, and de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,
Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.

170. Four prepositions govern sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative :—

In, sub, super, subter.

§ 171. PRINCIPLES OF WORD-BUILDING.

DIVISION OF THE CONSONANTS.

Mutes.				Liquids	Spirants.	Organ by which they are formed.
SMOOTH. MID. ASP.						
1. p sounds,	p	b	(ph,) f	m	v	lip, (labials;)
t sounds,	t	d	(th,)	n l	s	tongue, (dentals)
k sounds,	c	g	(ch,) qu	r	h	throat, (gutturals.)

Double letters, { x is equivalent to cs.
z ————— ss or cs

(1) Prefixes

2. Ab, away from.
3. ad, to,
4. amb, } round; about; on both sides.
- ambi-, }
5. ante, before.
6. circum, around.
7. con. with; in some words completely.
8. contra, against.
9. de, down; way; in some words it adds the notion of disagreeableness or deterioration.
10. Dis,¹ asunder, in different directions; away from; un-.
11. ex, out of, thoroughly.
12. in, into, on, against; with adjectives, not.
13. inter, between, amongst.
14. intro, within.
15. ob, against; sometimes about.²
16. per, through, thoroughly; (with adj.) very. It sometimes adds a bad meaning to the word
17. post, after.
18. præ, before; (with adj.) very.

(Change of form.)

{ a, (m,¹ v, and sometimes f; but *an* before *fero, fugio*.)
{ ab, (sc, t,) as (p.)
changes d into the initial consonant of the word, before s and all the mutes and liquids, (c before *qu*;) *ad*, however, may remain before all these.

co, (h and vowels;) com, (m, b, p;³) assimilated before l, r.

di, (d, g, l, m;) assimilated before f.

e, (liquids and b, d, g, v,) ef, (f.)
im, (b, p, m;) i, (gn;) assimilated before l, r.⁴
assimilated in *intelligo*.

assimilated before c, f, g, p; but may stand before p.
assimilated before l.

¹ The letters in parentheses are those before which it undergoes the change.

² And sometimes vowels, as in *comedo*.

³ The meaning of *dis* is generally separative; sometimes *deprivative*, (as in *displicere, dissuadere*.) Doderlein.

⁴ "In" may, however, stand before l, r.

⁵ In which meaning it is an abbreviation, perhaps from *amb*. D

Prefixes

19. *poster, by.*
20. *pro, forth, forwards.*
21. *re, back, again, away, un-; (sometimes very, or forth from within.)*
22. *retro, backwards.*
23. *se, without, apart from.*
24. *sub, under, away from beneath, from below upwards, somewhat.*
25. *subter, underneath, away from underneath.*
26. *super above.*
27. *trans, across, through, over to the other side.*
28. *nē, not.*
29. *vē, not, ill.*
30. *bene, well.*
31. *male, ill.*
32. *statim, enough.*

Suffixes

prod before vowel: pol, por, before l, r
red before vowel.

assimilated before c, f, g, m, p, r. (But before m, p, r, and n, it is better to retain the b.)

trā, (d, j,) but trans preferred by Cæsar

(2) Suffixes

(a) VERBS.

33. *are, from nouns: to make, produce, employ oneself about, procure, show oneself as: -ire (from nouns) are also trans.*
34. *are, from root of supine: to do, strengthening the meaning of the primitive verb, (intensives.)*
35. *it-are, from root of present or supine: to do frequently, continually, (frequentatives.)*
36. *sc-ēre, to begin to—(inchoatives.)*
a, e, are the connecting vowels for the first and second conjugations; i for the third and fourth. Some are from nouns: their perfect is in *ui, se* and the connecting vowel being thrown away.
37. *ār-ire, to wish or want to—(desideratives.)*
38. *ill-are, to do in a little degree or trifling way.*
39. *ēre, from nouns, generally intransitive; to be or become*
40. *ari, from substantives; (same meaning as āre, 33.)*

(b) SUBSTANTIVES.

41. *or, from root of supine, a man who does—fem. rix.*
42. *or, from root of present, express the action or state of the verb.*
43. *io,*
44. *us, of the fourth, } action or state of the verb: io especially the doing of the action.*
45. *ūra,*
46. *ido, (G. Idin for idon,) }* are also abstract substantives from verbs.
47. *igo, (G. Igin for igon,) }*
48. *men, } the thing done.*
49. *mentum, } the thing by which—is done: that which does.*
I is the connecting vowel of the third, but the termination is often added without a connecting vowel. In the first and fourth, the terminations are added to the a, i.
50. *hūlum, } that which is, that which is used for, that by which.*
51. *ūlum,*
52. *ēla,*
53. *ēna,* } also denote that by which.
54. *crum,*
55. *strum,* } a place or thing prepared for.
56. *um, the action of a verb as a thing: then the action itself.*
57. *mōnia, the habit or continued state of.*
58. *o,*
59. *a, } express the person who.*

From Nouns, (including Participles.)

60. *tas*, Gen. *tātis*: [generally has *i* for the connecting vowel from adjectives in *ius* are formed substantives in *ītas*, from adjectives in *stus*, substantives in *stas*.] are termination, of abstract substantives, denoting a property disposition, state, &c.
61. *la*, (from adj. of one termination¹)
62. *ītia*, (from adjectives in *us*)
63. *tūdo*, (connecting vowel *i*)
64. *ēdo*, (a rare termination)
65. *tus*, Gen. *tūtis*, (only in four words)
66. *lus*, { diminutives;² connecting vowel generally *u*, which sometimes takes a *e*
la, { before it. Some have *o* or *i* as their connecting vowel. Others end
lum, { in *illus*, *ellus*. Some in *leus*.
67. *ium*, denotes a *body* or *assemblage* of, or an *office* abstractedly.
68. *ātus*, {
69. *ītas*, { answer to "*hood*," "*ship*," denoting either an *office* or a *body* of men.
70. *īra*, {
71. *ētum*, a place where *trees* grow together.
72. *arium*, a *receptacle*.
73. *ile*, a place where *animals* are kept.

Patronymics.

74. *Ides*, son or (male) descendant of.
75. *Ides*, is for *e-īdes*, from nouns in *eus*.
76. *ādes*, { are from words of the first decl. in *as* or *es*; *īdes* also from *ius*
77. *lades*, {
78. *is*, fem. form of *ides*, Gen. *īdis*.
79. *as*, ——— *ades*, Gen. *ādis*

(c) ADJECTIVES (1) from Verbs.

80. *bundus*, has the strengthened meaning of the present participle used adjectively.
81. *cundus*, has in a few words the same meaning as *bundus*.
82. *Idus*, (chiefly from intransitive verbs,) denotes the quality of the root adjectively.
83. *uus*, has the same meaning as *īdus*: from transitive verbs it generally has a passive meaning.
84. *īlis*,
īllis, { capable of being; fit to be.
85. *ax*, having such a *habit*, *inclination*, &c.; generally of *faulty* ones.

(d) Adjectives signifying of, belonging or related to.

86. *ius*, mostly from substantives in *or*.
87. *īcus*, generally from names of *places*, *countries* and *persons*
88. *ēus*, from Greek names of persons.
89. *īlis*.
90. *ālis*, (*āris* after another *l*; and in *militaris*.)
91. *ēlis*.
92. *īnus*, describing the *flesh* of such an animal.

¹ And sometimes from substantives, (custod-*la*.)

² Observe, the diminutive ends in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, according as the word from which it is formed is *masc.*, *fem.*, or *neuter*.

93. *inus*, (from *is*, *ium*,)
 94. *ensis*,
 95. *as*, (Gen. *itis*: from *um*,)
 96. *ānus*, *lānus*,
 97. *ēus*, (from *a*, *o*,)
- } of such a town, &c., (*ānus*, *ensis*, from other places also, as *montānus*, *castrēnsis*.)

(e) Adjectives meaning of *such a substance or material*.

98. *ēnus*.
 99. *iuus*, (especially of *trees*, *plants*, &c.)
 (When the root is not the name of a *material* or *substance*, *iuus* denotes *likeness* only.)
 100. *cuis*, (used also as *ius*, a simple *genitive* meaning.)
 101. *ceus*, (denotes *likeness* only, when the root is not the name of a *substance* or *material*.)

(f) Adjectives signifying *fulness*, *abundance*.

102. *ōsus*.
 103. *lentus*, (often with connecting vowel *u*.)
 104. *idus*.

105. *arius* denotes of such an *occupation*; generally used as substantives. Sometimes *pertaining to*, (*agrarius*.)
 106. *atus*,
 107. *itus*,
 108. *utus*,
 109. *stus*, *being in*; or *having* (such a property) *in oneself*.
 110. *stis*, *being in* such a place.
 111. *ster*,
 112. *stis*,
 113. *stis*,
 114. *stis*,
 115. *ivus* mostly denotes *manner*, *circumstance*, &c.
 116. *ernus* marks *descent*, and relations of *time*.
 117. *urnus* denotes *time*.

ADVERBS.

118. *ē*, from adjectives in *us*, *er*.
 119. *ē*, from adjectives of the third.
 120. *ō*, from some adjectives in *us*, *er*; and from *past participles*.
 121. *ter*, (with connecting vowel *i*, except after *n*.) from adjectives of the *third* and *participles* in *us*.

[A few are from adjectives in *us*, but there is generally an adverb in too.]

122. (s)im, } from root of *supine*, denoting the *manner*; but also from substantives
 123. (t)im, } generally with connecting vowel *a*.
 124. *itus*, (from substantives, adjectives, and prepositions,) denoting *whence*.

(g) Common terminations of compound words.

125. *dīcus*, one who
 126. *lōquus*, ——— } *speaks*,
 127. *fīcus*, one who *does*,
 128. *vōlus*, one who *wishes*
- } as adjectives.

129. *dicus*, one who *speaks*.
 130. *ceps*, (*clipitis*), one who *takes*.
 131. *sex*, (*ficis*), one who *does*.
 132. *cen*, (*cinis*), one who *sings*.
 133. *fer*, }
 134. *ger*, } one who *bears*.
 135. *gēna*,¹ one who is *born of*.
 136. *cōla*, one who *dwells in*.

Corresponding subst. of *thing*

137. *dicium*.
 138. *clipium*.
 139. *ficium*.
 140. *cinium*

When the first half of the compound word is a noun, the connecting vowel is short *i*.]

To these may be added,—

141. *spex*, (*spīcis*), one who *looks at*; *examines*.
 142. *spicium*, corresponding substantive of *thing*.

¹ So *gnus*, for *gen-us*, (*gigno*), of such a nature

§ 172. TABLE OF GENDERS.

THIRD DECLENSION.		
Masc. terminations. ER, OR, OS, ES increasing, O, when not do, go, io.	Fem. terminations. do, go, io, ¹ as, is, au ^s , x, es not increasing, s impure.	Neut. terminations c, a, t, e, l, n, ar, ur, us.
Principal Exceptions. er) cadaver uber iter ver papaver verber tuber. or) arbor equor marmor cor. es) compes requies merces seges merges teges quies as. os) cos dos os (ossis) os (oris) ² chaos ² epos ² melos o) caro ² echo	Principal Exceptions. do } ORDO go } CARDO io } LIGO MARGO (f) ² is) AMNIS LAPIS ANGUIS (f) MENSIS AXIS ORBIS CASSIS (is) PANIS COLLIS PISCIS CINIS POSTIS CRINIS PULVIS ENSIS SANGUIS FASCIS TORRIS FINIS (f) UNGUIS FOLLIS VECTIS FUNIS VERMIS IGNIS x) CALIX CODEX CORTEX GREX POLLEX ² THORAX VERTEX es, phri- } ACINACES syll. }	Principal Exceptions l) SAL SOL n) LIEN REN SPLEN PECTEN ur) FUR FURFUR TURTUR VULTUR us) pecus (ūdis; incūs ³ senectūs juvenūs servitūs palūs tellūs salūs virtūs LEPUS MUS grus (m) sus (m.)
FIRST DECLENSION. Fem. except names of men.		FOURTH DECLENSION. (us.) Masc.—except acus idus (pl) manus porticus tribus
SECOND DECLENSION. (us, ER. ⁴) Masc.—except alvus domus humus vannus pelagus virus vulgus (also m.)	Principal Exceptions. s } MONS im- } PONS pure } PONS DENS QUADRANS RUDENS ² HYDROPS as) AS ELEPHAS vas (vasis) fas nefas.	FIFTH DECLENSION. Fem.—except DIES (also f. in sing.) MERIDIES.

¹ Words in *io*. that are not *abstract* nouns, are *masc.*, e g. PAPILIO, PUGIO, SCIPIO, SEPTENTRIO, STELLIO, UNIO, (pearl,) with the numeral nouns TERNIO, QUATER-
RIO, &c.

² Properly Greek words.

³ Those with (f), (m), are sometimes fem. and masc. respectively.

⁴ Greek nouns in *odus*, (*exodus*, *methodus*, &c.,) with *dialectus*, *diphthongus* &c., are fem.

⁵ Hence *us* with *long u* is a fem. termination.

173. These rules depend on the terminations ; but some words have a particular gender from their *meaning*.

A. The names of *male persons*, and *winds*, are masculine.

B The names of *female persons*, *countries*, and *islands*, *towns*, *plants*, and *trees* are fem.

(a) But of *towns*, these are *masc.* :

(1) Some in *o*, (CROTO, HIPPO, NARBO, SULMO, FRUSINO;) and

(2) All plurals in *i*: VEII, DELPHI

These are neuter :

(1) All in *um*, or plur. *a* :

(2) Those in *e* or *ur* of the third : *Præneste*, *Tibur*

(b) Of *trees* and *plants*,

(1) Those in *er* (and many in *us*) of the second are *masc.* :

(2) Those in *er*, *ur* of the third are *neut.* : *acer*, *siler*, *robur*, &c.

C. Several are common : *comes*, *conjux*, *custos* *dux*, *hospes*, *juvenis*, *parvus* *princeps*, *sacerdos* &c

BRIEF SKETCH OF LATIN SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. SYNTAX treats of propositions or sentences, and of their relations and arrangement.
 2. A proposition consists of a *subject* and *predicate*.
 - 3 Sentences are either simple or compound.
 - (a) A simple sentence contains one proposition.
 - (b) A compound sentence contains two or more propositions.
-

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

4. In every sentence, the *subject* is that of which something is affirmed or declared.
5. The *predicate* is that which is affirmed or declared of the subject; thus:—

Equus currit, the horse runs

- (a) Here “horse” is the *subject*; “runs” the *predicate*.
- (b) The proposition relates to the *horse*. It is affirmed or predicated of the horse that he *runs*: and the sentence is *simple*, because containing one simple proposition.

(c) The following are examples for practice :—

Puer discit. Vita brevis est.
 Caius, ruptis vinculis, evolavit.
 Cræsus, a Cyro victus, regno spoliatus est.
 Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, cum diuissimus esse potest
 Errare est humanum.
 Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt.

II. OF THE CASES

RULE I.—A verb agrees with its nominative (i. e., its *subject nomin.*) in number and person ; thus :—

Plurima stellæ soles sunt ;
Equus currit ; equi currunt,
Nos legimus ; Tu scribis ;
Homines sunt modesti.

- Obs.* 1. The nominatives *ego, tu, nos, vos*, are seldom expressed. They are used when *emphasis* is required.
2. A *collective noun* (i. e., a noun singular, denoting number or multitude) has sometimes a plural verb ; as, *turba ruunt ; pars pugnant, pars fugiunt.*
3. So *uterque* and *quisque* often take a plural verb.
4. Where two or more nomin. cases singular come together, the verb is generally put in the plural ; as, *Antonius et Octavianus vicerunt Brutum et Cassium.*
5. But if the nomin. denote things without life, a verb singular is often used ; as, *Mens enim, et ratio et consilium in senibus est.*
6. With *et—et, quum—tum*, the verb is generally put in the singular number.
7. When the nomin. are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third ; as, *Si tu et Tullia valebis, ego et Cicero valemus.*
8. An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the *nominative* to the verb ; the adjective that agrees with it is then in the *neuter gender* ; as, *humanum est errare. Turpe est mentiri. Turpe est poetæ domum evertere.*

RULE II.—Where two nouns are spoken of the *same thing*, the second is put in the *same case* as the first ; as,—*Isocrates orator. Nos consules. Roma urbs. Urbs Athenæ.*

- Obs.* 1. The second noun is then said to be in *apposition* to the first, i. e., it is a *name, title, or description* of the preceding one.
2. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns, is usually put in the plural ; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribuni plebis.*

RULE III.—Verbs of *becoming, being, seeming,*

And passive verbs of *making, calling, deeming,* take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative; as,—*ille vocatur Robertus. Philippus habetur gracilis.*

Obs. The verb "*to be,*" takes a nomin. (of either a *substant.* or *adject.*) after it; as, *terra est rotunda. Hortensius fuit orator.*

RULE IV.—Adjectives, adjective pronouns and participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Obs. 1. When an *adject.* belongs to more than one *substant.* or *pronoun,* it should agree with the *more worthy* gender,* and be in the plural; as, *pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

2. When the *substantives* are things that *have not life,* the *adject.* is generally put in the *neuter*; as, *regna, imperia, nobilitates, honores, divitiæ in casu sita sunt.*

RULE V.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent† in *gender, number, and person*; as,—*puer qui legit. Literæ quas dedi. Animal quod currit.*

Obs. 1. The *case* of the relative has nothing to do with the other sentence; but must be governed by the verb (or some other *governing* word) of its own sentence; as, *arbores serit agricola, quarum fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Ego quem tu vocas. Ille de quo tu dicis.*

2. When the *relat.* agrees with some *case* of a *subst.* expressed in its own, but not in the principal clause, some *case* of that *subst.* must be supplied in the principal clause; as, *quas misisti literas accepi*; for *accepi literas quas misisti.*

3. Sometimes the *infin. mood* stands as the *antecedent* to a *relat.* Sometimes a sentence or part of a sentence stands for the antecedent. In this case the *adj.* or *relat.* is put in the *neut. gender.* *Id quod or quæ res* are often found instead of the *relat.* only.

4. When the antecedent has a *superlative* with it, the adjective is generally put in the relative clause; as, *primus fecit*; "he was the first person who did it."

RULE VI.—One substantive depending upon another is put in the *genitive case*;‡ as,—*amor gloriæ. Cicero-nis orationes. Pater patriæ. Lex naturæ.*

* The masculine is said to be more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine than the neuter.

† That is, *going before* noun, i. e., the noun or pronoun for which the relative stands.

‡ The Genit. is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which something belongs, e. g., *hominum facta. liber pueri, &c.*: it is *objective*, when

Obs. 1. The Romans often used a *dependent genitive* where we use *prepositions*—*in, for, with, &c.*; as, *gratia beneficii*; *suarum rerum fiducia*; *Pyrrhi regis bellum*, &c.

2. Where we use a *substant.* with an *adject.* agreeing with it, an *adjective* in the *neuter* is often used in Latin, with a *genitive* governed by it; as, *quantum voluptatis*; *aliquid temporis*; *multum boni*; *quid novi?* &c.

RULE VII.—A partitive adjective governs a noun in the genitive.

Obs. 1. A partitive adjective is one that expresses *some* individuals considered as *parts* of a larger number or body; such as *which, every, each, both, some, &c.*, with *ordinal numerals, comparatives, and superlatives*

2. The partitive *adject.* generally agrees in gender with the governed *genit.*, because that expresses the *thing meant*; as, *alter consulum*; *Græcorum oratorum præstantissimus*

RULE VIII.—A substantive *having an adjective agreeing with it*, and *describing* a former substantive, stands in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as,—*vir excellentis ingenii*; *vir summo ingenio*; *ingentis magnitudinis serpens*; *classis septuaginta navium*.

RULE IX.—*Opus est* (there is need) is followed by an *ablative of what is needed*. The *person who needs* must be put in the *dative*; as,—*acuto homine nobis opus est*; *quid opus est verbis?* But the *thing needed* is often the *nominative* to the verb *sum*, or the *accusative* before *esse*; as,—*quarundam rerum nobis exempla per multa opus sunt*.

RULE X.—Adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation*, and their *opposites*; together with *verbals* in *ax*, and many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness*, govern the *genitive*; as, *avidus novitatis*; *insidiarum plenus*; *magnæ urbis capax*; *audax ingenii*; &c.

Obs. 1. To this class belong many participles *used adjectively*; as, *veritatis amans*; *officii negligens*; &c.

It denotes that which is the object of the feeling or action spoken of, e. g., *amor virtutis, tedium laboris, desiderium otii, &c.* The *objective genitive* usually follows the noun on which it depends. (Zumpt.)

RULE XI.—Such a substant. as *property, duty, part, mark, &c.*, is often omitted in Latin after *to be*; so that *to be* is followed by a *genit.* governed by this subst. or an *adject.* in the *neuter* gender agreeing with it; as,—*est boni oratoris; judicis est; dementiæ est; meum est; cujusvis hominis est errare.*

Obs. Such a noun as *officium, munus, indicium, &c.*, must be understood.

RULE XII.—Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting, &c.*, take a *genit.* of the charge; as,—*proditionis accusare.*

Obs. 1. But if the *charge* be expressed by a *neut. pron.* it stands in the *accus.* as, *si id me accusas.*

2. Instead of the *genit.* the *ablat.* with *de* is very common; as, *de pecuniis repetundis damnari.*

3. The *punishment* to which a person is condemned, stands generally in the *ablat.*; sometimes in the *genit.*, and often in the *accus.* with *ad*; as *capitis (or capite) damnari; ad bestias condemnare.*

RULE XIII.—*Satago, misereor, and miserescor*, govern the *genit.*; verbs of *reminding, remembering, and forgetting*, the *gen.* or *acc.*; as,—*misereri omnium. meminisse beneficia. dissensionum oblivisci.*

RULE XIV.—With *interest* and *rêfert* the person *to whom* it is of importance, is put in the *genit.*; as,—*interest omnium recta fucere.*

Obs. 1. But instead of personal *pron.*, the possessives are used in the *ablat. fem.*; as, *quid nostræ refert.*

2. The degree of importance is expressed by the *genit. of price*, or by an *adverb*; as, *magni interest quos quisque audiat quotidie.*

3. The *thing that is of importance* is expressed by an *infinitive clause*, or a *neut. pron.*; or a clause introduced by an *interrogative*, or by a *conjunction*; as, *illud meæ magni interest, te ut videam.*

RULE XV.—These impersonals, *pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret*, take an *accusat.* of the *person feeling*, a *genit.* of what *causes* the feeling; as,—*ignavum pœnitet aliquando ignaviæ; tædet me vitæ; tui me miseret; &c.*

RULE XVI.—Adjectives which signify *advantage*, *likeness*, *agreeableness*, *usefulness*, *fitness*, *facility*, &c., (with their *opposites*,) govern the *dative*.

Obs. 1. Several of these take also a *genit.*

2. *Natus*, *commodus*, *incommodus*, *utilis*, *inutilis*, *vehemens*, *aptus*, *accommodatus*, *idoneus*, may also be followed by *ad* with the *accus.* of the *object*, or *purpose*, for which.

3. *Similis* takes the *genit.* to express like a person in character

RULE XVII.—The *dative* follows verbs that signify *advantage* or *disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*, of *giving* and *restoring*; of *promising* and *paying*; of *commanding* and *telling*; of *trusting* and *intrusting*; of *complying with* and *opposing*; of *threatening* and *being angry*; &c.

Obs. 1. All verbs may be followed by a *dat.* of the thing or person *to*, *for*, or *against* which any thing is done.

2. Many of these govern the *accus.* of the *immediate*, or *dat.* of the *remoter* object.

3. Verbs of *comparing* are also followed by the prepositions *cum*, *inter*, and *ad*.

4. Of verbs of *advantage* and *disadvantage*, *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and *offendo*, govern the *accus.*

5. Of verbs of *commanding*, *rego* and *guberno* govern the *accus.* only, and *tempero* and *moderor* the *acc.* or *dat.*

RULE XVIII.—*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*, governs the *dative*.

RULE XIX.—Verbs compounded with the adverbs *bene*, *satis*, *male*, generally govern the *dative*.

RULE XX.—*Most* of verbs compounded with *ad*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *præ*, *sub*, *con*, govern the *dat.*

RULE XXI.—*Many* verbs compounded with *ab*, *ante*, *de*, *e*, *post*, *pro*, *re*, *super*, govern the *dat.*

Obs. Some of these verbs governing the *dat.* are *transitive*, and govern the *accus.* only; some the *dat.* and *accus.*; and very many are followed by the *prepositions* they are compounded with.

RULE XXII.—*Dono*, *circumdo*, and several other verbs, take either the *dat.* of the *person* and an *accus.*

of the *thing*, or an *accus.* of the *person* and an *ablat.* of the *thing*; as,—*mihi coronam*, or *me coronâ donat*; *urbem muro*, or *murum urbi circumdat*.

RULE XXIII.—*Esse, donare, mittere, proficisci, &c.*, with *dare* and *vertere*, (to impute,) govern two *datives*.

RULE XXIV.—*Sum* with a *dat.* of a person often expresses the English “*have*,” as,—*sunt mihi libri*; *est mihi vacca*; &c.

Obs. In *est mihi nomen* the name is either in the *nomin.* or *dat.*, or (less commonly) the *genit.* The construction with the *dat.* is the most common.

RULE XXV.—The *accus.* denoting the immediate object of an action, follows all transitive verbs, whether active or deponent, to express the person or thing affected by the action implied in such verbs; as,—*pater amat* (or *tuëtur*) *filium*.

Obs. 1. The transit. or intransit. nature of a verb depends entirely upon its meaning, and can be learned only by practice in the use of a dictionary.

2. Many intrans. verbs become transit. when compounded with a preposition governing the *accus.*; as, *Pythagoras Persarum magos adit*.

3. Neuter verbs take a substant. of kindred meaning or origin in the *accus.*; and verbs of *tasting* or *smelling* of take the thing in the *accus.*; as, *somnare somnium*; *ceram olere*.

4. Other neuters are used transitively to express a *transitive notion* combined with their own proper notion; as, *sitire honores*; *idem gloriatur*; *multa peccat*.

RULE XXVI.—Verbs of *asking, teaching, clothing, and concealing*, may have two *accus.*, one of the *person* and another of the *thing*; as,—*quis musicam docuit Epaminondam? nihil nos cêlat*.

Obs. Very frequently (and with some verbs *always*) either the *person* or the *thing* is governed by a *preposition*; such verbs are, *peto, postulo, quaero, &c.*

RULE XXVII.—Transitive verbs that take two *nominatives* in the passive, take two *accus.* in the active; as,—*Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit Euphrates*.

Obs. 1. One *accus.* is then in a sort of apposition to the other.

2. Such verbs are verbs of *calling, appointing* to an office, *considering, &c.*, together with *facio, efficio, reddo, &c.*

3. *Facio* and *efficio* often take *ut* instead of the second *accus.*; as, *fac ut sciam, &c.*

RULE XXVIII.—A noun of *time*, in answer to the question *when?* is put in the *ablat.*; in answer to *how long?* in the *accus.*; as,—*auctumno*, (in the autumn;)
solis occasu. *Ager multos annos quievit*

- Obs.* 1. The time *in* or *within* which is expressed by *inter*, *intra*, or by the *ablat.*
2. The time *how long before?* *how long after?* is expressed by the *ablat.*
3. A *point* or *space* of *future* time for which any arrangement is now made, is expressed by *in* with the *accus.*; as, *me invitavit in posterum diem*.
4. The *exact* time at which a thing is to be done, is expressed by *ad* with the *accus.*; as, *solvere ad Græcas calendas*.
5. *Abhinc* (ago) of *past* time, is joined to the *accus.* or *ablat.*; as, *abhinc annos* (or *annis*) *quatuor*.
6. *Natus* (born) takes the *accus.* of time, and expresses *at such an age*, *so many years old*; as, *tres annos natus*.

RULE XXIX.—The town *at which* a thing is done, if a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declens., is put in the *genit.*; if not, in the *ablat.*; as,—*vixi Romæ, Tarenti, Athenis, Gabiis, Tibûre, &c.*

RULE XXX.—In answer to *whither?* the place is put in the *accus.*; in answer to *whence?* in the *ablat.*; as,—*legati Athenas missi sunt; fugit Tarquinius Corintho*.

- Obs.* 1. These rules apply only to the names of *towns* and *small islands*. Before other words *prepositions* are used; and before *these* when the name has an *adjective*.
2. *Urbs, oppidum, locus*, in apposition to the name of a town in the *genit.*, stands in the *ablat.*

RULE XXXI.—*Local space* is expressed by the *accus.*, sometimes by the *ablat.*; as,—*tridui viam processit; bidui abest, (iter understood.)*

RULE XXXII.—*Domus* and *rus*, like names of towns, are used with verbs of motion without prepositions; as,—*domum revertitur; manet domi; vivit rure* or *ruri; abiit rus; &c.*

- Obs.* *Humi, belli*, and *militiæ*, are used in the *genit.*, with verbs of motion and rest; as, *humi facere: domi et militiæ*, "at home and abroad"

RULE XXXIII.—The *ablat.* is used to express the

thing *with which*, and often the manner *how*, and the cause *why*; as,—*Cornibus tauri se tutantur*.

RULE XXXIV.—The *price* for which a thing is *bought, sold, valued, or done*, is put in the *ablat.*; as,—*viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit*.

Obs. 1. *Magno, permagno, parvo, minimo, plurimo, nimio, vili*, stand in the *ablat.*, to express the *price*, *pretio* being understood.

2. *Tanti, quanti*, (and their compounds,) *pluris* and *minoris*, always stand in the *genit*

3. The substantives *focci, nauci, nihili, pili*, &c., stand in the *genit.*, after verbs of *valuing*.

RULE XXXV.—Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading*, &c., and their opposites, such as verbs of *wanting, depriving of, emptying of*, govern the *ablat.*

Obs. *Egeo* and *indigeo* (especially the latter) govern the *genit.* also.

RULE XXXVI.—Some verbs of *freeing from, removing from, differing from, being at a distance from*, &c., are sometimes followed by the *ablat.*; as,—*leva me hoc onere*, &c.

Obs. But in prose they are generally followed by a *preposition*.

RULE XXXVII.—*Fungor, fruor, uxor*, (with their compounds,) *potior, vescor, dignor, glorior*, take the *ablat.*, as does also *supersedeo*.

Obs. But *potior* takes the *genit.* when it means "to obtain sovereign power over."

RULE XXXVIII.—The *manner* or *cause*, and any word that restricts the meaning of another to a particular *part* of a thing spoken of, is put in the *ablat.*; as—*claudus fuit altero pede; scribo calamo; &c.*

RULE XXXIX.—Verbs that govern the *dative* in the active, are used *impersonally* in the passive; as, *gloriæ tuæ invidetur*, "your glory is envied;" *mihi creditur*, "I am beloved;" &c.

Obs. 1. The agent after a passive verb (when *a* or *ab* is not used) is sometimes put in the *dative*, and after the participle, in *dus*.

2. *Capulo, vineo, fio*, having a *passive* meaning, have also a *passive construction*; as, *ab hoste venire; a me fieri; &c.*

RULE XL.—Verbs that govern *two accus.* in the active, sometimes govern *one accus.* (that of the *object*) in the passive; as, *rogatus sententiam*, “being asked his opinion;” *longam indutus vestem*, “clothed in a long garment.”

RULE XLI.—Passive verbs and participles are sometimes followed by an accus. of the *part particularly referred to*; as, *oblitus faciam*; *incensus animum*; *adversum femur ictus*; &c.

Obs. 1. In some particular constructions, the part referred to is put in the *genit* or *ablat.*

2. In many general expressions, the passive voice is used *impersonally* where the active might be used in Latin, and *is* used in English; as, *ambulatum est* = we have walked. But the *personal* construction is far the more common.

III. USE OF THE TENSES.

1. There are in the active two tenses for each of the three divisions of time, past, present, and future; one expressing a complete, the other an incomplete action.

2. The passive has the same tenses with the same meaning, but they express the times and states of a condition of suffering.

3. The tenses of the present and past time, present and perfect, imperfect and pluperfect, have also a subjunctive mood; *scribam* and *scripserim*; *scriberem* and *scripsissem*. But neither the active nor the passive voice has a subjunctive of the future.

RULE XLII.—The *present* often has the force of the *perfect*; as, *jam pridem cupio*, “I have long been desiring;” *dudum a te literas expectabam*, “I had long been expecting letters from thee.”

RULE XLIII.—In animated narrative, the *past* is often described by the *present*; as, *subito edicunt consules, ut ad suum vestitum senatores redirent*, “the consuls

suddenly published an edict, that the senators should return to their usual dress."

RULE XLIV.—A *present* tense after *relatives*, or *where, if, as long as, &c.*, is generally expressed by the *future*; as, *quum Tullius rure redierit, mittam eum ad te*, "when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you."

RULE XLV.—The *perf. subjunctive* (as well as the *present*) is used as an *imperative*; as, *quod dubitas, ne feceris*, "what you have doubts about, do not do."

RULE XLVI.—The *future* is sometimes used for the *imperative*; as, *si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam*, "if any thing new happens, you will let me know (= let me know.)"

RULE XLVII.—The complete rule respecting the succession of tenses, is this: The tenses of the present and future, i. e., the present, perfect, (in its proper sense,) and the two futures, are followed by the tenses of the present, i. e., by the present and perfect subjunctive; and the tenses of the past, i. e., the imperfect, pluperfect, and historical perfect, are followed by the tenses of the past, i. e., by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. (Z.)

IV. OF THE MOODS

1 THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XLVIII.—The indicative is used in every proposition which declares a fact; as, *ambulat, scribis, credo, &c.*

Obs. 1 *Oportet, necesse est, convenit, potest; par, aequum, debet, &c.*, are put in the indicative of past time, to express that something should have been done, which in fact has not been done; as, *hoc facere debebas* "thou shouldst have done this."

2. With the participles in *rus* and *das*, the indicative of *sum* in past time is more commonly used than the subjunctive; as, *hec via tibi ingredienda eret*. "this path should have been taken by thee."

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE

RULE XLIX.—The subjunctive is used when a proposition is stated as possible or desirable, or as contingent and dependent.

- Obs.* 1. The present and perfect subjunctive are used of a case supposed, or a supposition granted; as, *Dixerit Epicurus*, "grant that Epicurus has said."
2. The pres. and perf. subjunc. are used to *soften an assertion or statement*; as, *hoc sine ulla dubitatione confirmaverim*, "this I would assert without any hesitation."
3. The pres. and perf. subjunc. are used with questions which imply a *doubt* respecting the *probability* or *propriety* of an action; as, *quis hoc facere ausit?* "who would dare to do this?"
4. The pres. and perf. subjunc. are also used as a softened imperative, to express a *precept*, a *wish*, a *request*, or with *ne*, a *prohibition*; as, *emas quod necesse est*, "buy what is necessary;" *ne credas, ne credideris*, "believe not."
5. The conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus*, which express a purpose, object, or result, govern a subjunctive; as, *edimus ut vivamus, non vivimus ut edamus; nil tam difficile est quin possit investigari*; &c.
6. All interrogative words take a subjunc. when they are dependent upon some other verb or proposition; as, *quis sit? nescio quis sit. Dubium est utrum horum verum sit*, "it is doubtful which of these two things is true."
7. Comparatives with *quam* *qui* in all its cases, require the subjunc.
8. Indefinite general expressions, with the relative, such as *est*, *sunt*, *reperiuntur*, *tempus fuit*, &c., when they do not refer to individuals, require the subjunc.; as, *sunt qui putent; inventi sunt multi, qui parati essent*, &c.
9. The imperf. and pluperf. subj. are used in a narrative after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as, *quemcumque licitorprehendisset, tribunus mitti jubebat*, "whomsoever the licitor had seized, the tribune ordered to be let go."

Oratio obliqua.

RULE L.—Oblique narration is when the speech of another is reported in the third person. The proposition which was in the indicative, is then put in the infinitive mood, and clauses connected by relatives and particles, are put in the subjunctive; as, *Cicero dicebat tria esse omnino genera quæ in disceptationem cadere possint; quid fiat, factum, futurumve sit*,—"Cicero used to say, that there were only three kinds

of questions that could fall into controversy ; what was doing, what had been done, and what would happen."

RULE LI.—(1.) *Si, nisi, etsi, tametsi, &c.*, require the subjunctive when the verb is in the imperfect or pluperfect. If doubt is expressed, they take the present subjunctive ; otherwise the indicative.

- (2.) *Quamvis, licet* and *ut* ("although") take a subjunctive.
- (3.) *Tanquam, quasi, ac si* ("just as if") and *dummodo*, ("provided only") take a subjunctive.
- (4.) *Quod, quia, quoniam, quandoquidem*, take a subjunctive when they express *the sentiment or language of another*, and not of the writer ; as, *Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumperet juventutem*, "Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he corrupted youth."
- (5.) *Antequam* and *priusquam* take commonly the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive ; also, the present and perfect subjunctive.
- (6.) *Dum, donec*, and *quoad*, signifying "until," have the subjunctive, if they refer to an object to be attained ; as, *expecta dum veniam*, "wait till I come."
- (7.) *Quum*, when it signifies "since" and "although," takes the subjunctive.
- (8.) *Quum*, "when," requires the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, if the events described depend on each other ; so that in English the participle may be used ; as, *Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix manus a se abstinuit*, "Alexander, having killed Clitus, hardly kept his hands from himself."

3 IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. The shorter form of the imperative (*scribe*, &c.) expresses a command, an exhortation, and a wish. The longer form (*scribito*, &c.) is used only for command, and chiefly in the wording of laws.

2. With the imperative, *not* must be rendered by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve*.

4. INFINITIVE MOOD.

RULE LII.—A verb which is the subject of another verb, must be in the infinitive mood, and is considered as of the neuter gender.

RULE LIII.—A verb which is the object of another verb, must be in the infinitive; as, *volo hoc dicere*, "I wish to say this."

RULE LIV.—The infinitive mood takes before it not the nominative, but the accusative.

RULE LV.—Many sentences that in English are joined to a verb by the conjunction "*that*," are expressed in Latin by the accusative and infinitive.

RULE LVI.—The accusative with the infinitive follows verbs (*sentendi et declarandi*) of *feeling*, *knowing*, *wishing*, *hearing*, *believing*, *thinking*, &c.; and such expressions as it is *certain*, *manifest*, *true*, &c.

RULE LVII.—The infinitive is often used in narrative for the present and imperfect indicative. This is called the *historical infinitive*.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVE.

Gerunds are *verbal substantives*, with the power of governing what belongs to the other parts of the verb.

The Gerundive, or *participle in dus*, is nearly allied

to the gerund. Its meaning is *passive*, denoting *necessity*, fitness, or something intended ; what *must*, *should*, or *is to be done*.

RULE LVIII.—When the verb does not govern the *accusative*, the participle in *dus* is not used in agreement with its substantive ; as, *parcendum est inimicis*, “ we must spare our enemies.”

PARTICIPLES.

The participle expresses the action of the verb, and governs the same cases. It agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

RULE LIX.—The participle of the *future in rus* often expresses the *purpose* with which a person acts ; as, *Alexander ad Jovem Hammonem pergit consulturus de origine sua*.

RULE LX.—The *participle in dus* often expresses the *end* or *purpose* for which a thing is done ; as, *Rex Harpago Cyrum occidendum tradidit*,—“ the king gave Cyrus to Harpagus, to-be-put-to death.”

Obs. 1. This is especially the case after *curare* (to *cause* a thing to be done, and verbs of *giving*, *receiving*, *lending*, *undertaking* ; as, *faciendum curare*, “ to have a thing made.”

✎ No Latin verb (except the *deponents* and *neuter-passives*) has a participle of the *perfect active*.

Obs. 2. Hence this partic. is expressed by the (passive) *past partic.* put absolutely, or by *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf. subjunc.* ; as, *relicto fratre, quum reliquisset fratrem*.

RULE LXI.—When a participle does not refer to a noun already governed or governing in the sentence, it is *put in the ablative* in agreement with its own noun.

Obs. 1. This construction is called the *ablat. absolute*.

2 When the partic. of an *ablat. absol.* is “ *being*,” it is omitted in Latin, and two substantives or a substant. and an *adject.* are put together in the *ablat.* ; as, *Cicerone consule* ; *Caio invito* ; *me duce* ; &c.

SUPINES.

RULE LXII.—The supine in *um* (active) follows verbs of *motion*, to express the object ; as, *cubitum ire* ; *Philippus, quum spectatum ludos iret, juxta theatrum occisus est.*

RULE LXIII.—The supine in *u* (virtually, though not really *passive*) follows a few adjectives ; as, *honestus, turpis, jucundus, facilis, &c.*, and the substantives *fas, nefas, opus.*

II. EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 1.

In the first six exercises, the object of which is to try the pupil's readiness and accuracy in forming and translating the tenses of the Latin Verb, the meaning of the verbs used is to be learned from the corresponding English Exercise. Wherever the conjugation is not told at once by the termination, it is marked by an added numeral.

✂ In the notes, S. refers to the Questions on Latin Syntax at the end of the volume: C. to the Cautions: Syn. to the Synonymes.

Sentences to which * is prefixed are not to be translated literally.

• a. Araturus est. b. Juraverant. c. Migremus, (1.) d. Silētis, (2.) e. Nocuisses, (2.) f. Manendi, (2.) g. Quærent, (3.) h. Metuant, (3.) i. Venimus. k. Serviant, (4.) l. Sitūtis, (4.) m. Tonabat. n. Ego vituperabo. o. Tu laudaveris. p. Rideat. q. Nos cadimus. r. Vos stetissetis.¹ s. Illi dormiebant, (4.) t. Pater doceat. u. Filius discet, (3.) v. Puella canat, (3.) w. Patres diligunt. x. Filii gaudent, (2.) y. Puellæ saltaverunt.

a. We should have ploughed. b. Let him swear. c. They had removed. d. I will be silent. e. They will hurt. f. Ye will remain. g. Seek. h. Let him fear. i. They are come. k. They would-have-been-slaves. l. He is thirsty. m. It thunders. n. They were blaming. o. We must praise virtue.² p. They will laugh. q. Ye were falling. r. They were standing. s. He will sleep. t. The fathers will teach. u. Let the sons learn. v. The girls were singing. w. Let the fathers love. x. The son will rejoice. y. Let the girls dance.

¹ From stare.

² Virtus, *g.* virtūdo. S. 163.

EXERCISE 2

a. Ludendum est,¹ (3.) b. Cantabitis. c. Stupuissent, (2) d. Vivant, (3.) e. Nos postulabimus. f. Detis, (1.) g. Accipiant, (3.) h. Jubebo. i. Parendum est, (2.) k. Nē recūsa. l. Mater nutrit. m. Accipitres² rapiebant, (3.) n. Lupus ululaverat. o. Equi hinniebant, (4.) p. Asini rudunt. q. Aquila volat, (1.) r. Ranæ natavissent. s. Nos patres senescimus. t. Filii adolescebant. u. Illi pueri garriebant, (4.) v. Arbōres crescunt.

a. Ye are playing. b. Let us sing. c. They are astounded. d. They will live. e. They would have demanded. f. Of giving. g. Ye were receiving. h. He will order. i. He will obey. k. He will have refused. l. The earth will nourish. m. Let the hawk snatch. n. The wolf will howl. o. The horses will neigh. p. The ass was braying. q. The eagles will have flown. r. A frog was swimming. s. My father was growing-old. t. Ye are growing-up. u. The boys chatter. v. The tree was growing.

S. 164.

² Stupēre, to be astounded.² Nom. Accipiter.

EXERCISE 3.

a. Clamabas. b. Certabimus. c. Respondebis. d. Fulgebit. e. Plaudebat, (3.) f. Pingant, (3.) g. Obedient, (4) h. Jacient, (3.) i. Aqua fluebat, (3.) k. Arēna urēbat, (3.) l. Aquilæ rapiant, (3.) m. Aves volabunt. n. Amīci veniebant, (4.) o. Famuli serviebant, (4.) p. Agricōlæ araturi sunt. q. Cantandum est. r. Vos nautæ navigabitis. s. Illi viri ridebant, (2.) t. Non est garriendum, (4.) u. Lupi ululabant. .

a. Ye were crying-out. b. (We) should not contend.¹ c. They answer. d. The moon was shining. e. Let the boys clap, (= applaud.) f. The boys will paint. g. Let a good boy obey. h. Let them throw. i. The waters will flow. k. The fire will burn, (*trans.*) l. Ye eagles are snatching. m. Let the birds fly. n. My friend will

come. o. The domestics will perform-their-service. p. The husbandman would have ploughed. q. The poet will have sung. r. The sailor will sail. s. Do not laugh. t. Boys will chatter. u. Of howling.

¹ S. 164.

EXERCISE 4.

a. Feminæ nebant. b. Viri pugnābitis. c. Speravisset. d. Tu metuebas. e. Ille fidebat. f. Puer ille ridebit. g. Puellæ plorabunt. h. Aurum illud micat, (1.) i. Pueri peccaverant. k. Vos puellæ ludētis. l. Patres jubebunt. m. Filiæ pareant. n. Hoc argentum splendebit. o. Discipuli non discebant. p. Illæ matres nutrient. q. Illa metalla fulgebant. r. Hi omnes current. s. Hæ aves cantillabant. t. Hæc membra dolebant.

a. The woman will spin. b. Do not fight. c. Ye were hoping. d. (We) must not fear. e. We must be-confident. f. Let the boy laugh. g. Those boys cried. h. Let that gold shine. i. Let not the boy do wrong. k. For the sake (*causâ*) of playing. l. Let the fathers order. m. To obey. n. This silver was shining. o. Let the pupils learn. p. That mother was nourishing. q. That metal was shining. r. These boys will run. s. This bird was trilling. t. This limb is-in-pain.

EXERCISE 5.

a. Hic liber delectabit. b. Gloria illa durabit. c. Hæc stella occidet. d. Bellum illud nocebit. e. Nos magistri erudiemus, (4.) f. Vos ministri venietis, (4.) g. Hi fabri cudent, (3.) h. Ager meus virebit. i. Sententia mea valebit. k. Auxilium meum juvabit. l. Tu tiro disces. m. Leo sæviet, (4.) n. Pavo ille superbiet, (4.) o. Ego præceptor vetabo. p. Vos oratores dicetis. q. Hic custos custodiet, (4.) r. Forma tua placebit. s. Animus tuus gaudebit. t. Brachium tuum vincet.

a. These books will delight. b. Thy glory will last.

c. Will not¹ these stars set? d. That war had hurt. e. Your teacher will teach. f. My servant was coming. g. Let that smith forge. h. Will not¹ my fields grow-green? i. My opinions will prevail. k. My auxiliaries will help. l. These beginners will learn. m. The lion was raging. n. These peacocks will be-proud. o. Has not¹ the teacher forbidden? p. That orator had spoken. q. These guards will guard. r. You will please by your beauty. s. My mind was rejoicing. t. He shall be conquered by my arm.

¹ Nonnō: to be the first word

EXERCISE 6.

a. Rex imperabit. b. Regina regnabit. c. Hæ leges non semper valebunt. d. Duces nostri fortiter pugnabunt. e. Non semper vivemus. f. Mox rosæ florebut. g. Vos sorores vigilabit. h. Nos fratres dormiemus. i. Uxor tua narrabit. k. Tu maritus auscultabis. l. Miles sitiēt et esuriēt, (4.) m. Pedites nostri fugient, (3.) n. Equites vestri manebunt. o. Hic mons frigebit. p. Vallis illa tepebit. q. Dentes mei dolebunt. r. Tu homo sæpe peccabis. s. Hi ordinēs cadent.

a. The kings will command. b. The queen was reigning. c. This law will not always be-in-force. d. Our general fought bravely. e. Will¹ you live forever? [No.] f. Your roses are-in-flower. g. My sister was-awake. h. My brother was-sleeping. i. Our wives had related. k. My husband was listening. l. The soldiers are-thirsty and hungry. m. The foot-soldier was-flying. n. Let the horse-soldier remain. o. These mountains are-cold. p. The valleys will be-warm. q. My teeth ache.² r. The man had often sinned. s. This row³ was falling.

Num: S. 46.

² Dolēre, to be in pain.

³ What is the nom. from which ordin-es comes?

EXERCISE 7.

Mater laudabat filiam. Agricōla arat agrum. Soror fratrem diligit. Accipies hodie nuntium. Piscis nata

per aquam. Puella nebat fila. Columba metuit accipitrem. Nauta navigabat per undas. Aves per aërem volabant. Hic homo postulabit pecuniam. Nos præceptores erudiemus pueros. Vos discipuli discetis pensa vestra. Faber cudit metallum. Vulpes timet leones. Ægyptii canem et felem colebant ut deos. Equites volabant in hostes. Silvæ decōrant montes. Equi currunt per silvas et agros. Cervus descendit in vallem.

[See S. 16. Learn Adverbs of past time, p. 179.]

It is certain that¹ my father will write the letter. We have received letters to-day. It is manifest that he is a moneyed man, (*say*, that the man is moneyed.) It is plain that¹ the sailors are steering the vessel to our bank. The father and mother educate their children. Who will relate a tale to us? The Greeks and Romans worshipped² many gods. The husbandmen are going to plough³ the field. The mountains are adorned with woods. The daughter was lately praised by her mother. The letter was written by me three-days-ago. Then I was writing: now I am relating a tale to my children. It is certain that¹ the letter was written yesterday. The descent into the valley is easy. Is not⁴ the descent into the wood easy? The sailor directed (us) to steer⁵ the ship hither. The fox is going to descend into the valley.

¹ S. 16.

⁴ Nonnō.

² *Imperfect*, because a *habit* is expressed.

⁵ That (*ut*) we should steer, (*imperf. subj.*)

³ C. 37.

EXERCISE 8. (See S. 44.)

Horti nostri multos flores habent. Tu bonam historiam narrabis. Heri per urbem ambulabamus. Boni mores puerum decōrant. Pater tuus te vituperabit, meque laudabit. Sæpe stulti homines se fallunt. Quis nos vocabit? Quid cogitas aut quid times? Quid vos offendet? Tunc illum audies? Egone hunc agrum emam, aut domum illam?¹ Hanc tu habebis pecuniam. Hos bonos pueros amamus, malos illos fugiemus. Hæc terras possidemus. illas expugnabimus.

The trees blossom in the spring. 'The trees are-coming-into-blossom. The father is going-to-blame his son. Who will tell us this tale? Let us fly-from bad habits. This hope deceived me. The buyer of this little-garden will be deceived. What houses and what fields does he possess? 'The ill-humored old-man is blaming his slave. May fortune favor² my undertakings. It is certain that³ my expectation has deceived me. What war are the kings going-to-begin? 'The Romans will have begun a great task. Will you not⁴ relate to us the taking of that city? What do you see? Whom are you going to send? I will irrigate my little-garden with fountains.

¹ Observe that this is *not* a double question; the meaning is not *which of the two* shall I buy? but, shall I buy *either*?

² Appendix I.

³ §. 16.

⁴ Nonnā

EXERCISE 9.

Galli Romain expugnaverunt, (-ēre,¹) Romani Corinthum. Migravimus per terras et urbes. Multam postulavisti (postulasti) pecuniam. Quos agros aravistis (arastis)? Hos an illos? Milites juraverunt sacramentum. Laborem nostrum finivimus. Præceptores pueros erudiverunt. Vos canes tecta nostra custodivistis. Bellum sæviit per Germaniam. Dormivistine, an vigilasti? Dormivi. Equus hinnivit, rudivit (3) asinus. Quid cupiisti? Equites montem petiverunt, pedites hostem lacessivēre.

¹ The meaning of (-ēre) is, that *expugnare* is another form of that person and tense.

Have you praised or¹ blamed this man? I have neither praised nor blamed (him.) What nations² conquered Italy? They were laying-waste the fields of the Gauls. The city being taken, they are laying-waste the fields. When³ did you finish your labor? Yesterday. It is certain that⁴ the husbandman has finished his labors. It is true⁵ that the fields have been laid waste by⁶ the Gauls. Have⁶ you obeyed? What have you sought for? The Tarentines called Pyrrhus into Italy. The general has acted-proudly against the enemy, (*pl.*) We have sung this song to-day on (*say* with) the lyre The wolf was tearing- the sheep

-to-pieces.⁷ We ought⁸ to encounter death itself for (*pro* abl.) our country.

¹ S. 52.² Populus.³ P. 172, 4.⁴ S. 16⁵ S. 5.⁶ S. 44.
translated by one verb.⁷ The hyphens so placed mean that *tear-to-pieces* is to be translated by one verb.⁸ S. 61.

EXERCISE 10.

Pluperfect. (3) *v* is often dropped from perf., and *v* or *ve* from pluperf.)

Tūne nomen meum nuncupaveras (-aras)? Poēta carmina sua recitaverat. Hi juvenes magnam spem excitaverant. Corpōra nostra curaveramus. Tempus illud expectaveratis. Hic nuntius adventum tuum nuntiaverat. Equitatus Romanus Gallos laceraverat. Hic adspectus sensus nostros turbaverat. Per dies noctesque dormiveratis. Milites per agros sævierant. Quid tu cupiveras? Ego aurum quæsieram. Nos res nostras repetiveramus.

Who has mentioned our names? I will ask who¹ has mentioned our names. Have you² taken-care-of the body? I will ask, whether³ the boy has strengthened (*curare*) his body with food. The body must be taken-care-of.⁴ Those times had disturbed our affairs. Who had cured those boys? I will ask, who¹ cured those boys? Your labors must be ended.⁴ I had ended my labors yesterday. Have not the horses neighed?⁵ Are not those asses braying? That- ass -of-yours⁶ is braying. The enemy (*plur.*) have not watched the post. I had heard those songs. The motions are impeded. We had impeded your motions. *Though a great hope had been raised,⁷ (*partic.* S. 168,) we are deceived. I had not-yet sent the slave. I will ask who¹ sent the slave.

¹ S. 49.² S. 44.³ S. 46.⁴ S. 163.⁵ S. 45.⁶ *lote.*⁷ Say: 'a great hope having been raised.'

EXERCISE 11.

[The *fut. perf.* is to be rendered by the English *present* or *perfect*, when the verb of the principal sentence is in the *future*. See S. 205, 206.]

Medicus morbum hodie, sanaverit (-arit). Ego nunquam factum tuum probavero (-aro). Faciam, quod imperaveris.

(-aris). Quando in urbem vestram migraverimus, lætæ dies agemus. Respondebimus ad id, quod interrogaveritis. Quando hunc librum finieris? Cras. Magnam gloriam acquisiveritis, si liberos vestros bene educaveritis. Is qui corpus suum bene vestierit, frigus non sentiet. Res nostras servabimus, si tecta nostra bene munierimus. Ii pueri, qui lectiones suas finierint, præmia accipient.

Will you not¹ reply to what² I ask (you)? If I ask³ you something, will you not⁴ answer? I will wait, till⁵ you come. Let him who has received⁶ a prize, learn well. If you learn⁷ well, you shall receive a prize. *When our body is well clothed,⁸ we shall not feel the cold. The town must be fortified.⁹ Let us spend happy days. We must ask the boys.¹⁰ I will come, when I have taken¹¹ care of my body. *When our houses are well protected,¹² (*partic.*) we must not fear.¹³ Has your father forbidden¹⁴ (it)? [No.] We must rub the body.¹⁵ Anger must be tamed.¹⁶ Do not¹⁷ drink much¹⁸ wine.

¹ S. 45. ² Say; to those things which (ad ea quæ) I shall-have-asked you.

³ Say; shall have asked.

⁴ S. 249.

⁵ Shall have received.

⁶ Shall have learned.

⁷ S. 168.

⁸ S. 163.

⁹ Say; shall have-taken-care-of.

¹⁰ S. 164.

¹¹ S. 46.

¹² S. 37.

¹³ S. 73.

EXERCISE 12.

[Fut. perf. is often translated by English present or perfect.]

Diligentia tua laborem patris valde adjūvit. Miseria matris valde moverat animum filia. Si Cornelii frater te viderit, statim curret ad te. Quando remedium morbi reperero! Ad primam horam diei naves usque ad introitum magni portus pervenerunt. Id nos comperimus et vos vidistis. Hostes obsederant portas urbis nostræ, quum tu advenisti. Milites gladios jam acuerunt. Si tu hanc pecuniam solveris, accipies aliam; nihil adhuc solvisti. Arcem urbis fortiter defendimus. Num aquam gelidam bibisti? Minime; sed vinum bibi. Tu autem, quid edisti? Si patriæ hostem fortiter vicerimus, bene fecerimus.

I have not-yet¹ seen my father and mother. Why are² the soldiers of our army come? Have³ you already sharp-

ened this knife? I will ask whether⁴ he has sharpened that knife. That-knife-of-yours⁵ must be sharpened. I have sharpened the knives myself.⁶ Cicero, that⁶ great orator, defended many accused-persons. Scipio conquered Hannibal at⁷ Zama, and put-an-end-to the second Punic war. You shall receive two-oboli-a-piece.⁸ Those who learn⁹ well shall receive an-obolus-a-piece.⁸ The boys, having received¹⁰ two-oboli-a-piece,⁸ will rejoice. We had scarcely reached the town, when the enemy laid-siege to it. After the Prætor had mounted¹¹ the tribunal, the judges acquitted the accused-person. Where did you find this book? I will ask him where¹² he found¹³ that book. I will ask, whether he has lighted¹⁴ the torch.

¹ Nondum.² What tense is *I am come*? C. 12.³ S. 44.⁴ S. 46.⁵ Iote.⁶ S. 189.⁷ S. 159.⁸ C. 39.⁹ S. 205.¹⁰ S. 179.¹¹ S. 251.¹² S. 49.¹³ Syn. 1.¹⁴ Syn. 2.

EXERCISE 13.

[What case does *credo* govern? App. I.]

Quis tibi hunc librum, hanc pennam, hoc atramentum dedit? Imperator exercitui suo magna auxilia addiderat. Ciceronem, quum in forum descendit, magna populi multitudo circumdedit. Sacerdos apud aram stetit, et victimam cecidit. Bene fecerit is, qui amico auxilium præstiterit. Pastor fugavit lupum, qui ovem unam momorderat. Facere debes, quod spopondisti. Quid vobis istæ responderunt mulieres? Num cecidit aliquis? Sol post montes illos ipse mare occidit. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occidit. Cur incertæ spei credidisti? Frater sorori crediderat, soror fratri. Si bene didiceris linguam Latinam, multa alia disces facilius. Sæpe, rosam qui tetigit, sensit aculeos. Multi philosophi verum non attigerunt.

The body must¹ be well clothed, *that*² we may *not* feel the cold. Has any-one³ afforded you assistance? *When the sun sets⁴ (*partic.*), our labors must be ended.¹ *Having touched the rose,⁵ I felt its thorn. When will the sun set to-day? Has not⁶ the priest slain the victim? The priest, having slain⁵ the victim, sprinkled the altar with its blood. My brother⁷ is not believed. We must not believe⁸ Man-

lius's brothers We have given roses and fruit to the boy and the girl. Who has performed that service for us? After⁹ he had performed that service for us, he went-away. I will ask who¹⁰ performed me that service. The wolf, which the shepherds drove-away, had bitten two or three sheep. Who has cut-down this tree? I asked who¹⁰ cut-down that tree. Those trees must be cut down.¹ You will be safe nowhere. You will never be safe. I will give you twelve verses to be learned-by-heart.¹¹ How many verses am I to learn-by-heart?¹² It is uncertain, how-many¹⁰ there were (*of them*.) No wise man¹³ trusts uncertain fortune. The arrow did not hit its mark. How many sheep have been killed by the wolf? I will ask how-many¹⁰ sheep the wolf has bitten. I will wait till¹⁴ you answer me. After⁹ the wolf had bitten three sheep, he was driven-away by the shepherds. How many arrows have you?

¹ S. 163.² S. 18.³ Num quis; or an quisquam.⁴ S. 168.⁵ S. 176.⁶ S. 45.⁷ S. 134, 135.⁸ S. 166.⁹ S. 251.¹⁰ S. 49.¹¹ S. 172.¹² Are to-be-learned-by-heart by me.¹³ Nemo sapiens.

Verbs of trusting govern the dat.

¹⁴ S. 249.

EXERCISE 14.

[*Mihi, tibi, sibi*, may sometimes be rendered '*my*,' '*your*,' '*his*,' or '*his own*.']

Hanc epistolam meâ manu scripsi. Num glupsisti poma, quæ in horto carpsimus? Hic puer pecuniam sumpsit a patre, eamque inter pauperes distribuit. Pauci milites in acie remanserant. Quid dixisti? Quis vobis futurum prædixit? Cæsar milites in aciem eduxerat. Hic homo me torvo vultu adspexit. Imperator victus ipse sibi pectus gladio transfixit. Athenienses Socratis damnati pedem ferro vinxerunt. Romani provincias suas duro imperio rexerunt. Nauta quidam Britannicus nuper in oceano insulam detexit. Nuntius ille valde auxerat formidinem. Veteres poëtæ tempora sibi lauru cinxerunt. Poëtæ quidam pulchras finxerunt imagines. Apelles pinxit Alexandrum. Telum hostis aurem strinxit militis, qui ipse gladium non strinxerat.

I had written the letter with my own hand, (S. 177). It is certain that the letter was written with his own hand.

It remains that¹ we should write letters with our own² hands. Have you plucked a leaf from (*ex*) this tree? How-much money⁴ have you spent on (*in*) your work? If⁵ you do this, you will spend considerably⁶ more⁴ money. No-one would have foretold us⁷ this calamity. We had remained in the city. Who has led you this road (*abl.*) into the city? We have fastened the picture to the wall with a nail. Cæsar had surrounded the town with a wall and foss. The horse-soldiers have drawn their swords. The horse-soldiers, having drawn⁸ their swords, flew on (*in*) the enemy. The safety of the Roman people is at stake.⁹ I will ask who¹⁰ painted the picture. I will ask who found-out that-fraud-of-yours.

¹ S. 16.² S. 17.³ S. 177.⁴ S. 73.⁵ S. 214.⁶ S. 202.⁷ C. 13.⁸ S. 176.⁹ To be at stake, *agi. infin. pass.*¹⁰ S. 49

EXERCISE 15.

[Of what two verbs is *fulsi* the perfect? (p. 170, V. p. 174.)]

Rex portas urbis clausit hostibus invadentibus. (*Dat.*) Totum cælum in quatuor regiones divisimus: Orientem, Occidentem, Meridiem, Septentriones. Quando risistis in luctu amicorum? Multi populi senserunt virtutem Romanorum. Senatus Carthaginiensium legatos misit ad Romanos de captivis. Filia blandimentis et precibus patris animum fexit. Consiliis vestris fulsistis rempublicam. Nova lux civitati affulserit, ubi princeps ex terris hostium in urbem redierit. Sacerdos victimarum sanguine aram adpersit. Sagitta hæsit in clipeo. Illis diebus, ubi omnium rerum inopia oppidanos oppresserat, lutulentam aquam ex stagnis hauserunt, idque imperator jusserat. Aqua recessit ex agris. Procellæ concusserunt quercuum cacumina. Hannibal quum bellum in Italiâ gessit, multa tecta combussit. Consul copiarum ex pugná reliquias in unum locum contraxit, et classe trans mare in Italiam vexit. Quo loco vixisti?

Christian faith has opened heaven to many mortals. The commander-in-chief has divided his army into three parts. He was slain by the Gauls. There is no doubt, that¹ he is going to join battle² with the Romans. We

must² join battle with the Germans. The weight of its fruit (*n'*.) has bent-down the boughs of the tree. We have derived new hope from our changed circumstances. The besieged have propped-up their tottering walls with added works. Cicero crushed the Catilinarian conspiracy, which had shaken the whole city. * When a change of circumstances has taken-place,⁴ (*partic.*),⁵ our plans should be changed.³ * Of how great importance is it to me⁶ that⁷ the plans of the enemy *should*⁸ be changed. * Of how great importance is it to the citizens,⁹ to strengthen their tottering walls with works! The war waged by Hannibal drew after it a change of affairs in Italy. The remains of the forces must² be carried⁹ in-ships (*abl.*) to Italy. I have often laughed-at the vanity of men. What¹⁰ a multitude of men has flowed-together into the city!

¹ S. 19.² *To join battle with*, *prælium committere* (*mis*, *miss*) *cum*.³ S. 163.⁴ *Has been made*.⁵ S. 168.⁶ *Quanti meâ interest*. S. 91.⁷ S. 16.⁸ C. 3.⁹ Syn. 3.¹⁰ C. 21

EXERCISE 16.

[Perf. in *ui*.—See Syntax, Rules 13, 14.]

Num fores crepuerunt? Multi pauperes nunquam in molli cubili cubuerunt. Eques equum ferocem calcâri domuit et freno. Pedem dolentem manu fricui. Hominum illustrium lacunaria ebôre micuerunt et auro. In sacris Cybêlæ tympâna sonuerunt et cornua. Jupiter tonuit. Hoc vetui, illud jussi. Romani pueros exercuerunt acri militiâ. Sapientes poëtæ admiscuerunt utile dulci. Sæpe te monui, sed tu non audivisti. Cur non tacueras? Non diu Græci incultos mores majorum suorum retinuerunt. Pyrrhus Romanos terruit elephantis in aciem productis. Ver maria aperuit navigantibus. Cæsar togâ caput operuit, et ictibus mucronum se præbuit.

The flame has crackled on the hearth. We have lain-down on (*in*) the soft grass. There was no-one, *but*¹ lay-down on the soft grass. We have rubbed our tables with oil. On that night,² no star shone (*in*) the whole heaven. Ought³ not⁴ our desires to be restrained? Hills and valleys resounded with the cries of the combatants. Has it

thundered? What have you forbidden? We have rubbed our bodies with oil. We have exercised our bodies in (*abl.*) childish games. Fate has often mixed joy with sorrow. There is need of⁵ a gentle reproof. I will present you with a book. Pity⁶ the poor. * You will repent of your folly.⁷ * It is of very great importance to you,⁸ that⁹ the city *should*¹⁰ be fortified. An eagle flying on-high had terrified the timid doves. Will¹¹ a dove terrify an eagle? [No.] Some deserters have discovered the plans of the enemy, (*pl.*) It is certain that⁹ the plans of the enemy have been discovered by a certain deserter. I have¹² six doves. How-many doves have¹³ you? It cannot be doubted, that¹³ he pities the poor. There was need⁵ of a much¹⁴ gentler reproof.

¹ S. 32.² S. 143.³ S. 164.⁴ S. 45.⁵ S. 79⁶ S. 88.⁷ S. 94.⁸ S. 91.⁹ S. 16.¹⁰ C. 3.¹¹ S. 46.¹² S. 114.¹³ S. 19.¹⁴ S. 202.

EXERCISE 17.

Græci et Romani veteres multos coluerunt deos. Socrates in carcere de immortalitate animi disseruit. In illo prælio equites nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. Romani gentibus fere omnibus tributa imposuerunt. Ex pugna Cannensi Pœni annulis aureis occisorum equitum Romanorum modios aliquot compleverunt. Eodem anno L. Mummius Corinthum, P. Scipio Carthaginem delevit (deleverunt.) Pater flevit de morte filii. Filia sub tiliâ nevit subtilia fila. Quid decrevistis? Decrevimus habitare in provinciâ. Has arbôres meâ manu sevi. Quum mihi solatium misisti, flere jam desieram. Cur sprevisi munera a patre tibi promissa? Leo uno impetu prostravit tigridem. Ilanc viam jumenta triverunt et hominès.

Has not¹ my prudence snatched our country from (*e*) the hands of a tyrant? The boy is going-to-cultivate (*C. 37*) his² little-garden. He has spoken much (*multum*) about the nature of things. Who has distinguished-himself above³ the rest in this contest? This disease has carried-off many men. I will inquire of the physician how-many⁴ are dead.

The state has erected a monument to the soldiers, who were slain in the battle. The wild cry of the soldiers filled the minds of the citizens with fear. May⁴ I cultivate my field? Age has destroyed many monuments of ancient art. What hinders (us) ⁵from⁵ cultivating our garden? It remains, that⁷ we should fly into the city. The girl has spun coarse threads. If the senate decrees,⁸ the consuls will leave their provinces. I feel that⁹ roses have¹⁰ their¹¹ thorns. See that¹² you do not feel the thorns of the roses. Provided¹³ that you do not feel the thorns, pluck your roses. Would-that¹⁴ I had a little garden. My little-garden is considerably¹⁵ bigger than my sister's. The¹⁶ more beautiful a rose, the more thorns it has. Why did you not cease to laugh, when I begged you?

¹ S. 45.² C. 1.³ Præ.⁴ S. 49.⁵ S. 57.⁶ S. 43.⁷ S. 17.⁸ Shall have decreed.⁹ S. 16.¹⁰ S. 114.¹¹ C. 1.¹² Vide nō, (subj.)¹³ S. 241.*¹⁴ S. 242.¹⁵ S. 202.¹⁶ S. 203.

EXERCISE 18.

Luna crescit et decrescit. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis? Pueri pascebant oves in saltibus, quum lupus ex silvâ prorumpens terruit gregem, et matris ab ubère agnum rapuit. Ut quisque in juventute adsueverit, ita aget, quum ad senectutem pervenerit. Adulta vitia non facile evanescunt. Hanc legem quia non probabam, abolevi. Nosti (novisti) hunc hominem? Ignoscam fortasse, quum causam delicti cognovero. Sæpe concupiscimus id, quod nocebit. Quum tempus anni incaluit, terra flores et herbas edit. Magnum bellum exarsit inter Cæsarem et Pompejum, quorum uterque consulatum appetebat.

When the storms of war have cooled-down, the arts of peace revive. The shepherd feeds his flocks upon the hills: the husbandman tills his fields, and fears not invading foes: the inhabitants-of-towns go about¹ their usual employments, and live secure² with opened gates. How-greatly shall we rejoice, when the concord of nations again restores³ peace! But a long peace often corrupts the morals of a state. As-long-as⁴ the Romans waged wars

with the neighboring cities and nations, they retained the manners of their forefathers : but after⁵ they had subdued the world, they gave themselves up to luxury and wickedness.—*When arms are-at-rest,⁶ the arts of peace begin to flourish. *It is of great importance to the state,⁷ that⁸ the anger of its citizens *should*⁹ cool.—*It is of great importance to our state,⁷ that⁸ the manners of our forefathers should be preserved.⁹ Who is there, who can deny,¹⁰ that the manners of our forefathers should be preserved?¹¹ *When the harmony of its citizens is restored,⁶ the state will begin-to-flourish. Did the queen write the letter with her own' (S. 177) hand? The boy has lost his book. I have lost his book.

¹ *To go-about a business*, operam dare negotio.
agere, (vitam understood.)

³ *Shall have restored.*

² *To live secure*, securus

⁴ (Quonidui) quam diu.

⁵ R. 251.

⁶ S. 168.

⁷ S. 91.

⁸ S. 16.

⁹ C. 3.

¹⁰ S. 234.

¹¹ S. 164.

EXERCISE 19.

Multi scriptorum Romanorum, quorum scripta exstant, magnam laudem meruerunt et rerum ac sententiarum copiâ et verborum elegantia. Inter illos excellit M. (Marcus) Tullius Cicero, cujus epistolâs et orationes ceterosque libros in scholis legimus. Huic omnes concedunt palmam eloquentiæ. Et vere orationes ejus delectant miro ingenii acumine, quo reorum innocentiam defendit, aut utilitatem legis alicujus demonstrat. In epistolis ad familiares scribit de rebus domesticis et publicis, modo ridens et jocabundus, modo in gravitatem ac severitatem compositus. Tres libros composuit de oratore, in quibus de arte oratoriâ disserit. Perfecti oratoris imaginem in alio libro proposuit. In eis (iis) libris, quos de officiis scripsit, Marcum filium ad vitam honestam instituit.—T. (Titus) Livius non unius ævi aut belli aut hominis historiam descripsit, sed universam rerum Romanarum historiam ab origine gentis ad sua usque tempora deduxit. At illius non omnia scripta exstant.—C. (Caius) Julius Cæsar octo libris bellum Gallicum, tribus civile narravit; et Gallico quidem totius Galliæ civitates Romanorum imperio subjecit, civili Pom-

peium devicit: utriusque belli rebus gestis nomen ejus inclaruit.

Distinguished poets lived in¹ the age of-Augustus. We have the writings of Virgilius,² Horatius, Ovidius, and others. Asinius Pollio had invited Virgilius to the city, where he became-acquainted with³ Mæcenas⁴ and Augustus. Virgilius recommended Horatius to Mæcenas. So the one⁵ flourished by the friendship of the other: one obliged the other. A long life did not fall-to-the-lot of either:⁶ but posterity has bestowed- equal honors -upon them both.⁷ Who would snatch⁸ the palm from either this or that, or bestow- greater praise -upon any⁹ Roman poet? Ovidius finished his life in exile on the Black Sea, because he had offended Augustus by his verses. He is distinguished for² the fertility of his genius and the beauty of his verses; but many of (*ex*) his writings displease¹⁰ a modest and pure mind.—Who is there who can deny,¹¹ *that* great poets lived in the age of Augustus?—The poets who flourished in the age of Augustus, were much¹² more distinguished than (those) who lived afterwards.

¹ In what case does the *time-when* stand? ² Proper names are given in their Latin forms. ³ C. 36. Is the prepos. used in English to be used after the Latin word, &c.? ⁴ Gen. 8. 11. ⁵ *The one—the other*, must each be translated by the proper case of *alter*. ⁶ Do not *sith*, by *neuter*, (neither.) ⁷ *Uterque, each* to be used, of course, in the *sing.* ⁸ S. 213. ⁹ p. 146. ¹⁰ Appendix I. ¹¹ S. 234. ¹² S. 202.

EXERCISE 20.

[Learn the declension of *aloë*, *Anchises*, *Enëas*, *poëma*. Appendix II—What is the Voc. of proper names in *ius*?—What is the Voc. mas. of *meus*?]

O benigne Deus, quam multa tibi debemus beneficia! Quod vivimus, quod valemus, quod ex agris fruges nobis proveniunt, quod lumine suo sol omnia collustrat et fovet, quod pluviam nubes in arva demittunt, quis hæc omnia regit et temperat, nisi Deus? Cui rerum natura paret, nisi Deo? Ergo, mi fili, Deum semper coles, eique pio animo habebis gratiam.

Quid fecisti, mi Carole?—Epitōmen feci orationis ejus, quam heri legimus.—Num jam legisti Ovidii poëmata?—

Non legi —Æneas, Venëris et Anchisæ filius, patrem ex incendio Trojæ portavit humeris. Succus aloës amarus confirmat stomachum. Ulysses a Philoctète (-â) sagittas postulabat, quas ab Hercule ille acceperat. Marce Tulli, quantas calamitates reipublicæ vidisti!

Why are you crying, my¹ little brother? Who has ²done you any wrong?—Who freed ancient Germany from the dominion of the Romans? Arminius: who conquered and destroyed Quintilius Varus in the Teutoburgian³ wood. This man, one of Augustus's lieutenant-generals,⁴ had treated the Germans proudly and unjustly. O Quintilius⁵ Varus, how you deceived yourself! Those whom you despised,⁶ destroyed your army and yourself.—If you answer⁷ well to these questions, you shall receive praise. —Xerxes, king of the Persians, invaded Greece with an immense army: but the Greeks defeated this army by sea and land, at⁸ the island of⁹ Salamis, and at Platææ in Bœotia. Who found¹⁰ this jewel? I have found a much¹¹ more beautiful jewel. Who can deny¹² that¹³ the lieutenant-general has treated us unjustly?

¹ What is the voc. mas. of *meus*? (p. 147.) ² Teutoburgensis. ³ A lieutenant-general of Augustus. ⁴ What is the voc. of a proper name in *ius*? ⁵ See Syn. 5.
⁶ Shall have answered. ⁷ S. 159. ⁸ S. 66.* ⁹ Syn. 1. ¹⁰ S. 202.
¹¹ S. 213. ¹² S. 19.

EXERCISE 21.

[Look at *ut, nē, quominus, quia*, in Appendix III.]

Cupio, ut factum meum probes. Docemus pueros, ut sapere discant, et bonis moribus animum imbuant. Edimus, ut vivamus, hoc est, ut vitam conservemus: at vos vivitis, ut edatis et bibatis. Cavebimus, ne superstitionem vestram augeamus, quæ prohibet, quominus ad veram rerum cognitionem perveniatis. —Non dubitatis, quin parentibus tuis multum debeas, quo intelligas, quo jure illi a te obdientiam et pietatem postulent. Nescimus, quæ mala nobis futuro tempore immineant. Dicis nobis, utrum præstet inimico ignoscere, an amicum etiam ultro lædere. Quoniam nemo sciat, quid quisque cogitet, caveamus, ne

temēre cuiquam credamus. Amemus patriam, pareamus magistratibus, consulamus bonis, nutriamus pauperes! Quid faciam? Ne doleam, quum tanta me premat calamitas! Hoc dii bene vertant! Utinam nemo te impediat, quominus ad me venias! Quis credat illud, quod prorsus incredibile est? Metuo, ne vos hoc faciatis, aut illud non faciatis.

We wish that¹ you should always obey² your parents, and love your brothers and sisters. It often happens that³ men commit atrocious crimes for-the-sake⁴ of a small gain. The tiger is so cruel, that,⁵ though⁶ impelled by no hunger, it tears-to-pieces men and beasts. You will take care, *that*⁷ you may *not* lead a miserable life through your own fault. Do you fear, that⁸ we *shall* betray your secrets? I do not fear, that⁹ you will not perform what you have promised. We learn the old languages, that⁹ we may practise our judgment, and cultivate our minds. Who doubts that¹⁰ *we¹ ought to love even our enemies?¹¹ I will not prevent you from¹² calling-upon me every day. You shall tell me, how much¹³ I owe you. I don't-know whether¹⁴ he is awake or sleeping. We will ask ourselves first, what is-pleasing to the gods; then, what to-men. What shall we say, that we may prove our innocence? Take your arms, and fight for your country. May every one keep a pure conscience. It remains that⁹ each man should keep his conscience pure. I have¹⁵ a pure conscience. Balbus is no¹⁶ wiser than (*quam*) Caius. My name is Marcus.¹⁷

¹ See S. 16, *note*.² App. I.³ S. 17.⁴ Causā.⁵ S. 17.⁶ Etiam, *even*.⁷ *That—not*, nē, subj.⁸ S. 22.⁹ S. 17.¹⁰ S. 19.¹¹ S. 163.¹² S. 43.¹³ S. 49.¹⁴ S. 51.¹⁵ S. 114.¹⁶ Nihilō. S. 202.¹⁷ S. 113.

EXERCISE 22.

Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superaverit. Nemo dubitat, quin Romani omnes populos fortitudine præstiterint. Scisne, quando Scipio Africanus Carthaginem delverit (delērit)? Videbimus, quid de consilio nostro censueritis. Quum iterum te con-

venero, dices mihi, quid legeris aut scripseris. Incertum est, quo tempore Dido Carthaginem condiderit. Quum neminem offenderimus, non timemus, ne quis nobis succenseat. Quum officia vestra feceritis, nemo vos vituperabit. Metuo, ne verum non dixeris, quum ceteri omnes contradicant. Narrabo vobis, quid audiverim, (audierim,) quidve viderim, ut omnes intelligatis, quanta vobis calamitas acciderit. Non omnes pueri sunt tam stulti, ut nihil curent, quid in moribus et literis profecerint, aut quomodo parentibus suis et praeceptoribus placuerint.

These pupils are so industrious, that¹ they have never neglected to learn- their lines -by-heart. Who can doubt² that³ the Greeks excelled the Romans in their intellectual-cultivation? We don't know, at what time Homer lived.⁴ It is doubtful, whether⁵ Clodius waylaid Milo, or the one⁶ met the other on the road by chance: but it is not doubtful, that⁷ a slave of Milo's killed Clodius. When you have read⁷ our letter, you will know. I fear that⁸ your father will not approve-of our plan. You will tell us (= tell us) your meaning, that¹ we may know, why⁶ you have changed your plan. What am I to believe?⁹ What am I not to believe? All (*pl.*) is so wonderful, that¹ I have not-yet ceased to doubt. *It was of very great importance to Caius,⁹ that no-one should betray his plans.

¹ S. 17.² S. 213.³ S. 19.⁴ S. 49.⁵ S. 51. Clodiusus.⁶ Alter: followed by *alter* for *the other*.⁷ *Shall have read.*⁸ S. 22.⁹ S. 91 that no-one: as *quis* with subj.

EXERCISE 23.

L. (Lucius) Sulla post victoriam, quam a Marianis partibus reportaverat, ita sæviebat, ut ingentem numerum civium trucidaret, et bona eorum venderet. Timebat enim ne, si adversarii sui viverent, perpetuum sibi periculum immineret. Vetuerat Pompeius, ne quis absens consulatium peteret. Eâ lege prohibebat, quominus Cæsar, quum in Galliâ bellum gereret et provinciam administraret, eam dignitatem obtineret. At Cæsar, non dubitans, quin magna

pars populi sibi faveret, et fretus legionibus suis, armis petere constituit, quod inimicorum invidia ei negabat.— Ideo te monui, ut intelligeres, quantopere salutis tuæ consulerem. Nisi tantopere vos amaremus, profecto non tantâ curâ ingenia vestra excoleremus. Si viveret Cicero, multum de moribus nostris rideret. Hunc librum vobis non darem, nisi scirem, quantum ex eo fructum pueri perciperent. Utinam omnes hunc librum legeretis, et præcepta ejus animis imprimeretis! (S. 242.)

While the Greeks were besieging Troy, a plague raged in the army with-such-violence,¹ that² it carried-off daily a great number of men and beasts. Wherefore³ they consulted the oracle, by what offerings-of-atonement they should appease the wrath of the god. The priest answered, that (*ut*) Agamemnon, the leader of the Greeks, should restore *to Chryses, a priest of Apollo, his daughter who-had-been-violently-carried-off:⁴ When Agamemnon refused (*imperf. subj.*) to do *this*,⁵ Achilles, the son of Peleus and Thetis, pressed him *to comply-with⁶ the will of the god and deliver the Greeks from destruction. By this,⁷ he so excited the anger of Agamemnon, that 'he took- Briseis -away from him by force. *The consequence was,⁸ that Achilles for-a-long-time did not go-to-battle with the other Greeks, but kept his troops idle in their camp.—Would⁹ that you always spoke the truth! Shall we not receive ten- oboli -a-piece? (C. 39.) *What is your name?¹⁰ This (*eu*) only¹¹ is true virtue.

¹ Adeo.² S. 17.³ Quamobrem, (or quum ob rem)⁴ Say, should restore his daughter violently-snatched-away from Chryses, (dat.) &c.⁵ Translate 'this' by quod, and place it before the quum. Quod quum instead of quum hoc.⁶ That he should comply⁷ Ea re.⁸ This brought-it-to-pass: id effecit, ut, &c.⁹ S. 242. To speak the

truth, verum dicere

¹⁰ S. 113.¹¹ Say: at length, demum

EXERCISE 24.

Philippus, Macedōnum rex, quum diu consilia sua occultavisset, Græcos adeo decepit, ut, nihil ab eo timentes, summam ei potestatem concederent. Quod¹ quum fecissent, amissam libertatem armis recuperare sero decreverunt

Vicit eos Philippus in pugnâ ad Chæronëam anno trecen-tesimo tricesimo octavo ante Christum natum.—Metue-bamus, ne in periculum incidissetis, quam nihil audissemus, (audissemus,) nec ubi, nec quando classem appulissetis. Si tertium diem expectavisses, magnum periculum vitasses (vitavisses.) Non dubitabam, quin gratum tibi fecissem, quod¹ hunc tibi librum donassem. Nisi tu me rogasses, ut totam tibi darem pecuniam, partem ejus dedissem alii. Cæsar quum ex Galliâ veniens Rubicōnem trajecisset, Pom-peius cum senatu aufūgit Brundisium. Utinam me heri convenisses, profecto hodie aliter egisses!

¹ A relative at the head of a principal sentence may be rendered by 'this,' 'that'

² (That I had given =) in giving.

Miltiades would not have conquered the Persians in the battle of-Marathon,¹ if² he had *not* chosen a very-confined ground (*locus*) in-order-that³ the enemy might not attack him at-once in front⁴ and on his flanks. When⁵ he had gained the victory, his grateful country placed a likeness of him in the portico; which they called Pæcile.—If⁶ you had tamed your lusts, you would have avoided the hatred of many persons. You feared that⁷ we should offend our friends: but we knew what (*qualis*) feelings they had⁸ to-wards us. I did not know *what to do;⁹ and I should have done- very -wrong, if² you had *not* warned me at the-right-time.¹⁰ Had¹¹ you but defended me at-the-right-time,¹⁰ what (*quantus*) dangers should I have escaped! When⁶ Cæsar in¹² the forty-ninth year *before the birth of Christ¹³ had driven Pompey out of Italy, he returned to¹⁴ Rome and named himself¹⁵ Dictator.

¹ Translate by adj. *Marathonius*.

² If not, nisi, (unless) with subj.

³ N8.

(In order that—not)

⁴ In front, a fronte: on his flanks, a latere, (latus side)

⁵ S. 241.

⁶ S. 216.

⁷ S. 22.

⁸ S. 49.

⁹ What I should do.

¹⁰ In tempore.

¹¹ That is, if you had but, &c., si modo with subj

¹² How is time-when to be expressed? S. 143.

¹³ Before Christ born

¹⁴ How is the place to-which expressed? S. 155.

¹⁵ S. 178

EXERCISE 25.

[How are the compar. and superl. formed? p. 143.]

In rebus gravioribus cautiorem adhibeamus prudentiam, sed nec in levioribus temere unquam agamus. Quum

animum ages, tunc intelliges, quæ res vitam vere beatam effecerint, quæque, quamvis ad tempus animum voluptatibus afficerent, tamen mœrorem ac pœnitentiam reliquerint. Ut bonis artibus ingenium excolatis, non cupimus vehementius, quam ut animos vestros moribus bonis adornetis. Catilina quum videret, quantâ irâ et odio Ciceronis oratio animos senatorum implevisset, in summum furorem concitatus reliquit curiam. Nemo dubitat, quin Catilina eo tempore rempublicam perdidisset, nisi Cicero consul maximâ prudentiâ publicæ saluti consulisset. Optimus et emendatissimus est is, qui ceteris ita ignoscit, tanquam ipse quotidie peccet;² ita peccatis abstinet, tanquam nemini ignoscat. Minus illum timeas, qui vitia, quæ habet, ostendit, quam illum, qui extrinsêcus est bonus, et malus intus. Sæpe difficile est judicare, ex duobus utrum meliorem ducamus; multo difficilior, ex pluribus quis præstet ceteris.

¹ *Quantus* may often be rendered 'what.'

² Sinned.

Don't¹ you see how² the trees are blossoming, how the meadows are growing-green; how ^{the whole of nature}³ has put-on, as-it-were,⁴ a new dress? These things present a more beautiful appearance than the most beautiful buildings of the city, or the most valuable treasures of kings and princes. Would-that⁵ all men recognised the beauty and order of the world,' with what (*qualis*) wisdom and goodness God has created and governs all things. Why⁶ should not I 'forgive' you,' when you have so-often forgiven me? We shall very easily move the softest tempers to do⁸ what we desire:⁹ but they do not often (*say*, easily) remain in the same mind. If¹⁰ you had written me a longer letter, you would have given me a still (*etiam*) greater pleasure: though-indeed¹¹ the longest letters are not always the best; nor the shortest the worst. We did not-doubt-in-the-least¹² that¹³ you would have received our letter: but we feared that¹⁴ it might not satisfy⁷ you.

¹ S. 45.

² Ut, subj.

³ *Universa rerum natura.*

⁴ *Quasi, as-it-were*

= quam si.)

⁵ S. 242.

⁶ Why—not, *quidni*, with subj.

⁷ Appendix I.

⁸ Ut, with subj.

⁹ Subj.

¹⁰ S. 216.

¹¹ *Quamquam; inli*

¹² *Not in the least, ne minimum quidem.*

¹³ S. 19

¹⁴ S. 22

EXERCISE 26.

O magne Alexander, domuisti tot gentes; age, offrenatam iracundiam doma! Augustus quum nuntium accipisset de clade Varianâ, exclamavit: Quintili Vare, redde mihi legiones meas. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium, et vide, ne levitate animi in perniciem ruas! Vos divites, adjuvate miseros, vestite nudos, satiate famelicos: pro his Deus nobis retribuet gratiam. Credite mihi, perficiemus negotium, si vires omnes intenderimus. Respondete ad interrogationes nostras. Nimium ne crede colori! Ne contemnitis deos! Fac, quod tuum est facere! Dic, quid sentias! Educ, centurio, copias, et aciem instrue!

Rouse up the powers of your mind, when they *happen to be-asleep.¹ Honor your parents, and obey² their will. Come into my house, and tell me³ what⁴ you have learned. Take-care not⁵ to make a more-powerful person your enemy. *Be sure to get well⁶ as soon as possible.⁷ Pardon those who have offended you: and take care to make friends of enemies by kindness and good-conduct. Take-care not⁵ to betray confidence.. Guard the gates, lest (*nē*) your enemies should suddenly attack the city.

¹ When by-chance (*forte*) they sleep.
⁵ Nō.

⁶ Fac ut convalescas.

² Append. I.

³ C. 13.

⁴ S. 49.

⁷ Quam primum, *as soon as possible*.

EXERCISE 27.

[~~32~~ The second forms of the Imperative [*to, tote, nto*] are used in *laws, rules*, and other formal expressions of *duty or permission*.]

Cœlestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. Impius ne audeto placare donis iram deorum. Ubi nos laverimus, si placebit, lavato. Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, neve urito. Virgines Vestales in urbe custodiunto ignem foci publici sempiternum. Pueros ne laudatote nimium. nam omne nimium nocet. Pueri bonos libros legunto quotidie, sed malis abstinento. Fratres et sorores se invicem amanto, et parentibus obediunto. Memoriam exercetote, et addiscitote quotidie aliquid. Quum hostem profli-gaveritis, ne sævitote in jacentem.

Love thy neighbor as¹ thyself. Honor thy parents, and obey² their will. Let the young-man lend an ear to the counsel of the wise, and open his heart to their teaching. Betray not³ confidence: stand by thy promises. Let not the citizen betray his country; but when (*ubi*) dangers threaten, let him defend it with arms. Ye pupils, vie ⁴with one-another⁴ in virtue. Ye princes, ward-off dangers from the citizens, and protect the cultivation of the arts. Let the husbandman till the fields, that the fruits thereof may support the inhabitants of the land. Let not⁵ conquerors behave-proudly, when they have conquered⁶ a town or country. Let the soldiers take one portion of the booty, the general another.

¹ *Alike ac.*
circums.

² *App. I*
³ *Subj.*

⁴ *S. 37.*

⁴ *Inter vos, between*

EXERCISE 28.

aratur et occatur, ut fruges inde meliores prove-
niant. Primo tempore veris sparguntur semina frugum,
quæ æstate maturescunt, et auctumno metuntur, ut per
hiemem nutrimenta cultoribus præbeant. Finitur labor
agricolæ mense Novembri aut Decembri, quum rerum na-
tura quiescere videtur, et agri frigore rigent.—Erudiuntur
pueri literis et artibus, et exercentur laboribus, ut ingenio
validi et corpore robusti evadant. Multi adolescentes ita
decipiuntur voluptatum illecebris, ut labores omnes fugiant.
Tempora mutantur, et nos mutamur in illis. Maximâ
movemur misericordiâ, quum homines rebus maxime neces-
sariis carere vidimus. Ad res pravas sæpe libidine trahi-
mur, sæpius inconsiderantiâ; nonnunquam etiam circum-
venimur artibus malorum hominum, a quibus impellimur et
cogimur. Tu non ab aliis impellëris aut cogëris, sed tua
te impellit libido; ergo vituperaris et coercëris. Nec ab
ullo impëdiris, quominus recte agas. Vos laudamini, pueri,
qui bene didicistis; vos, autem, pigri, punimini. Quotidie
monemini, ut officia vestra expleatis; at semper ab aliis di-
ligentiâ et virtute vincimini. Curritur, (*S. 141.*) saltatur, lu-
litur, sed scholæ segnius frequentantur.

Certain kinds-of-corn are sown in the month¹ of September or October: then the seed is covered through the winter, till² it shoots-up* (as) the beams of the sun grow-warm, (*abl. abs.*) and ripens its fruit in the summer. *We often sing,³ and dance,³ and play,³ when in the next hour a great misfortune befalls⁴ us. Great treasures are often found⁵ in the sea, which swallows-up ships and men. The greatest difficulties are often overcome,⁶ if the best means are employed at-the-right-time. Even (*vel*) the most violent sorrow is lessened by time and forgetfulness. You are beloved by your friends, honored by your fellow-citizens, feared by the enemies of your country. We were instructed by our teachers and educated by our parents, that⁷ we might become better and wiser men. You are watched over, my son, that⁸ bad men may not corrupt your mind. We are often prevented by anger from⁹ acting right. See that¹⁰ you be not hurried away by passion. You appear to me not to be- well -aware what¹¹ (*quantis*) advantages these sciences, in which you are instructed, offer. Answer to what (*ad ea quæ*) you are asked, that we may know what¹¹ each of you has learned. Nothing is to be despised.

¹ How is time-when translated?—Mense Septembri, aut Octobri.

³ S. 141. ⁴ Syn. 4. ⁵ Syn. 1.

⁶ S. 214.

⁷ S. 21

⁸ S. 18

² S. 249

⁹ S. 43.

¹⁰ Vide nē, & c. subj.

¹¹ S. 49.

EXERCISE 29.

Saguntum jam summâ vi oppugnabatur ab Hannibale, quum Romani nihildum de bello incepto audiverant. Ego, qui paullo ante acerbissimis pedum doloribus cruciabar, nunc quasi revixisse mihi videor. Quantâ tu misericordiâ commovebaris (-e,) quum me tantis malis oppressum videres! Miserrimi esse videbamini, quum fortunas omnes amisissetis, quas nunc recepistis! Quum Neapôlim venissemus, ibique scholas frequentaremus, quotidie conveniebamur ab amicis nostris. Agri ad Tiberim jacentes antiquis temporibus colebantur a populis Latinis, quos Romani vicerunt. Apud Græcos et Romanos veteres festis diebus Diis Deabusque sacra instituebantur. A foro Romano

conspiciebatur Capitolium et signum Jovis, qui custos urbis appellabatur. Equi Romanorum terrebantur subito adspectu et odore elephantorum, quos Pyrrhus in acie constituerat; sed reperiebantur eo tempore remedia, quibus efficiebant Romani, ut elephanti plus suis, quam hostibus nocerent.

I was requested by your brother to relate¹ my journey to him, (*sibi* :) but I was prevented by much business from² obliging him. We were asked how-much³ property our parents had left to their sons and daughters; but *we were not permitted⁴ to answer. How-often were you reminded not to betray¹ the secrets of others? You were expected through the whole day; for nobody had heard, what⁵ a misfortune had befallen⁶ you. You were compelled by nobody to come to Constantinople; in which city⁷ great dangers threatened your life. 'The standards of the enemy were seen at-a-distance; and still more (troops) were said to be marching-up from the Arâris,⁸ when Cæsar drew-up- his army -in order-of-battle. Our friends were prevailed-upon (*imperf.*) to come *as soon as possible⁹ into the city. The ropes, by which the vessels were fastened to the bank, did not withstand the violence of the storm: and the ships were blown-off into the deep sea.

¹ S. 41. ² S. 43. ³ S. 49. ⁴ S. 58. ⁵ C. 21. ⁶ Syn. 4
⁷ Quâ in urbe. ⁸ Araris, a river in Gaul; the Saône. ⁹ Quam celerrime

EXERCISE 30. [See S. 205.]

Donabor clipeo et hastâ, si bene pro patriâ pugnavero. Sæpe admonebēris, ut iram discas compescere; sæpius etiam, ut aliorum iram ne excites. Quum ver redierit, prata et agri pulcherrimis floribus ornabuntur. Memoria clarorum virorum nullâ unquam oblivione delebitur aut obscurabitur. Quo¹ magis vitam honestam et integram egerimus, eo magis Deo probabimur. Non videbimur omni culpâ vacare, nisi etiam suspicionem flagitii summo studio vitaverimus. Tu, discipule, laudabēre, si sapienter vitam institueris; at vos vituperabimini, qui segnius officiis vestris satisfacistis. Precibus tuis non commovebor, ut

tibi ignoscā; nec temere adducar, ut pœnam tibi remittam. Ab imbecilliore vincēris, quem contempseris. Non audiēris, nisi sapiens consilium dederis; nam stulta consilia negligentur aut rejicientur. A bonis omnibus diligemur, si bonis moribus excellemus. O poetæ præclari, Virgili atque Horati, semper in scholis legemini, quamdiu adolescentes literis erudientur! Quando hic labor difficillimus finietur!

1 S. 203.

This town will be conquered in a short time. You will be despised by the lowest men, if you give-yourself-up¹ to the vilest lusts. The very lightest tasks will hardly be accomplished, if² you do not accustom³ yourself to persevere in labor. We shall be deserted both by friends and relations, if⁴ we put-every thing-after money. You will be laughed-at by all sensible people, if you indulge-in⁵ vanity. I' shall be greatly assisted by your means:⁶ but you' will receive advantage⁷ from your labor, and be rewarded with great-praise. You will be taught by your masters, what road⁸ you should⁹ take. If you will continue in this path, you will be loved by your friends, and valued by your fellow-citizens. Whither shall I be led? When shall I reach the end of my journey? *It will not so much as be asked,¹⁰ what⁷ we have thought, but what we have done. We shall be attacked by our opponents; but our plans will not be overthrown. The gates of the city shall be carefully watched: guards shall be stationed on the walls: the enemy (*plur.*) shall be kept-off or driven-back. *It is of great importance to me¹⁰ that you should (C. 3) understand this.

¹ Fut. perf.

² If not, nisi.

³ S. 214.

⁴ App. I.

⁵ Opera, (*sing.*)

⁶ Fructum capere (ex.)

⁷ S. 49.

⁸ S. 166. *Takt*, of a road, is insistere

which governs the dat.

⁹ Ne rogabitur quidem: 'it will not even be asked.'

¹⁰ S. 91.

EXERCISE 31.

Hæc narratio adeo est fabulosa, ut a nemine credatur. Non sum tam imprudens ut verbis speciosis decipiar. Vic-

tus es, miles : rogato victorem, ut vita tibi condonetur. Spe fallaci, muliëres, deceptæ estis ; cavete, ne iterum decipiamini. Quam multa a veteribus scriptoribus nobis tradita sunt, quæ adeo sunt fabulis contexta, ut a nemine sano pro veris habeantur ! Utinam quam primum hoc metu liberer, quo sic crucior, ut pæne delirare videar. Difficillimum est efficere, ut simul omnibus probemur. Ab amicis sic deserti sumus, ut ab inimicis prorsus opprimamur. Discedito ab impröbis, ne pravitate eorum inficiaris, (-e.) Magistratus sapienter administranto rempublicam, cives autem parento legibus ; ita utrisque optime consultum erit, ut nec publica salus turbetur, nec privati singulorum injustitiâ vexentur. Bonæ leges sanciantur a principibus, quibus summum imperium ideo creditum est, ut bene consulatur reipublicæ, (S. 135.)

All men are so formed by nature, that¹ the powers of body and mind are strengthened by exercise. Who is so stupid as not² to perceive, with how-much (*quantus*) wisdom and goodness the world is governed !³ We have asked, whether⁴ you were loved or shunned by your schoolfellows. You are *too sensible to be excited⁵ to anger by the invectives of the senseless. You are *too unfeeling to be moved⁶ by our tears. We are *too-sorely afflicted by these misfortunes to be soon restored⁷ to our former state. I am so loaded with business, that¹ I am almost oppressed (by it.) Be content with your lot, that you may be reckoned among the wise. You should⁸ be more industrious, that the powers of your mind may be better exercised. What am I to do ?⁹ shall I ask,¹⁰ or¹¹ let-myself-be-asked (*say*, or be asked ?)

¹ S. 17. ² Ut (*or qui*) non intelligat. ³ S. 49. ⁴ S. 51. ⁵ 'More-sensible than that (*quam ut*) you should be excited,' (*subj.*)—Remember that *should* is a doubtful sign, and that whether the *imperf.* or *pres. subj.* should be used, depends on the tense of the preceding verb. ⁶ 'More unfeeling than that you should be moved.' ⁷ 'More sorely afflicted than that we should, &c.' ⁸ S. 61. ⁹ S. 213. ¹⁰ Rogemne. ¹¹ Anne.

EXERCISE 32.

Minus curare solemus, quod adest, quam quod futurum est, quia, quod adest, oculis videmus, sed nescimus, quid

futurum sit. Metuo, ne in hoc negotio falsâ spe decepti sitis, quoniam nihil vobis succedere videtur. Ubi victoria amissa est, nihil refert, quot in prælio cæsi aut in fugâ capti sint. Ad virtutem nihil interest, quo loco aut quibus parentibus nati simus. Hodie nemo in domo est, a quo non sim interrogatus, quomodo e tanto periculo servatus sim, quique homines auxilium mihi præstiterint. Non ita generati a naturâ sumus, ut ad ludum et jocum facti esso videamur; sed ad severitatem potius, et ad quædam studia graviora et majora. Nam ita est a Deo institutum, ut vita hominis non hoc terrestri curriculo terminetur, sed ut animæ etiam post mortem corporis vita futura sit. Simul ac animæ a corpore sejuncta fuerit, illud quidem torpebit, sed hæc in æternum vigebit.

Let us see how-many¹ warriors are left in the city; and how the guards are placed on the walls, and before the gates. Since² the town is well fortified both by nature and art,³ and defended by a strong force, it will not easily be taken. Since⁴ we are surrounded on-all-sides by enemies, it will be difficult to find a means-of-escape. You will not be reproached *for having been invited to dinner by no prince;⁵ but you will be justly reproached, if⁶ you court the favor of the great, that you may be invited. As soon as⁷ this letter is read, (*fut. perf.*) you will perceive whom⁸ you have had for⁹ friends, and whom for⁹ enemies, and from what (*quantus*) danger (App. I.) you have been snatched. We shall at all times be contented with our lot, if we accustom ourselves (*fut. perf.*) to look- not -at those who are placed in a higher rank, but (at) those, to whom fortune has denied still more (than to us): for no one is so miserable, that⁹ many do not appear to be more miserable still.

¹ S. 49.² Quum with *subj.*³ Et opere, abl. of *opus*.⁴ 'That (*quod*) you have been invited.'⁵ S. 214.⁶ S. 251.⁷ S. 49⁸ Omit *for*, and put *friends* and *enemies* in apposition to *whom*.⁹ S. 17

EXERCISE 33.

Romæ aliquamdiu penes reges summum imperium fuit. Quorum postremus, Tarquinius Superbus, quum a Bruto

et Tarquinio Collatino expulsus esset, consules creati sunt bini in annos singulos. Id factum est anno ducentesimo decimo ab urbe conditâ. Sed paullo post, quum a patriciis crudelius sæviretur in plebem, eaque perpetuis bellis occupata ære alieno premeretur, denique seditio mota est. Plebs in montem sacrum secessit anno ducentesimo sexagesimo, nec prius in urbem rediit, quam a patriciis promissa essent, quæ postulabat. Postulat autem, ut æs alienum omne in tabulis deleteretur, utque tribuni crearentur, qui contra superbiam patriciorum causam plebis agerent, legesque iniquas vetarent. Quæ quum concessa essent, aliquamdiu quidem plebs suâ conditione contenta esse videbatur, sed mox altiora petebat, ut in omni genere jura patriciorum et plebeiorum æquarentur, nec jam ordinum discrimen esset.

Canuleius, a tribune of the people, brought-forward a bill,¹ that mixed marriages of the patricians and the plebeians should be permitted.² This law was carried in the 310th year *from the building of the city.³ At the same time (some) new tribunes brought forward a bill, that one⁴ of the consuls should be chosen from the plebeians. This proposal excited the anger of the patricians to-such-a-degree,⁵ that⁶ it was resolved to elect, instead of consuls, military tribunes⁷ with⁸ consular power. Thus it happened,⁹ that for many years together¹⁰ no consuls were elected at Rome. But when (*quum*) in the year 378, that proposal¹¹ was renewed (*plup. subj.*) by Caius Licinius Stolo and Lucius Sextius Lateranus, (two) tribunes of the people, the patricians were at-last compelled to share the consulate with plebeians. But that the pain of this lost privilege might be in-some-measure¹² lessened, the patricians sought-for new honors for themselves. Accordingly in the same year two new magistrates were created, from which the plebeians should be excluded, (*subj.*) the prætorship, and the dignity of Curule Ædile. Nevertheless,¹³ sixty years afterwards¹⁴ all the rights were made common to the patricians and the plebeians.

¹ Rogationem promulgare

² From (*ab*) the city built

³ Tribunes of the soldiers.

⁴ Through many years

⁵ Nihilò secius.

⁶ Concēdere, (cess, cess.)

⁷ Alter, (one of *two*.)

⁸ S. 78.

⁹ Rogatio.

¹⁰ S. 146, 147.

¹¹ Adeo.

¹² S. 17

¹³ Ita factum est, (ut,) S. 17

¹⁴ Aliquā ex parte.

EXERCISE 34.

[Read Rules of Syntax 215, 216.]

Nisi vehementissimis pedum doloribus cruciarer, jam pridem ad te cucurrissem, ut viderem quid ageres. Per-
venerat enim ad aures meas, quantâ calamitate afflictus
esses; et metuebam, ne dolore et mœrore plane conficereris.
Sed crede mihi nulla tanta est calamitas, ut non ab aliquâ
parte cum commodo quodam conjuncta sit. Sic tu quoque,
antequam illâ calamitate premereris, paullo superbior eras
et confidentior; nunc mitior factus multorum hominum tibi
conciliabis animos, quos antea offenderas. Hinc illud
discito: Si semper bonis cumularemur, nec unquam de
inconstantia fortunæ admoneremur, profecto eâ re impedi-
remur, quominus sæpius de verâ animi salute cogitaremus.
O stulti homines, quam multis malis liberaremini, si in
omnibus rebus sapienter vitam institueretis, et mature de
vicissitudinibus fortunæ cogitaretis!

If you had been¹ with me to-day, you would have been
pleased with a very agreeable sight. You would be praised²
by all good men, if you always did your duty. If³ we
were not so-often reminded of our faults, we should either
never become⁴ better, or arrive at virtue very late.⁴ I did
not doubt, that⁵ I should at-least⁶ be listened-to by my
friends; even-if⁷ my enemies should despise⁸ my advice.
If you were not⁹ so carefully watched over by your parents
and teachers, you would have thoughtlessly fallen into va-
rious dangers. I carefully guarded-myself¹⁰ against being
enticed⁹ to bad things by light-minded persons: if I had
not done this,¹⁰ *I should have been often punished for my
thoughtlessness.¹¹ The King had commanded, that (*ut*)
you should be kept in custody, till you were freed from your
debts. How miserable would you be, if you were despised
by all the good!

S. 216.

¹ If-not, nisi.² Evadere.⁴ Sero.⁵ S. 19

Saltem

⁷ Et si.⁸ Subj. See Syn. 5.⁹ I should be enticed; imperf subj.¹⁰ Quod nisi fecissem.¹¹ I should have given (= suffered) the punishment (*pl.*) of my thoughtlessness

EXERCISE 35.

Exorare, mi pater! ignosce temerita i filii! compesce iram!—O stulti homines, docemini tandem aliquando quam miseros vos libidinum dominatio faciat!—Romæ lex erat his verbis scripta: Nemo in urbe sepelitor, neve uritor. Solon hanc legem sanxerat. Qui in bello occubuerint, publice sepeliuntur. Hanc ego vobis legem dico: Si quid utile in rempublicam acturi estis, difficultatibus ne deterreminor. Audi, mi fili, ab improbis ne corrumpitor, neve flagitiis eorum contaminator!

What am I to do?¹ shall I beat,² or be beaten?—Be beaten.—Shall we entreat,³ or be entreated? Let him who returns³ to his obedience, be exempted from punishment: let him who continues in his crime be punished. Let the guilty be kept in custody; the innocent be dismissed. Let not yourselves be withheld from⁴ doing good, even-when⁵ men threaten you with evil.⁶ Let the torch be lighted.⁷ Let pleasures be despised.⁸ If⁹ he were of a brave mind,¹⁰ he would despise⁸ those dangers.

¹ S. 213.
⁵ Etiam si
⁸ S. 216.

² Feriam: anne feriar.
⁶ 'Threaten evil to you.'
¹⁰ S. 78.

³ Fut. perf.
⁷ Syn. 2.

⁴ S. 43.
⁹ Syn. 5.

EXERCISE 36.

Phocion magnus Græcorum imperator fuit eo tempore, quo Philippus, Macedonum rex, totam Græciam suo imperio subicere conatus est. Qui quamquam non adûlabatur populo, quod ceteri faciebant, tamen sæpius ad imperium vocatus est, quam alius quisquam. Pueros semper hortamur, ut bonos mores imitentur, malos fugiant et aversentur. Adversabimur illis, qui mala reipublice minentur; boni bonis semper auxiliabuntur. Sulla, qui Marium in bello Jugurthino comitatus fuerat, postea acerbissimus ejus adversarius exstitit. In magno timore eram, ne inimici vobis insidiarentur; quod quum factum non sit, gratulor. Magnos homines qui æmulatus fuerit, non inter pessimos numerabitur. Quid gloriemini alienâ virtute, quum propriam laudem meru-

eritis quam cives omnes admirantur? Sæpe recordare, quid Deo, quid parentibus, quid patriæ debeas, ut omni tempore gratum animum ostendas. Consolamini miseros; hortamini pavidos; auxiliamini laborantibus! In rebus sacris nemo jocator. Jure reprehensi ne indignantor.

Do you mean the same as¹ the rest? If² you had not despised my advice, you would not now need consolation.³ Demosthenes, the most celebrated orator of the Greeks, exhorted the Athenians to support⁴ their allies in (good) time, against Philip, the king of the Macedonians: but they¹ hesitated, and *let their enemy escape⁵ out-of (e) their hands. You will be surprised, in how short a time we have completed⁶ so great a work. I am in great fear that⁷ wicked men are plotting against us. Take care *not to imitate⁸ those who take-pride in⁹ empty things. Don't wonder that¹⁰ I have not returned from the city before-this; ¹¹ many affairs have detained me. Pray the gods to give⁴ you a prosperous return. Do not rejoice, *when it goes ill with others.¹² Men should remember¹³ a kindness received.

¹ That is, 'the same which,' (quod,) &c.

² If-not, nisi with subj.

³ App. I.

⁴ 'That (ut) they should support.' See S. 41.

⁵ 'Sent their enemy -forth' (hostem e manibus emittere; nisi, missum.)

⁶ S. 49. ⁷ S. 22. ⁸ Nō with subj.

⁹ C. 36.

¹⁰ Quod. S. 20.

¹¹ Earlier, comparat. of *Mature*.

¹² It goes ill with me: in rebus adversis versor.

¹³ Meminerint, used as an imperative. See App. I.

EXERCISE 37.

Deus tuetur et moderatur res omnium hominum, et universum mundum gubernat. Quid verebamini, ne nobis ingrati venissetis, quibus nemo unquam venit exoptator? Miserere pauperum, ut olim Deus misereatur tui. Nemo libenter fatetur, quod fateri nisi cum dedecore aliquo sui non potest. Qui multa pollicitus est, caveat, ne promissorum obliviscatur. Binæ a Deo hominibus datæ sunt aures, ora autem singula, ut plus audirent quam loquerentur. Romæ qui consulatu functi erant, dicebantur consulares; qui præturâ, prætorii; ædiles qui fuerant, ædilitii; quæstores, quæstorii. Quique justo prælio cum hoste congressi [erant et] quinque millia hostium interfecerant, honorem triumphi adi-

piscebantur. Sequere me : in bellum proficiscimur. Sequar, et pro patriâ pugnabo : sequentur omnes, qui caritate patriam amplectuntur. Ergo proficiscamur, et, si ita Dec placuerit, pro patriâ moriamur. Quid enim juvat vitâ frui, nisi eâ cum laude et gloriâ fruamur ?

Romulus, the first king of the Romans, employed a trick to procure¹ wives for the citizens of his new state. He carried off the Sabine girls whom he had invited with (their) parents to (some) games *which he had instituted.² Hence arose the first war. For the Sabines, to revenge³ the rape of their daughters, seized their arms and fell-upon the Romans. At last, when they had fought for-a-long-time, and the Sabines had already made-themselves-masters of the city, they made a treaty, that they should share the city and government. After-that the Romans were called Quirites from Cures, the chief-town⁴ of the Sabines, whose king Titus Tatius was named joint-king with Romulus. After Romulus followed Numa Pompilius, less distinguished in arms than by the arts of peace. To him succeeded in order Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, the elder Tarquinius, Servius Tullius, Tarquinius the Proud. We often forget⁵ the benefits for which we are indebted⁶ to our parents from our earliest childhood.⁷ Get acquainted with your faults, that they may be corrected. Pity⁸ those who are miserable for no fault of theirs.⁹

¹ U^t with subj. S. 39.
² H^{ic} which we owe.

³ 'Instituted by him,' (a. se.)
⁴ A primâ pueritiâ.

⁵ Urbs. ⁶ S. 39
⁷ Nullâ suâ culpâ.

EXERCISE 38.

Fugiamus ejus amicitiam, qui sine causâ amicis irascitur, et levioribus eorum delictis ignoscere non didicit. Ut corporis, sic animi morbis possûmus mederi, si salubria remedia adhibemus. Animi morbi sunt iracundia, intemperantia, ignavia : ex his fere mala nascuntur omnia, quibus res humanæ turbari solent. Homines virtute metimur, non fortunâ : nec decet virum servire malis aut blandiri improbis, quod potentiâ aut divitiis vel nocere vel prodesse possint. Spe commodi ne mentiminor, neve pravis consiliis adser-

timinor. Socratēs quum capite damnatus causam diceret, tantum aberat, ut¹ blandiretur iudicibus, ut ultro eos incusaret, quod innocentem damnassent.² Ita ausus est etiam magis eos irritare, nec ullo modo ab eo impetrari potuit, ut pœnæ remissionem precaretur. Tali modo supplicium quidem effugere non potuit, sed ita mortuus est, ut sapientem decuit, et præclarum exemplum reliquit posteris. Tu vero sic vive, sic morere!

¹ Tantum aberat ut = *was so far from*: the subj. to be rendered by the participial substantive. ² *For having condemned, &c.*

In misfortune we are sometimes deserted by those, whom we trusted¹ above all others.² Do not³ measure the fidelity of friends by words. The fidelity of friends should be measured⁴ by deeds. How often do bad men hypocritically-pretend friendship, and flatter with words! As-soon-as he had gained⁵ what he desired, he forgot⁶ his promises. We justly proclaim him happy, who has gained the friendship of a good man.⁷ Embrace your friend with sincere affection. The Scythians live on the milk⁸ and flesh of their herds: other nations hunt wild beasts, to eat⁹ their flesh, and clothe themselves with their skins. Time heals⁶ all wounds. I fear you are flattering¹⁰ my friend.

¹ Confidere (*perf. confisus sum*) governs dat. or abl.

⁴ *Is to be measured.* S. 163.

⁵ S. 251.

⁶ Omit the prepos. and put the noun in the abl.

¹⁰ S. 22, and App. I.

² *Præ ceteris.*

³ S. 37.

⁶ App. I.

⁷ Express *vir*

⁹ *Ut* with subj. See App. I

EXERCISE 39. [*Learn App. I.*]

Titus Cæsar dicere solebat, neminem tristem a Principe discedere debere. Mathematici docent, terram nostram circa solem trecentis sexaginta quinque diebus cursum suum conficere. Sæpe videmus, homines vel propter leviora delicta in gravissimas calamitates incidere. A poëta accepimus, antiquissimis temporibus homines in summâ innocentia et morum integritate vitam degisse. Græci quum sentirent, se ceteros populos cultu et artibus superare, peregrinos omnes barbâros appellabant. Constat, Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Co-

rinthum, delevisse. Credimus, Deum hunc mundum creavisse, creatumque conservare et regere. Scis me jam dudum de te nihil audivisse, nec literas a te accepisse. Non turpe est parum scire, sed in inscitia suâ culpâ permanere. Non est æquum, minori parere majorem. Omnibus bonis expedit, quemque reipublicæ leges observare, et parere magistratibus.

Livius relates that¹ Hannibal crossed the Alps with his² army. When³ Pompejus learned that Cæsar had crossed the Rubicon, he with the senate left the city. Then Cæsar proclaimed, that⁴ he⁵ was not waging war with the state, but with the oppressors of liberty. We read in (*apud*) Cornelius Nepos⁶ that⁷ Themistocles⁸ conquered and dispersed the fleet of the Persians at⁹ the island of Salamis.¹⁰ We have heard that¹¹ Socrates drank the poison with the greatest composure:¹² for he believed that the souls of men live after death. Leonidas with a small band for¹³ three days prevented the vast army of the Persians from crossing¹⁴ (the mountains.) You will displease¹⁵ all good men. Have you not¹⁶ pleased all good men?

¹ S. 16.² C. 1.³ Quum with pluperf. subj.⁴ Nepos, G. Nepōtis⁵ Themistocles, G. Themistōclis.⁶ S. 159.⁷ The island Salamis.⁸ Salamis, G. Salaminis, Acc. Salamina or -em. App. II.⁹ Æquissimo animo,

(that is, with the most even mind.)

¹⁰ Per.¹¹ To prevent from

crossing, transitu prohibere.

¹² App. I.¹³ S. 45.

EXERCISE 40. [See S. 205, 206.]

Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. Desinite tandem aliquando esse timidi, ut agere possitis. Dicitur Hannibal octoginta millia peditum et viginti equitum et triginta septem elephantos in Italiam duxisse. Creditur Tacitus, qui mores Germanorum terræque situm accuratissime descripsit, non audita tantum narrare, sed etiam quæ ipse viderit. Indorum scuta dicuntur auro et ebore fulsisse. Omnium animalium terrestrium elephantus videtur maximus esse, maritimorum balæna. Avis quædam, quæ dicitur platalea, scribitur conchis se explere solere. Dicimini segnius scholas frequentare. Non videmur vincere posse, nisi summis viribus hostem adoriamur. In hac re non videbaris verum

attigisse, sed errore quodam deceptus esse. Dicuntur dolores omnes tempore leniri. Terentii fabulæ propter elegantiam sermonis putabantur a C. Lælio scribi. Cæsar legiones jussit sub colle subsistere, donec equitatus illas subsequutus esset, ut simul omnes hostem adorirentur. In bello sæpe crudeles imperatores captivos trucidari jusserunt. Faciam, quod jussus sum facere.

He is said to have laughed. Let him who has received a prize, learn well. If you learn well, you shall receive a prize. I will give you a prize, when you have learned well. Is not philosophy the mistress of life? I' was reading Homer, you' Plato. She is said to have scolded the boy. Let us lie-down in the soft grass. It is certain that the boy laughed. (He) who has received a prize, will rejoice. Having received a prize, they will rejoice. When you have tamed your spirit, you shall receive a prize. When you have read-through Homer, you shall receive a prize.

EXERCISE 41. [*Learn dolēre*, S. 161.]

Cæsar ad oppugnandum urbem milites e castris eduxerat. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Præceptores inter docendum nonnunquam omittunt puerorum intellectui se accommodare. Socrates interrogando elicere solebat eorum opiniones, quibuscum disserebat. Diu circumsedendo Syracusas Romani cælo aquisque adsuerant (adsueverant). Virtutes hominum in agendo cernimus. Multi homines audiendo magis sunt idonei, quam dicendo. Ars dicendi plurimum valet in foro et in judiciis. Verba declarandi et sentiendi Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant. Bellandi studio ferocissimæ gentes in perniciem ruerunt. Pigerrimi discipulorum sunt ii, qui discendi minime sunt studiosi. Sæpe vobis nobiscum certandi copiam fecimus.

You are come here to¹ learn, not to play. Yesterday •while we were walking,² we had a most agreeable conversation with you. By reading the writings of Cicero,

you will, without doubt, acquire the power of writing and speaking Latin.¹ By running, by suffering hunger² and thirst, our bodies grow accustomed to endure the greatest hardships. In disputing it becomes (us) always to observe moderation; and to conquer ambition by our desire of discovering the truth. Your wish to contend³ with me³ has ruined you. Wisdom is to be considered the art of living. I have not time⁴ for answering.⁵ By bearing injuries you will deserve greater praise than by revenging (them.)

¹ S. 161.² Inter ambulandum.³ C. 6.⁴ Latine, adv⁵ To suffer hunger, *esurie*; to suffer thirst, *sitire*.⁶ Say, 'of contending⁷ Translate by *est*. S. 114.⁸ Say, 'of answering.'

EXERCISE 42. [*Learn scribenda epistola*, S. 162, 165.]

Natura animum hominis sensibus ornavit ad res percipiendas idoneis. Hannibal quum Capuam venisset, visendâ urbe magnam diei partem consumpsit. Multi in amicis parandis adhibent curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt. Sunt nonnulli acuendis puerorum ingeniis non inutiles lusus. Creando Pontifici Maximo consules comitia habuere. Ab oppugnandâ Neapôli Hannibalem firmitas et altitudo mœnium absterruit. De contemnendâ morte multi egregie præcipiunt, qui ipsi nihil magis timent, quam mortem. Natura cupiditatem ingenuit homini veri videndi. Augendarum divitiarum stultissimi homines plerumque sunt cupidissimi. In suscipiendis negotiis difficilioribus magis anxii sumus, quam in agendis et perficiendis. Ad vin vi repellendam, licet etiam hominem interficere.

Romulus chose a site near the river Tiber for building the city of Rome.¹ Water is better² than wine for quenching thirst. For defending the walls of their cities, the ancients used machines, with which they shot stones and arrows against the besiegers. In curing coughs physicians used the tussilâgo, which received³ its name from that circumstance.⁴ The steersman, sitting at the stern, endeavours,⁵ by steering⁶ his ship, to avoid the rocks and dangers

of the sea. Let no one lead-you -away from (a) cultivating virtue. Man has great instruments for (ad) obtaining wisdom.

¹ S. 162
dux, duct.

² 'The city Rome.'
³ Inde (thence.)

³ Use utilis, not bonus.
⁶ Studere.

⁴ Ducere,
⁷ Regere, to govern.

EXERCISE 43.

Galli gallinacei cum sole eunt cubitum. Themistocles quum ab Atheniensibus expulsus patriam reliquisset, Argos habitatum concessit. Quum Xerxes ingenti exercitu, Græciæ immineret, Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Veientes pacem petitem oratores Romam miserunt. Saguntini quum intelligerent oppidum suum ab Hannibale expugnatum iri, se suaque omnia cremaverunt.

In consilio capiendo considerare debemus, honestumne factu sit, an turpe. Palpebræ sunt tegmenta oculorum mollissimæ tactu, ne læderent aciem. Difficillima sunt creditu, quæ a vetustissimis omnium gentium scriptoribus commemorantur. In magnis rebus gerendis nonnulla dictum quam factu faciliora sunt.

The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to ask,¹ whether² Hannibal was besieging Saguntum by the orders of the people or senate, or of his own will.³ A great number of persons are come into the city to see¹ the games. Divitiacus, a distinguished German, came to Rome to ask¹ for help. Augustus gave his daughter Julia in marriage,⁴ first to Marcellus, the son of Octavia his sister; then, after his death, to Marcus Agrippa. I don't believe that your conduct will be approved-of by all. What is so delightful to hear⁵ as a speech ornamented with wise thoughts and powerful words! What (*quod*) is the easiest to do,⁶ that' is not always the best. You will repent of your folly too-late. It is of no importance to me, that⁶ these things should be concealed from⁷ my father.

Sup. in um. See note on S. 40.
sing. jussune populi aut Senatûs, Hannibal, &c.

⁴ To give in marriage, nuptum dare.

⁶ Acc. with present infinitive.

² S. 46. Translate *orders* by

³ *Suo arbitrio.*

⁵ Sup. in u.

⁷ S. 139.

EXERCISE 44. [See S. 168.]

In viâ publicâ ludentes pueros deprehendimus. Cæsar fugientes hostes in angustias compulit. Peloponnesus est pæninsula, angustis Isthmi faucibus continenti adhærens.— Senectus est operosa et semper agens aliquid. Jugurtha jussis vestris obediens erit. Alcibiades erat temporibus callidissime inserviens. Catonem vidi in bibliothecâ sedentem. Timoleon quum lumina oculorum amisisset, eam calamitatem tantâ animi fortitudine tolerabat, ut nemo eum querentem audieret. Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tenentem in templo Ephesiæ Dianæ. Hippias, Pisistrati filius, in Marathonîâ pugnâ cecidit, arma contra patriam ferens. Cicero de Socratis morte lacrimare solebat Platonem legens. Mendaci homini, ne verum quidem dicenti, credere solemus. Ut oculus, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit.

Blossoming trees and meadows growing-green delight us more by their appearance, than the glittering palaces of the rich and distinguished. May¹ no calamity disturb your good-fortune. I heard Socrates say² that hunger was the seasoning of food. Plato in the Phædon makes Socrates dispute³ about the immortality of the soul. Phidias the sculptor represented Jupiter (as) sitting on a throne,⁴ and holding thunderbolts in his left-hand, a sceptre in his right. I will readily believe *those who speak⁵ the truth. *Those-who-speak⁵ the truth are readily believed.⁶ I believe that many unfortunate (persons) gain more when-they-are-silent⁶ than when-they-beg.⁶

¹ Utinam. S. 241.*⁶ Present partic² 'Saying.'⁶ S. 135.³ 'Disputing.'⁴ In sollo

EXERCISE 45.

Civem bellum gesturum contra patriam non civem, sed hostem judicamus patriæ. Cæsar adversus hostem copias ducturus, præmisit equites, qui vias omnes explorarent. Lectorum sum aliquid, quod et delectabit animum, et scien-

tiam meam valde augebit. Quid jam facturi estis, quum tot vobis difficultates obstant? Cicero fugiturus erat ex Italiâ, quum emissi ab Antonio eum opprresserunt et interfecerunt. Nescio, quando uxor mea in urbem reditura sit, quum ruris amœnitas animum ejus tantis voluptatibus devinxerit. Ignorabamus, num consilium nostrum probaturi essetis, quod vobis incommodum futurum esset. Themistocles a civibus suis patriâ expulsus, confûgit ad Xerxem, cui promisit, se cum eo adversus Græcos pugnaturum esse. Verisimile est Persas apud Salaminem insulam victuros fuisse,¹ si unum diem expectavissent. Cæsar Calpurniam, L. Pisonis filiam, successuri sibi in consulatu, in matrimonium duxit. Catilina urbem reliquit, mox cum pluribus rediturus.

¹ S. 224.

I was going to write to you, when it was announced, that¹ you were just arrived. As we were going-to-sail from Ostia to Naples, there arose suddenly a storm, which compelled us to remain in the harbor, and wait-for better weather. I don't know when² my brother will come;³ but this⁴ I know, that¹ he has already set-out from the town (where-he-resides.⁵) We hear that¹ you have been residing at Corinth for-some-time, and are now about-to-return to Athens. In summer many persons leave the town, to dwell⁶ in the country:⁷ but when (*ubi*) the weather⁸ ceases (*perf.*) to be warm, return again from the country to the city. I met your brother just-as⁹ he was going-on-board the ship, in which he has sailed to (*in*) America.

¹ S. 16.
'from his town.'

² S. 49.

³ Part. in rus with sim.

⁴ Illud.

⁵ Say

⁶ Ut with subj.

⁷ S. after 160.

⁸ Tempus anni

⁹ Just as, *quum maxime*.

EXERCISE 46.

Valerius Maximus Fabium Rullianum, quinque consulatibus cum magnâ laude functum, hominem dicit propter virtutem et merita admirabilem. Aliquando noctu Romæ nuntiatum est, Sabinorum exercitum populaturum ad Anienem fluvium pervenisse; ibi jam expilatas villas in-

cendi. Statim cum equestribus copiis A. Postumius missus est: quem consul Servilius cum delectâ peditum manu sequitur. Equites plures palatos circumvênit, neque peditibus legio Sabina resistere ausa est. Tum itinere tum nocturnâ populatione fessi, ciboque et vino impleti, plurimi hostium vix tantum virium habebant, quantum ad fugam opus erat.—Alcibiâdes propter crimen sacrorum violatorum ab inimicis urbe pulsus, patriæ maxima damna intulit. Deinde vero, Persarum opem pollicitus, de exsilio revocatus est, Lacedæmoniosque pluribus præliis vicit.—Cœnato jam et obdormiscenti mihi literæ tuæ traditæ sunt, in quibus a te scripta me ita commoverunt, ut somnum adimerent.

You have done this *without being compelled by anybody.¹ Being hindered *from² acting rightly, I shall do nothing. Being presented with a shield and spear, he will fight well for (*pro*) his country. Being moved by your prayers, I will pardon³ your son. Being conquered by a weaker person, you will be despised. It is disgraceful to be conquered by a weaker person. (Though) despised by others, I shall be praised by you. This very difficult labor being finished, let us rest. Pity⁴ a man (*homo*) oppressed with such⁴ evils. *I repent of my folly.⁵ *Are you not⁶ ashamed⁶ of your fickleness? Having been a little-while-ago⁷ tormented with pain, I now, as-it-were,⁸ come to-life-again.⁹ War being undertaken, let us fight bravely for our country.¹⁰ We should fight bravely for our country. Being conquered by a very weak¹¹ man, you are despised.

¹ Say, *compelled by nobody*:—on 'titting 'wit hout.

⁴ C. 10.

³ See page 17a.

⁵ S. 94.

⁶ S. 164.

⁶ S. 45.

¹¹ See page 144.

² S. 43.

⁷ Paullo ante.

³ App. I

⁸ Quasi

EXERCISE 47.

hortandi sunt pueri, ut studiis suis diligentiam adhibeant. In vitâ humanâ pleraque labore et studio paranda sunt. Nisi scribenda mihi hodie epistola esset, optato tuo satisfacerem, ac venirem, quo me vocas. Non audiendi

sunt ii, qui arbitrantur, irascendum inimicis esse. Cuique homini vitanda est ostentationis suspicio. Occultæ inimi-
ciæ magis timendæ sunt, quam apertæ. Orandum est,
ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Nemo unquam sapiens
proditori credendum esse putavit. Semper ita vivamus,
ut rationem reddendam nobis arbitremur. Nemo scit,
quando sibi moriendum sit. Nobis iter facientibus per
Helvetiam Alpes superandæ erant, quæ sempiternâ nive et
glacie tectæ esse dicuntur.

In practising any¹ art, many rules are to be observed.
Those must be considered brave and magnanimous persons,
who are always engaged² in preventing³ injuries. Men
should early learn the art⁴ of using time; and never must
an opportunity be lost of doing any good.⁵ If⁶ we wished
to read all (*pl.*) that has been written by learned men, we
should never make an end of reading. We should live,⁷
as-if⁸ all men saw our actions. When we set-out,⁹ we did
not know what¹⁰ hills we had¹¹ to climb-over, and how-
many rivers to cross. The upper shoots of a tree must
often be broken-off for the purpose¹² of checking its luxu-
riant-growth.

¹ S. 192. ² *Studere*, followed by *dat.* ³ *Propulsare*. ⁴ 'The art—is to
be learned.' ⁵ *Boni aliquid*. Here the *gerund* must be used. ⁶ S. 215. ⁷ S. 164. ⁸ S. 241.* ⁹ S. 241. ¹⁰ S. 49. and C. 21.
¹¹ C. 27. ¹² *Causâ*. See note on S. 40

EXERCISE 48.

Per annos centum et quindēcim inter Romanos et Car-
thaginienses aut bellum fuit, aut belli apparatus, aut incerta
pax; et Roma, jam superato orbe terrarum, se tutam fore
non putabat, si nomen Carthaginensium usquam exstaret.
Captâ Carthagine, ille terrarum tractus in provinciæ formam
reductus est, et Africa propria dicta. Eodem anno captâ
et excisâ Corintho, propter legatos Romanorum violatos,
tota Græcia in ditionem populi Romani venit, et Achaia
dicta est. Mox rege Attālō mortuo, testamenti jure Asiæ
minoris pars major Romanis obtigit.—Manlio Torquato
Caio Atilio consulibus, de Sardis triumphatum est; et

omnibus locis pace factâ, Romani bellum non habebant, quod inde ab urbe conditâ semel tantum factum erat, regnante Numâ Pompilio.—Maximus, de quo accepimus, terræ motus regnante Romæ Tiberio accidit, magno urbium numero eodem die corrueunte.—Magna spes patriæ scholæ sunt; his florentibus etiam respublica viget; his ægrotantibus morbus perfacile etiam patriam invādit.—Orīturo sole navem solvimus, oriente jam procul terra conspicitur.

*When Alexander, king of Macedonia, was dead,¹ his generals divided among themselves² the conquered countries. *When Hannibal had conquered the Romans³ at (*ad*) Trebia, at the Ticinus, at the Trasimene lake, the Roman state seemed to be not far removed⁴ from destruction. *After Syracuse was conquered by Marcus Marcellus,⁵ the Greek arts and sciences removed to Rome. *In the reign of Tullus Hostilius,⁶ in the ninety-first year from the building of the city,⁷ Demaratus, a Corinthian, (who had been) banished from his country, came to Tarquinii, a town of Etruria. The son of this man was L. Tarquinius Priscus, who, *after the death of Ancus⁸ Marcius,⁹ was chosen king of the Romans. *When passion sways,¹ the voice of reason is often unheard. Mithridates waged war with the Romans for forty-nine successive years, *with many variations of fortune²

¹ Abl. absol.

² Inter sese.

³ Abl. absol.

⁴ Hand procul abesse.

⁵ 'Tullus Hostilius reigning,' *abl. absol.*

⁶ 'From the city built.'

⁷ Ancus.

⁸ 'Fortune often varying,' *abl. absol.*

EXERCISE 49.

Famâ divulgatâ, Numam Pompilium Sabinum virtute et sapientiâ eminere, hunc populus Romanus, quamquam peregrinum, præteritis civibus regem creavit. Magi Persarum fuerunt, quibus auctoribus Xerxes Græciæ templâ inflammari jussit. Patrato quisque scelere conscientia morsibus conficitur; scelus enim et accumbentem exagitat, et dormientis obversatur animo, et evigilanti denuo insurgit. Cæsar narrat, invitis iis, a quibus Pharus occupata sit, naves portum Alexandriæ intrare non posse. Vivo Hannibale Romani

sese ab insidiis tutos non esse arbitrabantur. Duce P Cornelio Scipione Romani in Africam trajecerunt, ubi, pugnâ ad Zamam commissâ, pax petentibus Carthaginiensibus data est. C. Cæsar, vir summæ in re militari prudentiæ, milites suos hortatus, ne fugientes hostes incautius persequerentur, legiones sub colle subsistere jubet, dum ipse equites in terga hostium circumduxisset: quod ubi factum esse cognovissent, instructâ acie in collem eniterentur. Sævi bellatores, victoriâ reportatâ, urbes diripiunt, et agros devastant, ac ne inermi quidem parcentes trucidant homines.

*When the sea is calm,¹ anybody² can steer a ship. *By the advice of Cato,³ the ambassadors of the Athenians were banished from Rome, because by their incredible eloquence⁴ they persuaded the people to receive falsehood for truth.⁵ *When spring returns,⁶ your little-garden will be adorned with the most beautiful flowers. Do not boast, *when you have conquered a weaker person.⁶ *When the victory is lost,⁶ it *makes-no-difference⁷ how-many have been killed. Being born for (*ad*) greater things, depart from the wicked, lest you should be corrupted by their character.⁸ By the advice of my uncle, I have run to you. Cannot anybody² be a pilot, *when the sea is calm?¹ We must think about the true welfare⁹ of the soul.

¹ 'The sea (being) calm,' (tranquillus,) *abl. abs.*

⁴ Ars dicendi.

⁵ Mores, *pl.*

⁶ Falsa pro veris accipere.

⁹ Sal us, *attis.*

² S. 192.

³ Catone auctore.

⁶ *Abl. abs.* ⁷ S. 91.

EXERCISE 50. [See S. 94.]

Is labor utilis est, qui auctori laudem fert, aliis utilitatem. Quid fers manu, mi fili? Pecuniam et vasa refero, quæ fur e domo nostrâ nuper abstulerat. Hunc ego dolorem æquo animo ferrem, nisi gravior¹ esset, quam ut ferri omnino possit. Fer opem miseris, et vide, ne te sero lati auxilii pœniteat. Factum est æquitate Aristidis, ut summum imperium a Lacedæmoniis transferretur ad Athenienses. Miseret me tui, quod tanta tibi injuriâ illata est,

quantam inferre cuiquam nisi audacissimus homo non potuit. Sed tamen majorem laudem merebere, æquo animo ferendo injuriam, quam ulciscendo. Tollite et auferte hæc subsellia: ablata in porticu collocate. Cæsari militum ordines circumequitanti nuntius affertur, hostem adesse et horribili sublato clamore castris appropinquare. Nihil igitur differendum impetum ratus, instructâ acie signa in hostem tulit.

¹ Gravior quam ut possit, &c., too heavy to be, &c.

Labors must be borne. What (*pl.*) cannot be avoided, must be borne with resignation.¹ When will you be ashamed² of your folly? By whom have you been prevented from³ fulfilling your duties? You have need⁴ of a brave mind. *It is of great importance to all⁵ *to make a right use of time.⁶ By whom (*pl.*) were they prevented from³ discharging the duties of justice? An opportunity being offered, let us do-good to our friends. Shall⁷ you deserve greater praise by bearing an injury, or by revenging (it)? O Alexander, having subdued so many nations, learn to subdue your own⁸ passion. The naked must be clothed:⁹ the hungry satisfied. You must answer¹⁰ to (*ad*) our questions. The army must be drawn-out-in-battle-array.

¹ 'With even mind.'

⁶ 'To use time rightly'

² S. 94.

⁷ S. 51, 52.

³ S. 43.

⁸ S. 177.

⁴ S. 79.

⁹ S. 163.

⁵ S. 91.

¹⁰ S. 164.

EXERCISE 51. [See p. 177.]

Si vis beatus esse, impera libidini, quæ te dies noctesque exagitat, nec unquam patitur tranquillum esse animum. Quum ceteris omnibus ignoveris, mihi uni ignoscere non vis? M. Porcius Cato, quum nollet in civitate vivere, quæ unius imperio pareret, mortem sibi Uticæ, (in) oppido Africæ, conscivit: a quo facto Uticensis est appellatus. C. Julius Cæsar dixit, malle sese in minimâ quaque civitate primum esse, quam Romæ secundum. In legibus ferendis hac formulâ uti solebant magistratus: *Velitis, jubeatis Quirites?* Sic P. Sulpicius consul rogationem promulgavit: *Vellent juberent, Quirites, Philippo regi Macedonibusque,*

qui sub regno ejus essent, ob injurias illatas sociis populi Romani bellum indici?—Cicero senex vidit perficere Cæsarem, quod decem et septem annis ante Catilina voluerat, sed vigilantia Ciceronis consulis præpeditus non potuerat. Non debet legi, qui non vult intelligi. Dic, utrum malis ruri vivere, an in urbe. Malo ruri.—Noli foris quærere, quæ tibi domi parata sunt. Si tales estis, quales vultis videri, bene est: sed sunt, qui malint videri boni, quam esse.

Had- you -rather¹ live in-the-country,² or in the city? He is such as³ he wishes to appear. Lust must be subdued, which will harass you day and night. If you (*pl.*) wish to be happy, your lusts must be subdued. War being proclaimed, we have need⁴ of a brave general. If you wish to be such as³ you seem, it is well. The boys must be admonished to be⁵ such as³ they wish (*subj.*) to appear. No one wishes to be despised by those, whom he-himself loves. Never forget⁶ what you owe to your country. Had- you -rather¹ lead a long and inglorious life, or end a glorious life by an early death? Achilles preferred dying⁷ in the Trojan war by an early death, to growing-old at-home in an inactive life. I would (*vellem*) you had come⁸ to me as a friend: in thee alone had I placed all my hope.

¹ S. 51, 52.

² See examples under S. 160.

³ Qualis.

⁴ S. 70.

⁵ Ut with subj.

⁶ Say, 'be unwilling (noli) ever to forget.'

⁷ To prefer, malle. Say, 'to die—than to-grow-old.'

⁸ Subj. governed by ut omitted.

EXERCISE 52.

Gallinæ cum sole cubitum ire dicuntur: at homo, dum recte valet, ante noctem cubitum non ibit. I præ, ego sequar. Ex pugna Cannensi admōdum pauci Romani domum redierunt. Præteribam forte domum tuam, quum magnam hominum frequentiam ex eâ vidi exeuntem. Quærenti mihi quid esset, quod¹ tanta frequentia exiret, respondit aliquis, esse apud te principem aliquem, quem visuri isti venissent. Ineunte vere hirundines redeunt, auctumno in terras calidiores abituræ. Cupio, ut tu et

soror tua quam brevissimo tempore ad nos redeatis : jarr enim tertius est annus, ex quo profecti estis. Silvæ, montes, maria transeunda sunt in terras longe remotas proficiscentibus. Cæsar ad tutanda castra fossam fecit decem pedes altam totidemque latam, quam equo aut pedibus superare nequirent hostes. In quacunque re priusquam agas quidquam, vires explōra, ut cognoscas, quid queas, quidve nequeas. Avari perpetua cura exest animum, ne bona sibi cripiantur.

¹ *Quid esset, quod* may be rendered, 'why it was that ;' or 'why' only.

Is not your little-brother gone¹ to bed ? We must follow. We must obey the laws. Must we not obey the laws ? We must revile nobody. Flatter nobody. It is-well-known, that *at the beginning of autumn* the swallows go-away to (in) warmer countries. How-many men did you see coming-out of (ex) my house ? I will ask, how many men he saw coming-out. Will not the swallows return *at the beginning*² of spring ? Having ascertained your strength,³ you will learn what⁴ you can (queo) do. I desire that (ut) you should take-away⁵ from me⁶ my care *in as short a time as possible.⁷

¹ Is gone. See C. 12. ² Say, 'autumn coming-in,' (abl. abs.) ³ Say, 'spring coming-in.' ⁴ Plural. See S. 176. ⁵ S. 49. ⁶ Syn. 6. ⁷ Dat. ⁸ Quam brevissimo tempore.

EXERCISE 53. [See *fio*, p. 178.]

Sæpe qui ex pauperibus repente divites fiunt, divitiis uti nesciunt : ita fit, ut brevi tempore, consumptis opibus, in graviolem etiam egestatem relabantur. Contigit Ciceroni, ut eodem anno consul fieret, quo magno periculo patriam liberare, sibi que æternam gloriam parare posset. Cicero ait, non posse jucunde vivi,¹ nisi honeste vivatur. Tullus Hostilius, qui Numam Pompiliū in imperio sequutus est, ut Livius ait, ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. Cæsarem ajunt morti Pompeii illacrymasse, quum abscissum illius caput in patinâ victori offerretur. Aristippus percontanti, quæ potissimum adolescentibus essent discenda ; *Quæ viris*, inquit, *usui futura sunt*. Socrates interrogatus, quinam homines tranquille viverent ; *Qui*, inquit, *nullius turpitudinis sibi*

conscii sunt. Pisistrātus, quum convīa bene potus ei maledixisset, irritantibus amicis ad pœnam de convivâ sumendam: *Non magis, inquit, illi succenseo, quam si quis obligatis oculis in me incurrisset.*

¹ 'That it cannot be lived pleasantly' = 'that there is no living pleasantly.' *Nisi vivatur* may be translated 'unless one lives;' or, 'without living.'

He is said to have become rich. Having become rich. do not¹ forget those, who did-good to you (when) a poor man. Do not¹ be angry against² those who have deserved well of (*de*) you. It has happened³ to me to free⁴ you from⁵ great danger. Nothing shall hinder me from⁶ doing this. You (*pl.*) would have conquered,⁷ if you had waited one day. It is certain that⁸ you would have conquered,⁸ if you had waited one day. I will wait till¹⁰ you have fulfilled your duty. We have walked¹¹ enough. Having won¹² for myself eternal glory, I will willingly die. Do not¹ prefer glory to honor.

¹ Be unwilling (to forget—to be angry, &c.) *noli.*

⁴ S. 17.

⁵ S. 128.

⁶ S. 43.

⁷ S. 216

⁸ C. 36.

⁸ Syn. 4.

¹⁰ S. 249.

¹¹ S. 141.

¹² Parare.

⁸ S. 16.

⁹ S. 224.

EXERCISE 54. [See *memini*, &c., p. 178.]

Demōnax interrogatus, quando cœpisset philosophari; Tum, inquit, *cum cognoscere me ipsum cœpi.* Phocion innōcens capitis damnatus, rogante quodam ex amicis, numquid filio suo Phoco mandari vellet: *Maxime, inquit; jubeo enim eum hujus in patrem injuriæ nunquam meminisse.* Samiorum legatis, longâ oratione usis, responderunt Spartani: *Prima sumus obliti, postrema non intelleximus,¹ quia prima non meminimus.* C. Cæsar Caligula tantâ crudelitate fuit, ut merito Imperatorum Romanorum omnium crudelissimus habeatur. Is quum probe sciret, quanto odio¹ civibus esset dicere solebat: *Oderint, dum metuant.* Hannibal Romanos sic oderat, ut in gratiam cum illis redire nullo modo posset. Memento etiam ignotis prodesse. Immanis naturæ est,² odisse eos, quibus vitam debeas. Quidam scriptores tradiderunt, Saguntum oppidum captum ab Hannibale esse octavo mense, postquam cœptum est oppugnari.

¹ S. 111.

² S. 85.

Remember that you¹ are a man : and that all men must die.² I hate you so³ that⁴ I cannot be reconciled to you. Remember to pardon all men. Do not⁵ hate anybody.⁶ In what month did Saguntum begin to be besieged ? In what year was Saguntum taken ? Do you know in what⁷ year Saguntum was taken ? *It is of great importance to you⁸ to remember that you are a man. Do not⁹ make⁹ a long speech. Remember to do good to as-many-as-possible.¹⁰

1 S. 16. 2 S. 164. 3 Sic Let it begin the sentence. 4 S. 17. 5 Noll.
 6 Quisquam. See S. 191. 7 S. 49. 8 S. 91. 9 Iter
 10 Quam plurim!

III. READING LESSONS,

CONSISTING OF

FABLES AND ANECDOTES, &c.

1.

Boves.

PASCEBANTUR una tres boves robusti in maximâ concordîâ. Itaque facile ab omni ferarum incursione tuti erant, ut ne leones quidem aggrêdi eos auderent. Orto autem inter eos dissidio et solutâ amicitîâ, singuli validioribus bestiis prædæ fuerunt.—Hæc fabula docet, quantum prosit concordia.

2.

Vulpes et Uva.

Vulpes, extremâ fame coacta, uvam appetebat ex altâ vite dependentem. Quam quum, summis viribus saliens, attingere non posset, tandem discedens ait : Nondum matura est, nolo acerbam sumere.—Hoc illi exemplum sumant, qui, quæ facere non possunt, verbis elēvant.

3.

Cervus ad fontem.

Cervus quum vehementer sitiret, ad fontem accessit, suâque in aquis imagine conspectâ, cornuum magnitudinem et varietatem laudabat, crura vero gracilia et exilia vituperabat. Hæc cogitanti supervēnit leo. Quo viso, cervus aufūgit, et leoni longe præcurrit. Et quamdiu in nudâ planitie erat, nullum ei ab hoste imminebat periculum ; ubi

vero ad nemus venit opacum, inter virgulta cornibus adhæsit. Ita quum celeritate pedum uti non posset, captus est a leone et misere laniatus. Tum moriturus : *O me desipientem*, inquit, *cui ea displicerent, quæ me servarunt, placerent autem, quæ me perdiderunt !*

4.

Vulpes et Corvus.

Corvus quum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit, eumque callidis verbis adoritur. O corve, inquit, quam pulchra es avis, quam speciosa ! Te decuit esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes, si vocem haberes. His corvus laudibus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur, clamorem edidit, sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit : quam vulpes statim rapuit, atque irrîdens dixit : *Heus, corve ! nihil tibi deest præter mentem.*

5.

Senex et Mors.

Senex quidam ligna in silvâ ceciderat, et, fasce in humeros sublato, domum redire cœpit. Quum autem fatigatus esset et onere et itinere, deposuit ligna, et secum considérans miserias senectutis et inopiæ, clarâ voce invocavit mortem, ut se ab omnibus malis liberaret. Mox adfuit mora, quid velit interrôgans. Tunc senex perterritus : *Nihil vole*, inquit, *nisi ut hunc fascem lignorum humeris meis imponas.*

6.

Mures et Felis.

Multi mures in cavo pariète commorantes, contemplantur diu selem, quæ capite demisso et tristi vultu placide recumbebat. Tunc unus ex iis : *Hoc animal*, inquit, *ad modum benignum et mite videtur. Quid, si allôquar, et familiaritatem cum illo contraham ?* Hæc quum dixisset et propius accessisset, a fele captus et dilaceratus est. Tunc ceteri hoc videntes secum dicebant : *Non est profecto vultui semere credendum.*

7.

Auceps et Serpens.

Auceps ibat venatum, et mox vidit in altissimâ arbore palumbem; appropërat eum capturus, sed inter eundum premit forte pede altero viperam in herbâ latentem, quæ illum mordet. *Me miserum*, inquit, *dum alteri insidior, ipse dispero.*

8.

Canis et Lupus.

Canis perpingui lupo occurrit macie confectus. Quum se salutassent, lupo: Quomodo fit, inquit, ut tam pinguis sis, tamque niteas? Ego, multo fortior, fame pereor. Canis respondet: Idem tibi erit, si domino officium præstabis, quod ego præsto, ut servem limen, dominumque noctu a furibus tuear. Tum lupo: Ego vero, inquit, paratus sum; nunc enim patior frigora et imbres, in silvis oberrans.—Veni ergo mecum. Dum procedunt, lupo collum canis detrîtum adspicit. Quid hoc est? inquit; num jugum fers? Imo, inquit canis, quia acer sum, me interdiu alligant; noctu vero vagor, ubi lubet. Num est tibi, inquit lupo, licentia abeundi, quo velis?—Non semper.—*Vale*, respondit ille, *liber esse malo, quam servitutem ferre.*

9.

Rusticus et Filii.

Rusticus vicinus morti, quum relinquere filiis suis divitias non posset, animos eorum excitare voluit ad diligentem agriculturam, assiduitatemque in opere faciendo. Igitur eos ad se vocat et sic alloquitur: Mei filii, quo statu res meæ sint, videtis. Vobis autem, quidquid potui, in vitâ mcâ collegi, idque totum in vineâ nostrâ quærere poteritis. Hæc quum dixisset, moritur senex. At filii opinantes, patrem in vineâ thesaurum abscondidisse, arreptis ligonibus universum vineæ solum effodiunt. Et thesaurum quidem nullum invenere, terrâ tamen fodiendo percultâ, vites post-hac uberrimos fructus tulerunt.

10.

Equus et Asinus.

Agitabat quidam equum et asinum onustos sarcinis. Asinus defatigatus rogavit equum, ut, si se vivum servare vellet, aliquâ parte oneris se levaret: repudiavit equus preces illius. Paulo igitur post fatigatione et labore consumptus asinus in viâ corruit, et efflavit animam. Tum agitator omnes sarcinas, quas asinus portaverat, atque insuper etiam pellem asino detractam in equum imposuit. Ibi ille deplorans fortunam suam: Me miserum, inquit, qui parvulum onus in me suscipere gravatus fuerim, quum nunc cogar tantum ferre, accedente etiam pelle comitis mei, cujus preces tam superbe contempseram.

11.

Duc Amici.

Duo amici faciunt iter. Occurrit in itinere ursus, quo conspecto unus illico arborem conscendit, et pericula evitat; alter vero, quum meminisset, illam bestiam cadavera non attingere, humi sese prostravit, simulans, se mortuum esse. Accedit ursus, contrectat jacentem, et os suum ad illius os auresque admovet. Homine autem spiritum continente, ursus, ratus cadaver esse, discedit. Quum postea socius quæreretur, quidnam ei ursus dixisset in aurem, respondit: Monuit, ne amicum esse mihi persuaderem, cujus fidem adverso tempore non fuisset expertus.

12.

Dictum memorabile Socratis.

Quum ex Socrate esset quæsitum, nonne beatum putaret Archelâum, Perdiccæ filium, regem Macedonum, qui tum fortunatissimus habebatur? Haud scio, inquit, nunquam enim cum eo colloquutus sum. Ain' tu?¹ an aliter id scire non potes?—Nullo modo.—Tu igitur ne de Persarum quidem rege magno dicere potes, beatusne sit?—An ego possum, inquit, quum ignorem, quam doctus sit, et num bonus

¹ Ain' tu *for* alsne tu?

vir?—Quid? tu in eo sitam esse vitam beatam putas?—Ita prorsus existimo: *bonos beatos, imprōbos miseros esse.*—Miser¹ ergo Archelaus?—Certe, si injustus.¹

13.

Egregie dicta.

Drusus quum ædificaret domum, promitteretque ei architectus, ita se eam ædificaturum,² ut nemo in eam despicere posset: *Tu vero, inquit, si quid in te artis est, ita compone domum, ut, quidquid agam, ob omnibus perspici possit.*—Plato cuidam narranti, esse quosdam, qui ipsum maledictis insectentur: *At ego, inquit, sic vivam, ut nemo istis fidem habeat.*—Epictetus interrogatus, quis esset dives? *Cui, inquit, satis est, quod habet.*—Socrates, in pompâ quum magna vis auri argentique ferretur: *Quam multa non desidero!* inquit.—Antoninus Pius hanc celebratam Scipionis sententiam sæpe in ore habebat, *malle se unum civem servare, quum mille hostes interficere.*

14.

Acute dicta.

Agis, rex Lacedæmoniorum, audiens, quosdam horrere hostium multitudinem, ait: *non percontandum esse, quot sint hostes, sed ubi sint.* Idem interrogatus, quot milites haberet? *quot sufficiunt, inquit, ad fugandos hostes.*—Quum quidam Lacedæmonios hortaretur, ut bellum Macedonibus inferrent, commemoraretque victorias, quas de Persis reportassent, Eudamidas dixit: *hoc facere, idem esset, ac³ si quis, devictis mille ovibus, cum quinquaginta lupis pugnaret.*—Aristippum philosophum rogavit quidam, ut filium suum erudiret. Quum vero ille pro mercede petiisset quingentas drachmas, pater, deterritus pretio, quod avaro et rudi homini nimium videbatur: *Tanti, inquit, emere mancipium possum.* Tum philosophus: *Eme, inquit, et habebis duo.*

15.

Libère dicta.

Apelles, pictor sui temporis clarissimus, Alexandrum

¹ Sc. est.² Sc. esse.³ Aa.

pinxerat vehentem equo. Quam imaginem quum rex minus laudaret, quam meruerat artifex, equus Alexandri interea adductus picto equo sic adhinnit, quasi verus esset equus. Tum Apelles: *O rex, inquit, equus tuus pingendi peritior, quam tu, videtur esse.*—Alexander olim quum piratam comprehensum interrogaret, quo jure maria infestaret, ille: *Eodem, inquit, quo tu orbem terrarum. Sed quia id ego parvo navigio facio, latro vocor; tu, quia magnâ classe et exercitu, imperator.*—Quum in regali soho sederet Cræsus, pretiosissimâ veste indutus, Solonem interrogavit, an quid unquam pulchrius vidisset? *Gallos, inquit ille, et phasianos et pavones: naturali enim nec imitabili colore et pulchritudine fulgent.*

16.

Damon et Pythias.

Damon et Pythias, Pythagoræi, tam fidèlem inter se amicitiam junxerunt, ut mori parati essent alter pro altero. Quum eorum alteri Dionysius tyrannus diem necis destinavisset, et is, qui morti addictus esset, paucos sibi dies ad res suas ordinandas postulavisset; vas factus est alter, ut, si ille non revertisset, moriendum esset ipsi. Omnes igitur, et imprimis Dionysius, novæ atque ancipitis rei exitum speculabantur. Appropinquante deînde definitâ die, nec illo redeunte, unusquisque stultitiæ tam temerarium sponsorem condemnabat. At vero quum alter ad diem se recepisset, admiratus eorum fidem tyrannus supplicio liberavit eum, qui morte erat plectendus, ac petivit, ut se ad amicitiam tertium adscriberent.

17.

Augustus.

Græcus quidam Augustor, e Palatio descendenti, honorificum aliquod epigramma porrigere solebat, spe præmii. Id quum sæpe frustra fecisset, Augustus eum deterriturus breve epigramma suâ manu exaratum Græculo advenienti obviam misit. Ille, dum legeret, laudabat, et tum voce, tum vultu gestuque mirabatur. Deinde ad sellam accessit, quâ Cæ-

sar ferebatur, paucosque ex crumēnâ denarios protraxit, quos Cæsari daret, dixitque, se plus daturum fuisse, si plus habuisset. Omnes risere; Cæsar autem dispensatorem vocari, et Græco satis magnam pecuniæ summam numerari jussit.

18.

Cyrus minor, rex Persarum.

Quum Lysander Lacedæmonius ad Cyrum minorem, regem Asiæ, Sardes venisset, hic erga Lysandrum in omni re comis atque humanus fuit, atque hortum ei aliquando diligenter consitum ostendit. Quum admiraretur Lysander et proceritatem arbōrum, et ordines, et humum subactam atque puram, et suavitatem odorum, qui efflabantur ex floribus: tum dixit, mirari se non modo diligentiam sed etiam sollertiam ejus, a quo ista dimensa et descripta essent. Cui Cyrus respondit: Atqui ego ista omnia dimensus sum, mei sunt ordines, mea descriptio; multæ etiam istarum arborum meâ manu satæ sunt. Tum Lysander intuens ejus purpuram et ornatum corporis, dixit: Recte vero te, Cyre, beatum ferunt, quoniam virtutem tuam fortuna sequuta est.

19.

Catonis pueri constantia.

Marcus Cato puer in domo avunculi sui, Drusi, tribuni plebis, educebatur. Quum apud eum socii de civitate impetrandâ convenissent, et Quintus Poppedius, Marsorum princeps, eum rogaret, ut socios apud avunculum adjuvaret, constanti vultu respondit, non facturum¹ se. Iterum deinde et sæpius rogatus, in proposito perstitit. Tunc Poppedius puero in altissimam ædium partem sublato minatus est, se eum inde dejecturum,¹ nisi precibus obtemperaret. Sed Cato ne hac quidem re ab incepto depelli potuit. Ita Poppedio vox illa expressa est: Gratulemur nobis, socii, hunc esse tam parvum: quo senatore ne sperare quidem civitatem liceret. Sic ea constantia, quam postea per totam vitam ostendit, jam in puero Catone apparuit.

¹ Sc. esse.

20.

Lysimachi fortitudo.

Lysimachus inter duces Alexandri illustri genere, sed longe magis virtute quam genere clarus erat. Quum Alexander Callisthenem philosophum miserandum in modum omnibus membris truncasset, et insuper cum cane in caveâ clausum circumferret, Lysimachus, qui eum audire atque ex ejus ore præcepta virtutis et sapientiæ percipere solitus erat, venenum ei dedit, in remedium calamitatum. Quod adeo ægre tulit Alexander, ut Lysimachum leoni objici juberet. Sed quum leo impetum fecisset in eum, Lysimachus manum amiculo involutam in os leonis immersit, arreptâque linguâ feram exanimavit. Quod quum nuntiatum regi esset, admiratio iræ successit, carioremque habuit propter tantam constantiam.

21.

Animus generosus Fabricii.

Pyrrhi bello maximum exemplum est justitiæ in hostem a Romanis constitutum. Quum enim rex Pyrrhus populo Romano bellum ultro intulisset, quumque de imperio certamen esset cum rege generoso ac potente; perfûga ab eo venit in castra Fabricii, eique est pollicitus, si præmium sibi proposuisset, se, ut clam venisset, sic clam in Pyrrhi castra rediturum, et eum veneno necaturum. Hunc Fabricius reducendum curavit ad Pyrrhum; idque factum ejus a senatu laudatum est.

22.

Piso Orator et Servus

Marcus Piso, orator Romanus, servis præceperat, ut tantum ad interrogata responderent, nec quidquam præterea dicerent. Evēnit, ut Clodium, qui tunc magistratum gerebat, ad cœnam invitari juberet. Hora cœnæ instabat; aderant ceteri convivæ omnes, solus Clodius expectabatur. Piso servum, qui solebat convivas vocare, aliquoties emisit, ut videret, an veniret. Quum denique jam desperaretur

ejus adventus, Piso servo : Dic, inquit, num forte non invitavisti Clodium? Invitavi, respondit ille.—Cur ergo non venit?—Quia venturum se negavit. Tum Piso: Cur id non statim dixisti? Respondit servus Quia de eo non sum a te interrogatus.

23.

Demosthenes.

Demosthenes causam orans quum judices parum attentos videret : Paullisper, inquit, aures mihi præbete ; rem vobis novam et jucundam narrabo. Quum aures arrexissent : Juvenis, inquit, quispiam asinum conduxerat, quo Athenis Megaram profecturus uteretur. In itinere quum soi ureret, neque esset umbraculum, deposuit clitellas, et sub asino consedit, ut ejus umbrâ tegetetur. Id vero agâso vetabat, clamans, asinum locatum esse, non umbram asini. Alter quum e diverso contenderet, tandem in jus ambulat. Hæc loquutus Demosthenes, ubi homines diligenter auscultantes vidit, abiit. Tum revocatus a judicibus, rogatusque ut reliquam fabulam enarraret: Quid? inquit, de asini umbrâ libet audire? causam hominis de vitâ periclitantis non audietis?

24.

Scipio Nasica.

Scipio Nasica quum ad poëtam Ennium venisset, eique, ab ostio quærenti Ennium, ancilla dixisset, domi non esse : Nasica sensit, illam domini jussu dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus quum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et quum a januâ quæreret, exclamat Nasica, se domi non esse. Tum Ennius : Quid, inquit, ego non cognosco vocem tuam? Hic Nasica : Homo es impudens ; ego quum quærerem, ancillæ tuæ credidi, te domi non esse ; tu mihi non credis ipsi.

25.

Hannibal exsul.

Hannibal exsul ad Antiochum, Syriæ regem, venit. Rex illi in campo ingentes ostendit copias, quas bellum cum

Romanis gesturus comparaverat; exercitum auro et argento fulgentem, equitatum frenis, ephippiis, phalæris splendentem, elephantos denique cum turribus. Tum contemplatione tanti et tam ornati exercitûs gloriabundus Hannibalem adspicit, et: Putasne, inquit, satis esse Romanis hæc omnia? Intelligebat numerum exercitus, quærens, num sufficeret bello Romano. At Hannibal elūdens ignaviam militum pretiose armatorum: Satis plane, inquit, esse credo Romanis hæc omnia, etiamsi avarissimi sint.—Rex de numero quæsierat, respondit Hannibal de prædâ.

26.

Epaminondas.

Epaminondas, dux Thebanorum, quum vicisset Lacedæmonios apud Mantinēam, simulque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, ut primum dispexit, quæsivit, salvusne esset clipeus? Quum salvum esse flentes sui respondissent: rogavit, essentne fusi hostes? Quumque id quoque, ut cupiebat, audivisset, evelli jussit eam, quâ erat transfixus, hastam. Ita multo sanguine profuso, in lætitiâ et victoriâ est mortuus.

27.

Socrates et Xenophon.

Xenophontem in angiportu obviam habuit Socrates. Quumque videret adolescentem vultu specioso adinōdum et verecundo, porrecto baculo vetuit, ne præteriret. Ut consuitit, interrogavit eum Socrates, ubinam venderentur, quæ essent necessaria variis usibus civium? Ad quæ quum expeditè respondisset Xenophon, percontatus est, ubinam boni ac probi homines fierent? Id vero nescire se, quum respondisset adolescens: Sequere igitur me, inquit Socrates, et disce. Ex eo tempore Xenophon cæpit esse Socratis auditor, et bonus probusque factus est.

IV. VOCABULARIES

ON

THE EXERCISES.

Numerals refer to Principles of Word-building, p. 181

VOCABULARY TO EXERCISE 7.

Word-building.]—A field-tiller, *from* *ager*, *root* *agr-*, *field*, and *colo*, *till* (*agr-i-cōl-a*, G. *æ*, *husbandman*). To choose apart, *from* *lego*, *choose* (*diligo*, *lex*, *lect*, *to love* with preference). To take-to, *from* *cipio*, *capere* (*ac-cipio*, *ac-cipere*, *cēp*, *cept* : *receive*). *Form a stronger verb from* *nare* *to swim* (*nātare*, *from root of supine*, 34). To take-before, *from* *capere* (*præ-cipere*, *cēp*, *cept* : *to direct* or *instruct* a person to do something).¹ A precept (*præceptum*). A preceptor or teacher (*præceptor*, 41). To make an ornament, *from* *dēcōr*, *root of decus*, *ornament* (*dēcōrare*, *adorn*). To climb-down, *from* *scandere* (*descendere*, *scend*, *scens*, *descend*). Descent (*descens-us*. Of what *declens*.? 44). Abounding in money, *from* *pecunia*, *money* (*pecuniosus*, *moneyed*, 102).

Hodie (= *hoc die*,) *to-day*. *Pensum*, *task* (properly *that which is weighed out*; *from* *pendere*, *to weigh*).

VOCABULARY TO 8.

Word-building.]—*From* *hortus*, *garden*, *form* *little-garden* (*hort-ulus*, 66). *From* *flōr-*, *root of flos*, *flower*, *form* *to flow-*

¹ Perhaps because he who gives directions must have *first taken*, that is, *understood* them, himself. *Capere*, *to take*, is often used in the sense of *understanding*, of *taking in the whole of a notion* :—'Quod mentes eorum *capere* possent.' *Liv. ix. 8.*

or (flor-ēre, blossom, flourish, 39). *Form* to begin to blossom or flourish (florescere, come into flower, 36). *Form* abounding in mores; that is, in peculiar manners or humors (mōr-ōsus, 102, morose, peevish, ill-humored). From emēre, to buy, *form* buying or purchase (emptio, 43)—buyer (emptor). *Form* to-take-into from capere (incipere, cēp, cept: to take in hand, to begin). A thing begun, an undertaking (inceptum). To fight-out, from pugnare, to fight (ex-pugnare: to take a city, to win-by-arms). The taking of a city (expugnatio).

VOCABULARY TO 9.

Word-building.]—I. From tegere, cover, *form* that which is covered (tectum: roof, house). To make an end: to finish, from fin- (finire). To act as a guard, from custōd, root of custos, keeper, guard (custodire, to guard).

Sacramentum,¹ the military-oath by which a soldier bound himself.

II. From superbus, proud, *form* to be proud; to act proudly (superbire). *Form* a strengthened verb from cant, supine root of canere, to sing, (cantare, to sing). An inhabitant of Tarentum; a Tarentine (Tarentinus). From vastus, waste, *form* to make waste; to lay waste (vastare).

VOCABULARY TO 10.

Word-building.]—I. *Form* an intensive from cīt, supine root of ciēre (cītare, to set in violent motion, 34). To set in motion again; call forth again (recītare; recite, to call forth, as it were, a dead writing to new activity or life). To call-forth-into activity (ex-citare,² excite, awake). *Form* a trans. verb from cura, care (curare, 33, take-care-of). *Form* an intensive from spect, supine root of spicere, to look (spectare, look, 34). To look-out, (expectare, expect, wait for) To come-to, approach (advenire). Approach (adventus, 44). A trans. verb from nuntius, news (nuntiare, to announce). A subst. from supine root of equitare, to ride (equitatus, riding, cavalry).

¹ Sacer, devoted to the gods, whether as sacred, or as accursed: hence sacrare, to make sacred, or to make accursed: sacramentum, that which makes a man accursed. If he violates it.

² Spem excitare is to raise a hope.

Nuncupare (*probably from nomine capere*) is used of solemnly and formally pronouncing a man's name, for instance in naming a man one's heir, &c.

VOCABULARY TO 11.

Word-building.]—I. To make sound, *from* sanus (sanare, *to cure*). Reading; perusal, *from* lect, *supine root of* legere (lectio, 43). *From* quærere, *seek, form to seek-to* (acquirere, quisiv, quisit: *seek to myself, gain, earn, &c.*).

[Voc. on some Verbs that form their perf. in *i*.]

To help-to (ad-jūvare, *to assist*). To move-to (admōvēre). To see-into (in-vīdēre, *envy*). To come to (advēnīre). To come-upon (in-venīre; *to find, invent: of things not sought*). To drink-out; drink-up (ebībēre, 11). To eat-up (com-ēdēre, 7). To do-thoroughly (per-fīcēre, fēc, sect, *perform, complete*, 16). To give or put to (ad-dēre, addidi, additum, *add*). To give or put round (circum-dāre, dēdi, dātum, *surround*). To stand-before (præ-stāre, præ-sūti, præstātum, *to be better, excel,—perform.—præstare se, show or prove oneself*). To promise-back (re-spondēre, re-spondi, sponsum: *generally to answer*). To learn thoroughly (ēdiscere, *learn by heart*). To touch-to (attingere, vīgi, tactum, *reach*).

⚔ OBS. Oc-cīdo, occīdi, oc-cāsum, *fall, perish—set* = (ob-cādo).

Oc-cīdo, oc-cīdi, oc-cīsum, *slay* = (ob-cædo).

VOCABULARY TO 12.

Word-building.]—I. *Abstract subst. from* diligens (*diligentia*, 61). *Adv. from sup. root of* stare (stat-im, 123, *immediately: that is, while you are standing where you are*¹). Act-of-going-within; passage into; entrance (intro-itus 44). To come-thoroughly (per-vēnīre, *arrive at*). To sit-against (ob-sīdēre, sēd, sess, *besiege*). To-hither, hither-to (ad-huc). Bravely, courageously, *from* fortis (*fortiter*, 121).

¹ So the Germans use *stehenden Fusses* (on standing foot) for *immediately*

[Go through the degrees of comparison of fortiter (fortius, fortissime).]

II. Exercise *from* exercit, *sup. root of* exercēre (exercitus, *that which is exercised ; army*). To climb-to, *from* scandere (ad-scendere: scend, scens). Ascent (ad-scensus, 44). One who says-law (jū-dex *for* jus-dex, 129). Judgment (ju-dicium, 137). To set-loose-from: free-from (absolvere; solv, solūt: *acquit*). Acquittal (ab-solūt-io, 43). To do-completely (con-ficere, fēc, fect: *put-an-end-to ; accomplish*).

VOCABULARY TO 13.

Word-building.]—I. *Abst. subst. from* multus (multitudo, 63). Commander, *from* imperare (imperator, *commander-in-chief*).¹ One who feeds, *from* past, *sup. root of* pascere (pastor). To cause flight, *from* fūga (fugare, *put-to-flight ; rout*). A little needle, *from* acus (aculeus: *thorn*, 66). Un-certain (in-certus).

Ater, *black*: atrare, *to make black*: atramentum *that which makes black ; or, is made black ; ink*.

[Vocabulary on Verbs forming their perfect in *si*.]

To write-down (de-scribere: *copy, describe*). To pluck-from (de-cerpere, cerps, cerpt: *pluck, gather*). To take-completely (con-sūmere, *consume, waste*). To wait-behind (re-mānere). To fore-tell (præ-dicere). To lead out (e-dūcere). To look-to (ad-spīcere, spex, spect: *behold*). To fix-through (trans-figere, *transfix*). To rule- or direct-out (e-rigere, rex, rect: *erect*). To un-cover; discover (de-tēgere). To shut-back; unshut (re-cludere, clūs, clus: *open*). To sprinkle-to (ad-spergere, spers, spers: *sprinkle*). To yield-back (re-cēdere, *retire, withdraw*). To press-against (op-prīmere, press, press: *oppress ; fall-upon an enemy unexpectedly with a crushing force*). To burn-completely (com-būr-ēre,² 7). To shake-thoroughly, *from* quatio (con-cūtēre, concutio, cuss, cuss, *to shake*).

¹ Given as a title to a *victorious* Roman general.

² The *b* belongs to the original root, as appears from our *burn*.

VOCABULARY TO 14.

Word-building.—I. To bestow in different directions, *from* tribuere (dis-tribuere). An Athenian, *from* Athēnæ (Athēniensis, 94).

Pro-vinc-ia, *province*—a country gained by *onward conquest*: pro, vincere.

II. To go-out (exire, ex-eo). A good-deed, benefit (beneficium, 139). To bind-down (de-vincire, *oblige*: bind a man by services rendered him). That which is dug out; trench, *from* foss, *sup. root of* fodere (foss-a).¹ Act or state of knowing; thing known, *from* nōt, *sup. root of* noscere (nōtio, *notion*).

VOCABULARY TO 15.

Word-building.—I. To go against or into (in-vādēre). Carthaginian, *from* Carthago (Carthaginiensis, 94). One who is in the state of having been taken (capt-ivus, 115, *captive*). Manliness, *from* vir (virtūs, 65: *courage, excellence, virtue*). Blandishment, *from* blandire, *verb from* blandus (blandimentum, 49). Body of citizens; state, *from* cīvis (cīvitas, 69). One who takes-first, *from* primus and capere (prin-ceps, 130; *prince, chief*: also as *adj.* *first*). *Subst. from* princeps, *to express the thing* (principium, *beginning*, 138). *Abst. subst. from* inops² (inopia, 61, *want of resources; want; destitution*). Muddy, *from* lutum, *mud* (lut-u-lentus, 103). To draw-together, (contrahere). Remains, *from* reliquus, *left* (reliquiæ). Inhabitant-of-a-town, *from* oppidum (oppidanus, 96).

II (1) Sta-gnum (that *which is of a standing nature*: sta-gēn-um. See 135, and note), *pool, pond*.

(2) Cācūmen [= acū-men, *from* acuere, *to sharpen* (see 48), with prefixed *c*], a *sharp, pointed summit*: *top of trees, &c.*

(3) Legatus (*past part. from* legare, *to delegate*),
(1) *an ambassador*, (2) *a lieutenant-general*.

II. One who belongs or is subject to death (mort-ālis,

¹ Properly fem. partic. agreeing with terra.

² Derivation of inops ? [in *not*; opes *resources*]

90). Emptiness, vanity, *from* vanus (vanitas, 60). Bitterness, *from* acerbus, *bitter* (acerbitas). That which is enjoyed, *from* fruct, *sup. root of* fruor (fruct-us, 44: *produce, fruit, especially of trees*). To bend-inwards (in-flectere, *bend-down; bend*). To shine-back; or shine much (re-fulgère, *shine*). Conspiracy, *from* con-jurare, *to-swear-together* (con-juratio).¹ Relating to Catiline² (Catilin-arius; *Catilinarian, or Catiline's, gen.*). Change, *from* mutare to *change* (mutatio). To flow-together (con-fluere). To send-together (com-mittere).

Committere praelium (to send the battle together—followed by *cum*) may be variously rendered: to *join battle with: to engage; to commence the engagement; to give battle* (to), &c.

Jug-um (that which *joins* or *is joined*, *from* jug, simpler root of *jungere*) (1) *yoke*, (2) *range*, i. e. *connected line, a chain* (of hills, &c.)

[Vocab. on some Verbs with perf. *ui* and *vi*.]

Compound of ad and tonare (at-tonare: part. attonitus, *thunder-struck; astounded*). To be very-silent, *from* tacere (re-ticere, *to be silent about; say nothing-about*).³ To hold-back (re-tinere; also *retain*). To snatch out of (eripere, *ripiui, reptum*).

VOCABULARY TO 16.

Word-building.]—I. *From what does cubile, bed, couch, come?* (cub-are, *to lie down*.) *Form an abstr. substantive from milit, root of miles, soldier* (militia, 61; *miles* being an *adjective-substantive*). Uncultivated, *from* cultus, *part. of* colo (in-cultus, *rude, uncivilized*). Draw-forth; draw-out (pro-dūcere). Stroke, *from* ict, *sup. root of* icere, *to-strike* (ictus, 44).

Illustis (in-luc-stris, *dwelling-in-light*, 112), *illustrious*. Lacunar, *a panelled ceiling*,⁴ usually *gilt* from lacuna, *a hole*, *from its sunk panels*.

¹ Derivation of con-spiracy? [Con-spirare, *to breathe together*.]

² Catiline was a profligate Roman nobleman.

³ To hold one's tongue, *when one has something to say*, D. The re- may perhaps indicate that the speaking would have been in *reply* to some conduct, charge, &c., of another person.

⁴ Or a fret-work roof.

II. *Abstr. subst. from libet* (lib-īdo, 46, lust). To sound-back-again (re-sonare, *resound*). Clamor; shouts, *from clamare* (clam-or, 42). Boyish, *from puer* (puerilis, 89). Joy; gladness, *from lætus* (lætiūa, 62). Blame, *subst. from reprehens*, *sup. root of reprehendere* (reprehensio). To make a present, *from don-um* (donare, *to present*). Fearful; timorous, *from pav-ēre* (pav-idus, 82). One who has fled-across, *from trans and fugere* (trans-fūga, 58: *deserter*).

On high, *in sublime, or sublime only*.¹

VOCABULARY TO 17.

Word-building.]—*Subst. from audāc*, *root of audax*, bold, daring (audacia, boldness, daringness, courage). Immortality, *from mortalis* (im-mortalitas). Prudence, *from the adj. prudens* (prudentia). That which is paid, *neut. partic. from tribuere* (tributum: tribute). To place-on: impose (im-ponere). *Adj. from Cannæ* (Cannensis, 94). Of gold; golden, *from aurum* (aureus, 98). To have-often, *from habere* (habit-are, 35: hence *to occupy regularly: to dwell-in*). Consolation, *from solāt*, *root of solari* (solatium, 56). To give-forth (pro-mittere: hence *to promise*). *Verbal subst. from in, against, and petere, to seek, aim at, &c.* (impētus; which is singular in not being formed from the root of the *supine*: it is of the fourth).

Jūmentum (for *jug-mentum*,² an animal that is yoked), a beast of burden.

Viam terere, *to wear a road: to travel it often*.

II. A contest, *from certare*³ (certamen, 48). Age, *from vetus* (vetustas, 60). To move-from, *from cedere* (decēdēre).

Sermo (related to *serere*, to connect), *discourse*.

VOCABULARY TO 18.

Word-building.]—I. To grow-down (de-crescere, *decrease: of the moon, to wane*). To burst-forth, (prorumpere). Youth, *as abstr. subst. from juvenis* (juven-tūs, tūtis, 65)

¹ Cicero always used *sublime* without *in*.

² Or possibly for *juga-mentum* or *jut-mentum*, a help; an animal used by man to assist him in his labors. The derivation from *jugum* is the more probable one.

³ *Certare* is properly *to make sure, from certus*; a contest being for the settling of some disputed point.

Old-age, *from* senex (senectūs,¹ tūtis). *To leave-from* (delinquere, *to sin, transgress*. Hence, delictum, a *sin; a transgression*). The office of Consul (Consulatus, G. us; 68: *consulship*).

II. *To grow cool, from* ferverescere, *to grow hot* (de-fervescere, ferbui and fervi). Without care (secūrus, 23). *Abstr. subst from* concors (concordia; *concord, harmony*). *To place-back, from* statuere (restituere, stitu, stitūt, *restore*). Long, *as adj. from* diu, *for a long time* (diuturnus, 117). *To burst-completely* (cor-rumpere, 7: *corrupt*). *To drive-under, from* agere (sub-igere, *subdue*). Wickedness, *from the anomalous adj.* nequam, *wicked* (nequitia). *To give-away* (de-dere; dedere se, *to give oneself up to, &c. : to surrender*).

Quantopere (quanto opere: *with how much work*), *how much*. Securus ago, *I live in security* (vitam, *life, understood*). Neg-otium (nec-otium, *not leisure*), *business, affair*.

VOCABULARY TO 19.

Word-building.]—I. *Writer, from* scribere (scriptor, *author*). *Writing* (scriptum, *neut. partic.*). *To stand-out* (ex-stare, -stiti, *to be extant*). *Abstr. substantive from* elegans (elegantia). *To yield-thoroughly* (concedere). Truly, *from* verus, *true* (verē). That which is sharpened; point, *from* acuere (acūmen, 48: *sharpness, acuteness*). *Abstr. substantives from* utilis, innocens (utilitas, *utility, usefulness, use*; innocentia, *innocence*). *To show-from* (de-monstrare: *to show, to prove*). *Adj. from* domus, *home* (domesticus, *domestic, private*). *Relating to a family* (familiaris). *Joking, from* joci (jocundus, 80). *Abstr. substantives from* gravis and severus (gravitas, *gravity*; severitas, *seriousness*). *To place-together* (componere, *arrange, adjust*). *Oratorical* (oratorius). *To dis-connect, from* serere, *to join* (dis-serere, *to discuss*: the object of a discussion being to *separate* a thing from what it was mixed and confounded with). *To place-before* (pro-ponere). *To establish-in* (instituere, stitu, stitūt: *to institute; to train*). *Abstr. subst. from* or-iri, *to arise* (origo, 47, *origin*). *To draw-down* (de-ducere, *to con-*

¹ Which seems to show that the gen. was originally senec-is.

tinue in unbroken order to a lower point; *continue*). Relating to citizens, *from* civis (civilis, 89: *civil*). To cast under, *from* jacere (sub-jicere, jēc, ject). To conquer-down (de-vincere, *conquer*). To become illustrious, *from* clarus (claresco; inclaresco; -clarui, *become famous*).

Res gestæ, affairs carried on; *exploits, achievements, successes*.

Modo—modo, *at one time—at another: or now—now*.

Ad—usque, *quite up to: up to; or down to*.¹

II. To become known, *from* nôt, *sup. root of* nosco (notesco; in-notesco, notui). To commission-together, i. e. to bring together by a charge given to each, *from* mandare² (com-mendare, *to recommend; to introduce by a commendatory letter, &c.*) To touch-together, *from* tangere (contin-gere, -tīgi, as intrans. *to fall-to-the-lot-of*).³ A turning, *from* vertere (versus, *a verse*).⁴ To knock against, *from the old verb* fendere, (offendere, *offend*). Fertility, *from* uber, *fertile* (ubertas, 60).

VOCABULARY TO 20.

Word-building.]—I. To come-forth (pro-vēnire, *to grow*). To enlighten-completely, *from* lustrare (collustrare). To send-down (de-mittere). To-strengthen-thoroughly, *from* firmare (con-firmare).

II. A little-brother (fratercūlus, 66). To make free, *from* liber (līberare). *Form* proudly, *from* superbus, *proud* (superbē):—unjustly, *from* in-justus (in-justē):—bitterly, *from* acerbus, *bitter* (acerbē). *Form an intensive from* tract, *sup. root of* trahere (tractare, *to treat*). To despise-completely, *from* temnere (contemnere, temps, tempt). Asking, question, *from* interrogare (interrogatio).

By sea and land, terrâ marique.

To wrong a man, or do a wrong-to, aliquem injuriâ afficere.

Unless I am deceived, nisi animus me fallit.

¹ Derivation of *publicus*? [populicus, pop'licus.]

² If mando = manus do, commendare is to bring together by putting one in the other's hands.

See Syn. 4.

⁴ This alludes to the old way of turning back at the end of a line, and writing the opposite way.

VOCABULARY TO 21.

Word-building.]—I. *Form abstr. subst. from super-stit,* root *superstes*¹ (*super-stitio*). To have- a thing -forth, *that is away from, from habere* (*prohibere, hibu, hibit; to ward-off, prevent*). Knowledge; *from cognit, sup. root of cognoscere* (*cognitio*). Piety, *from pius* (*pietas, 60*).² Not to know, *from scire* (*ne-scire*). To be-waiting-on, *or against, from manere* (*imminere*). It stands-before (*præstat, it is better*). Not friendly, *from amicus* (*in-imicus, hostile: as subst. enemy*). Believable, *from credere* (*credibilis, credible*). Incredible (*incredibilis*).

Prorsus (*pro-versus, for-wards*), *thoroughly, quite*.

Utinam³ (*uti-nam*) *would that* (with subj.).

II. It falls-to, *from cadere* (*accidit, it happens, it happened*). To drive-into (*impellere; pūl, puls: impel*). To give-forth (*pro-dere, didi, ditum, betray*). To cultivate thoroughly (*ex-colere, cultivate*). To come-together (*convēnire, trans. to visit*). Verb of the first conjug. *from vigil, awake* (*vigilare, to be awake; to watch*). Cruelly, *from crudelis* (*crudeliter*).³ From-thence (*de-inde, thenceforth; then*). To-thither (*ad-eo, so*). Knowledge, *from sciens, knowing* (*scientia: conscientia; consciousness, conscience*).

VOCABULARY TO 22.

Word-building.]—I. Strong, *from robur, strength* (*robustus, 109*). To give or put together (*condere, didi, ditum, (1) to hide, (2) to found*). To speak-against (*contradicere, contradict*). To make-forward (*pro-ficere, fēc, fect, to make progress*).

Quo-mōdo (in what manner), *how*.

Iterum, a second time; once more; again.

Nihil curare, not to care at all.

Succensere, *to be angry*, does not come from *cen-seo*, but from *succensus*, kindled, *part. of succendē e*. just as *denseo*, from *densus*.

¹ *Superstes* was perhaps used absolutely, as *superstes sui*, one who has survived himself: hence *superstitio* expresses the childish weakness of such a person.

² *Uti* is 'that,' and *nam* is a strengthening affix, added to many interrogatives, &c. Hence *utinam* is properly, 'that it were so!' 'Oh that it were so!'

³ Give the degrees of comparison of *crudeliter* [*crudelius, crudelissime*].

II. To run-against (oc-currere, *to meet*). To come-to (ad-venire). To be wondered-at; *from* mirari (mirabilis.)

How short, *quam brevis, -e.*

Negligere (=nec legere, *not to pick up*), *to neglect; disregard.*

Insidiæ (in-sedēre), *a sitting down against a man; a plot, &c.*

Insidias struere, *to waylay, plot against, &c.*

VOCABULARY TO 23.

Word-building.]—I. Relating to Marius; Marius's (Marianus). One who is opposite, *from* adversus (adversarius). To act as a minister (ministrare: administrare, *to administer*). Worth, *from* dignus, *worthy* (dignitas, *dignity*). To hold-against, i. e. *against other claimants or opponents* (obtinēre, *obtain*). To establish-completely, *from* statuere (constituere, stitu, stitūt; *resolve, determine*). Envy, *from* invīdēre, *to see into or against* (invidia). That which is enjoyed, *from* fruct, *sup. root of* frui (fructus, *profit, advantage*). To press-in, *from* premere (im-primere, *impress*). To receive-thoroughly (per-cipere, cep, cept, *to receive*).

Per-pet-uus, *perpetual*: *from* per and petere (in the meaning of *to aim at; to endeavor, to arrive at*), that which is (*throughout* =) *ever endeavoring to arrive at some object.*

II. To take-away-quite, ¹ *from* emere, *to take* (per-imere, ēm, empt: *to carry off, spoken of diseases, &c.*) To make-thoroughly (efficere, fēc, fect: *bring to pass; cause*). Abounding in leisure, *from* otium (otiosus). To hold-together, *from* tenēre (continēre, *keep, detain*).

To speak the truth, verum dicere.

Voluntas (volo, *am willing*), *will.*

Re-cūsare (re-caus-are), *to give causes or excuses against: to refuse.*

VOCABULARY TO 24.

Word-building.]—I. *Form an intensive from* occult, *sup root of* occulere, *to hide* (occultare, *to hide*). To take-from

Or per has here a *depravative* meaning: *to take away prematurely, by bad means, &c*

(de-cipere, io, cēp, cept, *deceive*). *Abstr. subst. from pot-root of the obsolete potis, able (potestas, power)*. To send-away (a-mittere, *to lose*). Freedom, *from liber, free (libertas)*. To fall-into, *from cadere (in-cidere, cīd)*. To throw-across (trā-jicere, jēc, ject: *to cross—army being understood*). To fly-away (au-fugere, io.) Otherwise, *from ali, root of alius (aliter)*.

Re-cuperare, *related to cap-ere, recover*.

II. Very-narrow, *by adding a prefix to angustus (per-angustus)*. To choose-out, *from legere (e-ligere, lēg, lect)*. To go-out, i. e. *out of the way of (e-vadere, vās, vās)*.

Ef-fig-ies (*ex and fig, shorter root of fingere, to fashion, a likeness; a statue*).

VOCABULARY TO 25.

Word-building.]—I. To have-to (ad-hibere, ui, itum: *use, employ*). Sorrow, *from mœrere (mœror, 42)*. Repentance, *from pœnitens (pœnitentia)*. Adv. *from vehemens (vehementer, violently, earnestly)*. Give its degrees of comparison (vehementius, vehementissime). Madness, rage, *from furere (furor, 42)*. To excite-completely, *from cit, sup. root of ciere (con-citare: to excite, rouse)*. To hold-from (abs-tinere, *abstain from*). Not easy, difficult, *from facilis (dif-ficilis, 10)*. To judge, *from judic, root of judex (judicare, to judge)*. A sin, *neut. part. from peccare (peccatum)*.

Cautus, *cautious; from caut, sup. root of cavere, to beware*.

E-mend-are (e, mendum, *blemish, fault*), *to remove a fault*. Emendatissimus *most nearly faultless*.

Quam-vis (*how-you-please: vis, 2d sing. from volo, however; however much; although*).

Tan-quam (tam-quam, *so—as, as if*).

II. Valuable, *from pretium (pretiosus, precious)*. Beauty, *from pulchr- (pulchr-itudo)*. Bountifulness, goodness, *from benignus (benignitas)*. Clemency, mercy, *from clemens (clementia)*. To stand-through (per-stare, stit, stat: *persist*). To do-enough (satis-facere, *satisfy*). Adv. *from facilis (facile)*.

Quidni? (*quid-ni, what unless?*) *why not? why should we not?*

Quanquam (*quam-quam*), *although*.

VOCABULARY TO 26.

Word-building.—I. To bridle, *from* frenum, *bridle* (frenare). Bridled-out, i. e. having the bridle let loose (ef-frenatus: *unbridled*). Passionateness, *from* iracundus, *passionate* (iracundia: *anger*, as a *temper* of which *ira* is one outbreak). Relating to Varius; of Varius (Varianus). To cry-out (ex-clamare). Lightness, frivolity, *from* lēvis, *light* (levitas). Hungry, *from* fames, *hunger* (famelicus, *starving*). To allot-back, to give-back (re-tribuere). To stretch-on (in-tendere, tend, tens: *exert*).

Centurio (centum, *a hundred*), an officer over 100 men: *a centurion*.

Aciem instruere, *to draw up in line of battle*.

Retribuere gratiam (*to return gratitude*), *to recompense*.

II. To begin to be completely well, *from* valēre (convalescere, 36). One-who-wishes-well (bene-vōlus, *benevolent, beneficent*). *Abstr. subst. from* benevolus (benevolentia, *as if from* bene-volens). *Abstr. subst. from* honestus (honestas, *good-conduct*). Suddenly, *from* sūbitus (subito).

Quam primum, *as soon as possible*.

VOCABULARY TO 27.

Word-building.—I. Dwelling in heaven, heavenly, *from* cælum (cælestis, 110). Relating to man, human, *from* hom-o (humanus). Not-pious, impious (impius). To learn-to (ad-discere, *to learn something additional*).

Invicem (in vicem), *mutually; to be rendered 'one another.'*

II. Cultivation, *from* cult, *sup. root of* colere (cultūra). One who dwells-in, *from* colere (in-cōla, *inhabitant*).

Æque ac, (*equally and =*) *equally as; just as; as much as; as*.

Colonus (*from* colere), *farmer*.

VOCABULARY TO 28.

Word-building.]—I. To grow-ripe, to ripen, *from* *maturus* (*maturescere*). That which nourishes, *from* *nutrire* (*nutrimentum, nourishment*). Cultivator, *from sup. root of* *colere* (*cult-or*). Strong, *from* *val-ēre* (*validus*, 104). Compassion, *from* *misericors* (*misericordia*). Inconsiderateness, *from* *considerans*, *partic. of* *considerare* (*in-considerantia*). Not-never (*non-nunquam, sometimes*). To come around (*circum-venire, circumvent*). *Adv. from* *segnis* (*segniter*). To restrain-together, *from* *arcēre* (*co-ercēre*). To make-crowded, *from* *frequent*, *root of* *frequens* (*frequentare, to frequent*).

Illecēbra (*il-licēre, entice*), *enticement, allurement*.

Auctumnus (*from* *auct, sup. root of* *aug-ēre, to increase*), *Autumn*.¹

II. To cover-about (*ob-tegere, to cover*). *Adv. from* *lætus* (*lætē*). To blossom-forth (*ef-florescere, put forth their blossoms*). To make-ripe or ripen, *from* *maturus* (*maturare*). To devour-down (*de-vorare, consume*). Difficulty (*difficultas*). To snatch-away, *from* *rapere* (*ab-ripere*).

VOCABULARY TO 29.

Word-building.]—I. To take-back (*re-cip-ere, cēp, cept, recover*).

From *statuere, to place, establish, form compounds with in, con* (*instituerē; constituere*).

Re-med-ium (*re and med, root of* *mederi, to heal*), *remedy*

II. To hold-a-different-way-from (*distinēre, withhold, prevent*). To leave-behind (*re-linquēre, liqu, lict*). To make-common, *from* *vulg-us* (*vulg-are*). To make common in different directions (*di-vulgare, divulge*). To do-to (*afficēre, fec, fect*). *Form intensive from* *vent, sup. root of* *venire* (*ventare: ad-ventare, to be approaching*) To pray-out (*ex-orare, to prevail upon by prayers*).

¹ NOTE. The names of the months are *adjectives*: hence 'in the month of January,' *mensē Januario*.

To hold-up (*sus-tinēre, sustain*).

Form intensive from sup. root of jacēre (jactaro).

To draw up an army in order of battle, *aciem instruere (strux, struct)*.

As quickly as possible, *quam celerrime*.

VOCABULARY TO 30.

Word-building.]—I. To go-back (*red-ire; red-eo: re-turn*). To make obscure, *from obscurus (obscurare)*. To lead-to (*ad-dūcere*). To send-back (*re-mittere, remit*). To cast-back, *from jacēre (re-jicere, reject)*. To choose-apart (*di-ligere, lēg, lect, to love, i. e. with preference*). Very-illustrious, *from clarus (præ-clarus, 18)*.

Im-bēcillis (in, upon; bacillum, staff, stick), weak.

Su-spicio (a looking under, to see if any thing is concealed; or, a looking secretly), suspicion.

II. To be very earnest, *from per-sevērus (perseverare, intrans. to persist, persevere)*. Born-together (*co-gnatus,¹ related; as subst. relation*). To dis-connect, *from sērere (de-serere, -rui, -rtum, desert)*. To place-behind (*post-ponere, posu, posit*). To laugh-down (*deridēre, rīs, rīs, deride*). To lead-away (*de-ducere*). To remain-through-out (*per-manēre, mans: continue*). To fight-against (*im-pugnare*). Diligently, *from diligens (diligenter)*. Standing, *from stare (statio, military post).²* To place in different directions (*disponere, arrange, dispose*). To cast back (*re-jicere, io: of an enemy, drive back*).

Lābefactare (labare, facere), to make to totter

VOCABULARY TO 31.

Word-building.]—I. Abounding in fables (*fābulosus, fabulous*). Having much of fair appearance, *from species (speci-osus, specious, plausible)*. To give completely (*condonare, to pardon, to grant*). Deceitful, *from fallere (fallax, 85)*. To give-across, *from dare (trā-dere, dīd, dit: to deliver)*. To weave-together (*con-texere, -xui, -xtum, in-*

¹ *Gnatus*, part. of *gnascor*, the older form of *nascor*: *gnascor = genascor*: with root *gen*, as in *γίγας, γεννᾶν*, &c.

² 'Guards' may be translated by *stationes*.

terweave). *Abstr. subst. from pravus (prāvitās)*. 'To do in (in-ficere, *to stain*). Injustice, *from in-justus (in-justitia)*.

De-lir-are (*lira, a furrow*), *to go out of the furrow* : hence *to be foolish, crazy, &c.*

Prorsus (*pro-versus, for-wards*), *entirely, quite*.

Quam primum, *as soon as possible*.

II. Custom, *from consuet, sup. root of con-suescere (con-suetudo)*. Exercising; exercise, *from exercitare, intensive from exercēre (exercitatio)*. To strengthen-completely, *from robor, root of robur, strength (cor-roborare)*. Liberality, *from liberalis (liberalitas)*. To move-completely (*com-mōvēre*). To strike-to (*af-fligere, flix, flict*). To make a heap, *from cumulus (cumulare)*. To press-against, *from prēmere (op-primere, press, oppress)*. To make a number, to count, *from numerus (numerare)*. To reckon-to (*ad-numerare, to reckon-amongst*).

VOCABULARY TO 32.

Word-building.]—I. To make a race, *from gener, root of genus (generare, to beget)*. Severity, gravity, *from sevērus (severitas)*. Dwelling on the earth (*terrestris*). To join-apart (*sejungere, separate*). To make an end, *from terminus (terminare, end, terminate)*.

Rē-fert = *rei, fert, i. e. ad rem fert*; it bears to the matter, *is of importance, &c.*

Inter-est, *it is between*; so, that is, as to make a difference : *it matters, concerns, is of importance*.

II. To make firm (*firmare*). To take back, *from prehendere, to seize hold of (re-prehendere, blame)*.

II. Guards in this exercise is to be translated by *excubiæ*; force by *præsidium*.

Excubiæ (*ex. out; cubare, to lie*), *a watch, a body of guards watching*.

Præ-sid-ium (*præ, before, sedēre, to sit—that which sits before to protect*).

VOCABULARY TO 33.

Word-building.]—Con-nūbium (con-nubere, *to marry*) marriage. Pro-miscuous (pro ; misc-eo, *mix*), *that which is mixed forth ; promiscuous, mixed.*

Re-nov-are, *to re-new.*

VOCABULARY TO 34.

Word-building.]—I. To do-thoroughly (con-ficere : *pass. confici, to be worn-out*).

Com-mōdus (con, modus, *manner*), *convenient, suitable, &c. : neut. an advantage.*

II. *Form intensive from oblect, sup. root of ob-licere (oblectare, to delight, beguile). To entice thoroughly (pel-licere, lex, lect, entice).*

VOCABULARY TO 35.

Word-building.]—Act of ruling, *from dominari, to rule (dominatio, rule, dominion). Adv. from publicus, public (publice, publicly, at the public expense). To frighten away (de-terrere, deter). Not good, wicked, from probus (im-prōbus).*

Res-publica (see p. 136, 128).

VOCABULARY TO 36.

Word-building.]—I. To cast under, *from jacere (sub-jicere, jec, ject : subject, subdue). To make myself turned-towards, from ad-versus, turned towards, partic. of ad-vertere (adversari : to stand opposite to ; to oppose). To give help, from auxilium, help (auxiliari, to help, to assist). To make myself a companion, from comit,¹ root of comes, companion (comitari). Trans. deponent verb from insidiæ, a plot (insidiari, to plot against). Trans. verb from numerus, number (numerare, to count, to number). Trans. deponent verb from gloria (gloriari, to boast). Trans. verb from labor (laborare, to labor ; to be in distress).*

¹ From 'com' with, it, sup. root of ire, to go.

II. To make prosperous, *from secundus, favorable (secundare)*. Return, *from redit, sup. root of redeo (reditus, ūs)*.

To give a prosperous return, *reditum secundare*
It goes ill with me, *in rebus adversis versor*.

VOCABULARY TO 37.

Word-building.]—I. Ungrateful, *from gratus (ingratus)*. Thing promised, promise, *from promittere (promissum)*. Dearness, *from cārus, dear (caritas, affection)*.

Justum praelium, *a pitched battle (i. e. not a mere skirmish)*.

II. *Subst. to express the act, from rapere (raptus, ūs, rape, robbery)*. To rise to or against (*adoriri, adort, to fall on, to attack*). *Adv. from communis (communiter)*. To make sound, *from sanus (sanare, to heal)*.

To be named joint-king, *in consortium regni adscisci (perf. adscitus sum)*.

VOCABULARY TO 38.

Word-building.]—I. Moderation : *from temperans (temperantia)*. Intemperance (*in-temperantia*). In-active, *from ignavus, active (i-ignavus, sluggish, slothful)*. Sloth, sluggishness, *from ignavus (ignavia, indolence, weakness of the will)*. *Subst. to express the act from remittere (remissio, remission)*.

To plead a cause, *causam dicere*.

Condemned to death, *capite damnatus (condemned by the head)*. Also, *capitis damnatus*.

II. Not-never (*non-nunquam, sometimes*). To connect from or dis-connect, *i. e. from myself, from serere (deserere, seru, sert), to desert*.

VOCABULARY TO 39.

Word-building]—I. *Abstr. subst. from integr, root of integer, whole (integritas, wholeness, entireness—integrity, uprightness)*. To do-completely, *from facere (con-ficere,*

accomplish, complete). *Abstr. subst. from curs, sup. root of currere, to run* (cursus, ūs, *course*). To take-to, *from capere* (ac-cipere, cep, cept : *to receive*). Cultivation, *from cult, sup. root of colere* (cultus, *civilization*).

In-scitia (in, *not* : scire, *to know*), *ignorance*.

Con-stat (*it stands together, as a consistent fact*), *it is well known, allowed, &c.*

II. One who oppresses, *from oppress, sup. root of opprimere* (oppressor, *oppressor*).

VOCABULARY TO 40.

Word-building.]—I. *Adv. from accuratus* (accurate, *accurately*). Give its degrees of comparison (accuratius, accuratissime). To touch-to, *from tangere, (at-tingere, attig, attact, to touch, to attain, to reach)*. *Abstr. subst. from elegans* (elegantia).

Verum attingere, to hit or arrive at the truth.

Audita (*things heard*) may be translated by a relative sentence : '*what he had heard.*'

II. To rattle-against, *from crepare* (in-crepare, *to scold*). To read-through, *from legere* (per-legere, lēg, lect).

V. QUESTIONS

ON

THE LATIN ACCIDENCE.

Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the page and paragraph.

To what question does the *nom.* answer? (To *who* or *what* with the verb.) To what question does the *gen.* answer? (To *whose?* of *what?*) To what question does the *dat.* answer? (To *for whom* or *what?* to *whom* or *what?*) To what question does the *acc.* after the verb answer? (To *whom?* or *what?* with the verb and its *nom.* case.) How is the *voc.* known? (The vocative denotes the person addressed by name: it is generally *stopped off* by commas.) To what questions does the *abl.* answer? (To the questions *with what?* *by what?* *when?* and *whence?* sometimes to *on what?* *from what?* *at what?* *in what?*) To what question does the *abl.* answer after a comparative? (To *than what?*)

When are nouns called common? (When they are used as *mas.* or *fem.* according as *males* or *females* are spoken of.) When are nouns called *epicene*? (When they are always of *one* gender, which cannot be altered to specify the sex.) *How then can the sex be specified?* (By adding *mas* or *femina*.)

Go through: *Musa*—*Magister*—*Puer*—*Dominus*—*Regnum*—*Nubes*—*Lapis* (*root*, *lapid*)—*Opus* (*root*, *oper*, *neut.*)—*Parens* (*root*, *parent*)—*Gradus*, *Facies*. What is the *voc.* of *Virgilius* (131)? of *filius* (131)? What cases are always alike in neuters? In what letter do these cases end in the plural?

What is the gender of nouns of the first (128) Mention some plurals of the first that have a sing. meaning (129·29).

Mention some nouns of the first whose dat. and abl. plural is *abus*. (*Dea, domina, filia, anima, equa, asina, famula, liberta, mula, socia, serva.*) Go through *pater-familias*. (*G. patris-familias: D. patri-familias, and so on. Familias* is an old *gen.*) What form of the gen. sing. is found in poetry? (*Ai—as aulāi.*) What form of the gen. plur. is sometimes found? (*Um* for *arum.*)

What is the gender of nouns of the second (130)? Give the exceptions (130). Mention some nouns in *er* that do not throw away the *e* (130, 33). Go through *domus* (136, 52) Mention some nouns of the *sec.* that are used in the plur. only. (*Castra, a camp; fasti, the calendar; and some names of towns: Veii, Gabii, &c.*) Go through *vir*.

What terminations are mas. in the third (132)? what fem. (132)? what neuter (132)? What peculiarities have neuters in *e, al, ar* (126, 13)? What nouns take *ium* in gen. plur. (126, 12)? What *monosyllables* take gen. in *um* (127)? What exceptions are there to the rule that nouns in *is, es, er*, not increasing in gen., take *ium* (127)? What is generally the acc. of *aēr, æther*? (*Aera, æthera.*)

What is the gender of nouns of the fourth (135)? Give the exceptions. How did this declension arise (135)? What words have *ubus* in dat. plur.?

[*Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus, Et tribus, et partus, specus, adde veruque pecuque.* (Zumpt.)]

What is the gender of nouns of the fifth (136)? What is the only exception? When must *dies* be mas (136)? When is *e* in *ei* long (136, 56)?

ADJECTIVES.

Go through the terminations of adjectives of three terminations (137, 65).

Go through *bonus, tener, unus*. When only has *unus* a plural? (When used with a noun that has no singular.) What declension do adjectives of three terminations follow in the *mas.*? in the *fem.*? in the *neut.*?

What is the *abl.* of *tristis*? the *neut. plur.*? the *gen.*

plur. (138, 70)? What is the *neut.* of comparatives? the *abl. sing.*? the *neut. plur.*? the *gen. plur.* (138, 71)? Go through *amans* (loving), *vetus*, *felix*. What is the *abl. sing.* of *participles* in *ns*, when used as such? Which term. of *abl.* is the more common in *adj.* (139, 73)? What adjectives have *e* only (139, 74)? Go through the terminations of an *adj.* in *is*; a *comparative*: an *adj.* of *one* termination (140). In comparatives is *e* or *i* the more common term of *abl.*? (*e* in the best writers).¹ What adjectives very rarely, if ever, take *e* in the *abl.*? (Those in *-x*, *-cors*, *-ceps*: together with *par*, *memor*, *iners*, *ingens*, *inops*, *recens*, *teres*, &c.) Go through *duo*, *ambo*², *tres* (142). Go through *acer* (139). Go through *plus* (141, note).

Go through *senex* (141). What adjectives have *gen. in ius* (138, 68)? Go through *uterque* (each); *unusquisque* (141) Go through *alius* (138). What is the *gen.* of *alter* (another, of two—)? Go through *summus mons*, *ima quercus*, *reliquum opus* (141, 78). What is the *Eng.* of *media aquæ* (*nom. plur.*)? of *extremus liber*?

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. [PAGE 143.]

How is the *comparative* formed? (By adding *ior* to the *root.*) How is the *superlative* formed? (By adding *issimus* to the *root.*) How do *ads.* in *er* form their *superlatives*? (By adding *rimus* to *nom.*) What adjectives in *is* make *superl.* in *limus*? (*Facilis*, *agilis*, *similis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*; with *difficilis*, *dissimilis*, of course.) How do adjectives in *ficus*, *dicus*, *völus*, from *facio*, *dico*, *volo*, form *comp.* and *superl.*? (In *entior*, *entissimus*.) What is *superl.* of *vetus*, *nuperus*? (*Veterrimus*, *nuperrimus*.) Of *maturus*? (*Maturrissimus* or *maturrimus*.) Give the degrees of comparison of *bonus*: (*melior*, *optimus*)—*malus*: (*pejor*, *pessimus*)—*magnus*: (*major*, *maximus*)—*parvus*: (*minor*, *minimus*)—*multus*: (*plus*, *neut.*; *plurimus*)—*dives*: (*divitior*, *divitissimus*, or *ditior*, *ditissimus*)—of *nequam*, indecl. (*nequior*, *nequissimus*)—*exterus* (*exterior*, *extremus* and *extimus*)—*in-*

¹ Cicero and Livy form *abl.* of comparatives in *e* rather than *i*. In later writers: is the more common ending. (Billroth.)

² Like *duo*.

ferus (inferior, infimus or imus)—*superus* (superior, supremus or summus). What *compar.* and *superlat.* are related in meaning to the adv. *intus*? (interior, intimus)—to *citra*? (citerior, citimus)—to *ultra*? (ulterior, ultimus)—to *prope*? (propior, proximus)—to the Greek word *ὠκύς*, *swift*? (ocior, ocissimus.) What is the *superl.* of *prior*? (primus)—the comp. of *juvenis*? (junior)—of *senex*? (senior.) When must the comparison be formed by *magis*, *maxime*? (When the adj. ends in *us* pure.) When may an adjective in *us*, pure, form its comparison regularly? (When *qu*, which sounds like *kw*, precedes *us*: as, *antiquus*, *iniquus*.) What is used for the comparative of an adverb derived from an adjective? (The neuter of the comparative adjective.) What is the superlative of such an adverb? (It is formed by adding *ē* to the root of the superlative adjective.)

THE NUMERALS. [Page 142.]

What are *cardinal* numbers? (Those that answer to, *how many*?) What *ordinals*? (Those that mark the place that any individual holds in a series.) What *distributives*? (Those that answer to, *how many apiece*?) Are cardinal numbers declinable? (From 4 to 100 *not*: the names of the *hundreds* are, *ducenti*, *trecenti*, &c. *Mille* is indecl. as an *adj.*: but as a *subst.* has plur. *millia*, *ium*, *ibus*, &c.) Are the ordinals and distributives declinable? (Yes.) Give the first ten numerals in the three series; and the num. adverbs answering to *how many times* (142). Give them from 10 to 20 (172).

Give the Latin for 20: for 18. Do the '*teens*' end in *decim* or *decem*? Give the Latin for 11th, 12th, 13th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st. Give the Latin for *eleven apiece*, *twelve apiece*, *thirteen apiece*, *twenty apiece*. What is the difference between cardinals in *ginta* and in *genti*? (Those in *ginta* are so many *tens*; those in *genti* so many *hundreds*.) Between ordinals in *cesimus*, *gesimus*, and those in *centesimus*, *gentesimus*? (Those in *cesimus*, *gesimus*, are so many *tens*; those in *centesimus*, *gentesimus*, so many *hundreds*.) Do the distributives in *cenī*, *genī*, belong to *tens* or *hundreds*? (To *both*.) Is there any difference of form between them? (Yes: the *hundreds* are added to a root end-

ing in a consonant, except in *triceni, trecenti*, where the form with *e*, *treceni*, belongs to *hundreds*.)

Turn into Latin 366, (143, Obs. 2.)

What are the forms for 1000, 2000, &c.? (*Mille, millesimus, milleni*,¹ or *singula millia, millies*; and then: *bis mille, bis millesimus, bina millia, bis millies*, &c.) How are the intermediate forms supplied? (By the combination of two forms: *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*, one and twenty; or, twenty-one: but the forms *duode-*, *unde-*, are mostly used for the two before every ten or hundred.)

With what sort of words are the *distributives* used as *cardinals*? (With subst. used in plur. only: *binæ literæ, two letters*: but *uni* is used, not *singuli*: and *trini*, not *terni*.)

PRONOUNS. [Page 144.]

Go through: *ego, tu, sui*.—*meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*. What is voc. mas. of *meus*? (*Mi*.) What syllable is often appended to *strengthen* the pers. pron.? (*Met: egomet, mihimet, temet*.) What is appended to the nom. of *tu*? (*Te: tute*.) How is the acc. *se* strengthened? (By doubling, *sese*.) How is *own* strongly expressed? [By adding gen. *ipsius*¹ to *poss.* pron. or (to the abl.) the syll. *pte* in *suapte, suapte*, (not in Cicero,) for *suo ipsius, sua ipsius*.]

Go through, *is*: through *ille, iste*, (as if from *illus, istus, a, ud, G. ius*, &c.) Go through *idem*. What is the difference between mas. and neut. sing. of *idem*? (The neut. has *i*: the mas. *ī*.) Go through *qui*; through *quis*. When has *quis* fem. sing. and neut. plur. *qua*? (Generally after *si, ne, num*.) What is neut. sing. of the compounds of *qui* and *quis* indef.? (*Quid* and *quod*; of which the forms in *quid* are used, when the noun they refer to is not expressed.) What is the neut. of *quis, who*? (*Quid*.) Go through *aliquis, quidam, quivis, quicunque*, (which has only *quodcunque* in neut.) *quispiam, quilibet, quisquam*. Go through *quisquis, quicquid*, abl. fem. *quaqua*. Nom. plur. *quique*; abl. *quibus, quibus*.) Into what letter is *m* often turned before *d* in *idem, quidam*? (Into *n*: *quorundam*, &c.) By what syllables is *hic* strengthened? (*Cecine: hicce, hæcce, hocce; hiccine, hæccine, hoccine*.) By

¹ For the pl. *ipsorum*, or *ipsarum*.

what are *illē, iste*, strengthened? (By *ic*: *illic, illēc, illoc*; *istic, istēc, istoc*.)

THE VERB.

Go through the terminations of the Latin verb (150). In what tenses do verbs of the third in *io* drop the *i* (165)? Go through *suscipio*—*suscipior* (165). Give the first person of each tense of *suscipio*, that has root of present. Go through *esse* (154). In what persons and tenses of *prosum* is *prod*, not *pro*, prefixed to the tenses of *esse* (177)?

Go through *possum* (177), *volo, nolo, malo* (178), *edo, fero* (178). Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive? (Of *facio*.) What peculiarities has it? (The perfect tenses are regular from *facio*; *factus sum*, &c.; the imperfect ones regular from *fio* of the *fourth*, with this exception, that *imperf. subj.* and *infin.* keep the *e* with *i* before it; *fierem, fieri*.) Go through *eo* (178). What is the compound of *eo* with *re*? (*Red-eo*.) Go through *ajo*.¹ What is *ain' tu*? (= *aisne tu*? *say you so*?) Go through *inquam*,² *I say*. What *tenses* and what *meaning* have

¹ *Ajo*.

Indicative.			1. Present.	Conjunctive.		
Ajo	Ais	Ait		Ajam	Ajas	Ajat
—	—	Ajunt.		—	—	Ajant.
2. Imperfect.						
Ajebam	-bas	-bat				
Ajebamus	-batis	-bant.				
Imper.: Ai.				Partic.: Ajens.		

² *Inquam*.

Indicative.			1. Present	Conjunctive.	
Inquam	Inquis	Inquit	—	Inquias	Inquint
Inquimus	Inquitis	Inquiunt.	—	Inquiatis	Inquiunt.
2. Imperfect.					
	Inquirebam	-bas			
	Inquirebamur	-batis			
3. Future.					
—	Inquires	Inquiet	Imperat.: Inque, Inquitio.		
—	—	Inquiet.			
4. Perfect.					
—	Inquisti	—	Partic.: Inquens.		
—	Inquistis	—			

memini, cæpi, odi? (Perfect tenses. In *memini, odi, perf.* has present meaning: pluperf. of imperf., and so on.—*I remember, I hate: cæpi* is, *I began or have begun.* Perf. *cæptus est*, when followed by *infin. pass.* of strictly passive meaning.) What is *imperat.* of *memini*? (*Memento, pl. mementote.*) What are *ausim, faxim*? (Old forms for *ausus sim, fecerim.*) What has *quæso*? (Pl. 1. *quæsumus.*)

What is English of *defit*? (*fails [me]*)—*infit*?—(*begins to speak*)—*confit*? (*[it] is accomplished; or, a sum is made up.*) What is the English of *salve, ave*? (*Hail! salve* also *farewell*)—of *vale*? (*farewell*)—of *cædo*? (*tell me, give me, pray.*)

PREPOSITIONS.

What prepositions always govern the ablative (180)?

SEE APPENDIX 2.

Go through *Penelope, Æneas, Anchises, Orpheus, Delos, Evangelion, melos.* What are the principal peculiarities of Greek nouns of the third? Go through *poëma*, (*âtis*) n. *poësis, Erinnyes, Nerëis, tigris, Echo, Dido, Achilles, Ulysses, Pericles, Chremes.*

What are patronymics? What do *mas.* patronymics end in? What do *fem.* patronymics end in? From what man's name does *Ænides* come? Give the *fem.* form. Give *mas. and fem.* patronymics from *Æneas, Anchises, Tyn-därus, Theseus, Atlas.*

What are the *mas.* termin. for an inhabitant of such a country? The *fem.* terminations? Give *mas. and fem.* words for a *Persian, Cretan, Trojan, Thracian, Lacedæmonian, Phænician, Roman, inhabitant of Clusium, of Abdera, of Arpinum, of Miletus, of Athens.*

Give the initials of the Roman Prænomina. What does COS. mean? (*Consul.*) COSS.? (*Consulibus.*) D.O.M.? (*Deo optimo, maximo.*) S.P.Q.R.? (*Senatus, populusque Romanus.*) A.V.C.? (*Ab urbe conditâ.*)

VI. QUESTIONS ON LATIN SYNTAX.

§ 1.

- 1 In what respects does a verb agree with its nominative case? (In number and person.) 2. An adjective with its substantive? (In gender, number, and case.) 3. What verbs take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative?

(Verbs of *becoming, being, seeming,*
And passive verbs of *making, calling, deeming*.¹)

4. In what case does the thing *by which* stand? (In the abl.) 5. In what case does the *agent*, or person *by whom*, stand?² (In the *abl.* with *a* or *ab*: but sometimes in the *dat.*) 6. When should the pronoun that is the nom. to the verb be expressed? (When the pron. is emphatic.)
7. When two or more nom. cases sing. come together, in which *number* should the verb be put, and in what *person*? (In the plural number, and in the *more worthy* person.)
8. With *et—et, quum—tum* (both—and), in which number is the verb generally put? (In the sing.)
9. When an adjective belongs to more than one substantive or pronoun, with which should it agree in *gender*? and in which number should it stand, even when the substantives, &c. are all *sing.*? (It should agree with the *more worthy* gender, and be in the plur.) 10. When the substantives are things that *have not life*, in what *gender* is the *adj.* generally put? (In the neut.)

Verba substantiva; ut *sum, forem, fio, existo*; Verba vocandi passiva; ut *nomi-
nor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor*: et his similia; ut *videor, habeor, existimor*.
utriusque eodem casus habent.

² Passivis additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente *a* vel *ab* prepositione; et in
terdum dativus

11. What substantives are seldom to be translated ? (Man, woman, thing.)
12. What tenses of the indic. are followed by the *pres.* and *perf.* of the subj. ? (The *pres.*, *fut.*, and *perfect* with 'have' are followed by the *pres.* and *perf.* of the subj.)
13. What tenses of the indic. are followed by the imperf. and pluperf. of the subj. ? (The *past* tenses of the indic. are followed by the imperf. and pluperf. of the subj.)
14. Is the *perf.* with *have* considered a past tense ? (No : it is a *present-perf.* expressing an action that has been done in some space of time, *however large*, that is still *unexpired.*)
15. Is the *fut. perf.* a subj. tense ? (No.)

§ 2. *Sequence of Tenses. Translation of 'that.'*

Obs. The *pres.* and *perf.* of the subjunctive form one pair, the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* another.

- (a) *Accusative and infinitive.*] 16. When is 'that' to be omitted, and the sentence turned into the *accusative* and *infinitive* ?

('That' to omit is mostly best

With forms impersonal, as *certum est* :

With verbs of *thinking, knowing, wishing*,¹

Feeling, hearing, et credendi ;

And other verbs that fill the class

Declarandi et sentiendi.

But the impersonals,

Contingit, evēnit, and accīdit,

With *restat, reliquum est, and fit,*

are followed by *ut* : as *sequitur* is sometimes.)

- (b) *ut.*] 17. When is 'that' to be translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive ? (When it introduces a *purpose* or a *consequence* : and after the impersonals

Contingit, evēnit, and accīdit,

With *restat, reliquum est, and fit.*

Obs. When it introduces a *purpose* it is followed by 'may,' 'might.' When it introduces a *consequence* it refers to a 'so,' or 'such.')

¹ Verbs of wishing may also be followed by *ut*. Cicero always uses *ut* after *optare*.

- (e) *nē*.] 18. When is '*that*' to be translated by *nē* with the *subjunctive*? (When '*that*,' expressing the *purpose*, is followed by a negative word. ¶ *Ne* being really '*not*,' the following '*no*' is to be untranslated, and '*nobody*,' '*nothing*,' turned into '*anybody*,' '*anything*.')
- (d) *Quin*.] 19. When is '*that*' to be translated by *quin*? [When a *negative* sentence precedes: especially after *non dubito*, *non dubium est*, *quis dubitat?* *facere non possum* ('I cannot help'), and *feri non potest* ('it cannot be,')—when a negative *follows*.]
20. When is '*that*' to be translated by *quod*? (After verbs that express an *emotion* of the mind, as *gaudeo*, rejoice; *miror*, wonder; but most of these also take the accusative with *infin*.¹—Also, when '*that*' refers to a '*this*' or '*that*' in the preceding sentence.)
21. When is '*that*' to be translated by '*quo*'?
(Let '*that*' translated be by '*quo*,'
When with *comparatives* it does go.)
22. How is '*that*' translated after verbs of *fearing*?
(Vereor *ne*, I fear he *will*,
Vereor *ut*, I fear he *won't*.
Turn *future* by *subjunctive present*
After *fear*: forget it don't.)

§ 3. The Relative.

23. What are respectively the *demonstratives* or *antecedent pronouns* to *qui*, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*? (Is, talis, tantus, tot.)
24. Is the relative ever governed in *case*, by a word that is not in its own clause? (No.)
25. In what respects does the relative agree with its antecedent? (In *gender*, *number*, and *person*.)
26. When the antecedent is expressed in the *relative*, and omitted in the *principal* clause, where is the relative clause often placed? (First.)
27. What *pronoun* often represents it in the principal clause? (Is or hic.)
- 27.* What is the relative '*what*' equivalent to? ('*That which*.')

¹ Obs. With *gaudeo*, *miror*, use *quod* when the verb that follows *that* is in a past tense

- 28 When the *relat.* agrees with some case of a *subst.* expressed in its own, but not in the principal clause, what must be done? (Some case of that *subst.* must be supplied in the principal clause.)
29. For what does an *infin.* sometimes stand? (For the *nominative case* to a *verb*: the *substantive* to an *adjective*: or the *antecedent* to a *relative*.) 30. When an *adj.* or *rel.* is to agree with an *infin.* mood or *sentence*, in what gender must it be put? (In the *neuter gender*.) 31. When the *rel.* has a sentence for its antecedent, what do we often find instead of the *rel.* only? (*Id quod*, or *quæ res*, where *id* and *res* are in *apposition* to the former sentence.)
32. How may 'but,' or a *relative* with 'not,' be translated after *nobody*, *nothing*, &c.? (By *quin*, with *subj.*: but *quin* may not stand for *cui non*, or *cujus non*.)
33. In such a sentence as 'Thebes, which is a town,' &c., should *which* agree with *Thebes*, or with *town*? (With *town*.)
35. When the antecedent has a *superlative* with it, in which clause does the *superlative* generally stand? (In the *relative clause*.) 36. HE WAS THE FIRST PERSON WHO DID IT. (*Primus fecit*.)

§ 4. *Nē*, with *Imper.*—*Infinitive* expressing purpose.

37. How is 'not' to be translated before the *imperative*, or *subj.* used *imperatively*? (By *nē*.) 38. How is 'as' before the *inf.*, and after *so*, *such*, to be translated? (By *ut*: 'as not to—,' by *quin*.)
39. What does the *Lat. inf.* never express? (A purpose.) 40. When the *Eng. inf.* expresses a *purpose*, how may it be translated? 41. After what verbs is the *inf.* to

¹ Aliquando oratio est verbo nominativus.

Aliquando oratio supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo in neutro genere posito.

Aliquando oratio ponitur pro antecedente.

² Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, primum cum posteriore concordat.

³ The various ways of expressing a *purpose* are given in the following table:—

<p> <i>Eo ut ludos spectem,</i> <i>Eo { ludorum spectandorum } causâ,</i> <i>Eo { ludos spectandi</i> <i>Eo ludos spectaturus,</i> <i>Eo ad ludos spectandos,</i> <i>Eo ludos spectatum (sup.).</i> </p>	<p>} <i>I am going to see the games</i></p>
---	---

be translated by *ut*—or if there is a *not*, *nē*—with the subjunctive?

(By '*ut*,' translate infinitive,
With *ask*, *command*, *advise*, and *strive*.

But never be this rule forgot,

Put '*ne*' for '*ut*,' when there's a '*not*.'

Under '*ask*' are included *beg*, *pray*, &c.: under '*command*,' *charge*, *direct*, &c.: under '*advise*,' *exhort*, *admonish*, *warn*, &c.)

- 42 How must '*as not to . . . &c.*,' after a negative be translated? (By *quin* with subj.)
43. By what conjunctions are verbs of *hindering* generally followed? (By *quominus*; to be rendered by '*from*' with the participial subst.)

§ 5. Interrogatives.

- 44 Which interrogative particle asks simply for information? (*Nē*.) 45. Which expects the answer '*yes*'? (*Nonne*.) 46. Which the answer '*no*'? (*Num*: but not in dependent questions, where it is simply '*whether*.')
47 When are questions *dependent*? (When they are connected with a preceding word or sentence.) 48. Mention some words on which questions *depend*. (*Ask*, *doubt*, *know*, or *not know*, *examine*, *try*—*it is uncertain*, &c.)
49 In what mood does the verb stand in a dependent question? (The subj.) 50. In what mood must the verb be put in sentences that stand as the *acc.* to a preceding verb? (The subj.)
51 How must '*whether*' be translated in double questions? (By *utrum*, *num*, or the appended *ne*.) 52. How '*or*'? (By *an*.) 53. If '*whether*' is untranslated, how may '*or*' be translated? (By *an*, *anne*, or the appended *ne*.) 54. Does *an* ever stand before a single ques-

(Whether) — (or)		} In rendering, the <i>utrum</i> or <i>ne</i> is not translated in a direct question: i. e. when the verb is in the indicative mood.
<i>utrum</i> . . . — <i>an</i>		
<i>num</i> . . . — <i>an</i>		
<i>nē</i> . . . — <i>an</i>		
untranslated, <i>an</i> or <i>ne</i>		

tion? (Yes: when the answer 'no' is confidently expected; and often with something of impatience.)

55. How is 'yes' to be translated? (Either by the particles *ita*, *ita est*, *sane*, *etiam*, *vero*; or by repeating the word about which the question is made.)
56. How is 'no' to be translated? (Either by *negative particles* (*non*, *minime*, *nihil minus*, &c.), *with* or *without* the verb of the interrogative sentence; or by *imo* with a *noun*, *adjective*, or *verb*, which is the *opposite* to the one in the interrogative sentence.)

§ 6. (*May*, *might*; *can*, *could*; *should*, *ought*.)

57. Go through *I may go*, &c.
(*mihi ire licet*, *I may go*.
tibi ire licet, *thou mayest go*, &c.)
58. *I might have gone*.
(*mihi ire licuit*, *I might have gone*.
tibi ire licuit, *thou mightest have gone*, &c.)
59. *I can do it*.
(*ego facere possum*, *I can do it*.
tu facere potes, *thou canst do it*, &c.)
60. *I could have done it*.
(*ego facere potui*, *I could have done it*.
tu facere potuisti, *thou couldst have done it*, &c.)
61. *I ought to do it*.
(*me facere oportet*, } *I ought to do it*;
or *ego facere debeo*, } or, *should do it*.)
62. *I ought to have done it*.
(*me facere oportuit*, } *I ought to have done it*;
or *ego facere debui*, } or, *should have done it*.)
63. Translate, *I ought to do it*, omitting *ut*.
(*ego faciam oportet*, *I ought to do it*.
tu facias oportet, *thou oughtest to do it*, &c.)
64. I MAY BE DECEIVED. (*Fieri potest ut fallar*.)
65. How is the *perf. infin.* to be translated after *might*, *could*, *ought*? (By *pres. infin.* unless it is meant that the action should *have been completed before* the time spoken of.)

§ 7. *Apposition.*

- 66 How is the case of a substantive in *apposition* determined? (It agrees in case with the subst. *of which it is spoken.*) THE CITY OF ROME. (*Urbs Roma.*)
 67. When *urbs* or *oppidum* stands in apposition to the *name of a town*, does the verb agree with *urbs*, *oppidum*, or with the name of the town? (With *urbs* or *oppidum.*)
 68. When there is a *fem.* form of a substantive, for instance, *magistra*, when should it be used? (When it stands in apposition to a *fem.* subst.)

§ 8. Case of Subst. or Adj. after *esse*.

69. HE WISHES TO BE THE FIRST. (*Vult esse princeps*; or *se esse principem.*) 70. HE SAYS THAT HE IS READY. (*Ait esse paratus*; or, *se esse paratum.*)
 71. THEY MAY BE HAPPY. (*Licet esse beatis*: or, less commonly, *beatos.*)

§ 9. *Genitive.*

- 72 When may a *substantive* and *preposition* generally be translated by the *gen.*? (When the prepos. joins it to another substantive.) 73. HOW MUCH PLEASURE; MUCH GOOD; SOME TIME. (*Quantum voluptatis*; *multum boni*; *aliquid temporis.*)
 74 What do you mean by a *partitive* adj.? (A *partitive* adj. is one that expresses *some* individuals considered as *parts* of a larger number or body.) 75. What case follows *partitive* adjectives; and what prepositions are often used instead of it? (The *genitive*: but the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, are often used.) 76. With what does the *partitive* adj. generally agree in gender? (With the governed *genitive*, because that expresses the *thing meant*.¹) 77. In what *gender* does a *superlative* or *solus* stand when it governs a *genit.*, and also refers to another subst.? (In the *gender* not of the

¹ Nomina partitiva, numeralia, comparativa. et superlativa, et quædam adjectiva partitive posita, genitivum, a quo et genus mutuatur, exigunt.
 Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *inter*, *ante*.

- gen., but of the *other substantive*.) 78. In what case does a substantive of *description* stand when it *has an adjective agreeing with it*? (In the genitive or ablative.¹) 79. By what cases are *opus est* followed? (By an *ablative of what is needed*, a *dative of the person who needs*.²) 80. What other construction is there with *opus est*? (*Opus* is often used in the *nom.* or *acc.* after *esse*.) 81. THERE IS NO NEED. WHAT NEED IS THERE? (*Nihil opus est. Quid opus est?*) 82. THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN. THE MIDDLE OF THE WAY. THE REST OF THE WORK. THE WHOLE OF GREECE. (*Summus mons; media via; reliquum opus; universa Græcia.*)
83. What adjectives govern the genitive? (Adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation*, and their *opposites*, with many of those that express *fulness or emptiness*.³) 84. What case do participles *used adjectively* and verbals in *az* govern? (The genitive.⁴)
85. What substantives are omitted after *to be*? (Such substantives as *property, duty, part, mark, &c.*⁵) 86. IT IS CICERO'S PART. (*Ciceronis est.*) IT IS YOUR PART. (*Tuum est.*) 87. What case do verbs of *accusing, &c.* take of the *charge*? (Genitive.⁶) 88. What case do *satago, &c.* govern? (Genitive.⁷) 89. What case do verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* govern? (Acc.

¹ *Laus, vituperium, vel qualitas rei*, ponitur in *ablativo*, etiam *genitivo*.

² *Opus et usus* *ablativum* exigunt.

³ *Opus* autem *adjective*, pro *necessarius*, quandoque poni videtur.

⁴ *Adjectiva* quæ *desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem*, significant, atque *lis contraria*, *genitivum* exigunt: cum *plurimis aliis* quæ *affectionem animi* designant.

⁵ *Participia*, cum *fiunt nomina*, *genitivum* exigunt.

Adjectiva verbalia in *az* etiam *genitivum* exigunt.

⁶ *Sum* *genitivum* postulat, quoties significat *possessionem, officium, signum*, aut id quod ad rem quamplurimam pertinet.

a. This genitive may be rendered in various ways, (besides 'it is the duty,' or 'part of': 'a mark of:') 'it is characteristic of;' 'it is incumbent on;' 'it requires;' 'it demands;' 'it shows;' 'it betrays;' 'it is for, (you, &c.;)' &c.

Non cujusvis est, it is not every man who can, &c.

⁷ Excipiuntur hi *nominativi, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum, bellinum*, et similia.

⁸ Verba *accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi*, et similia, *genitivum* postulant, qui *crimen* significat.

(*Eng.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat.*) To condemn of the head, (captivity.)

⁹ *Satago, misereor*, et *miseresco*, *genitivum* postulant.

or gen.¹⁾ 90. In what case may a *neut. pron.* stand with *accusare, admonere, &c.*? (Accusative.)

§ 10. Impersonals.

91. With *interest* and *refert* in what case is the person to whom it is of importance put? (In the *gen.*, but instead of personal pronouns, the possessives are used in the *abl. fem.*²⁾ 92. How is the *degree of importance* expressed? (Either by the *gen. of price*, or by an *adverb.*³⁾ 93. How is the *thing that is of importance* expressed? (By an *infinitive clause*; or its representative, a *neuter pronoun*; or a clause introduced either by an *interrogative*, or by a *conjunction.*) 94. What case of the *person feeling* do *pudet, &c.*, take? and what case of what *causes* the feeling? (*Pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret*, take an *accusative* of the *person feeling*, a *genitive* of what *causes* the feeling.⁴⁾ 95. What case do *instar* and *ergo* take? (Genitive.⁵⁾ 96. What adverbs govern the *genitive*? (Some adverbs of *place, time, and quantity.*⁶⁾

§ 11. Dative.

97. What adjectives govern the *dat.*? (Adjectives which signify *advantage, likeness, agreeableness, usefulness, fitness, facility, &c.*, with their *opposites*, govern the *dative.*⁷⁾ 98. Mention some adjectives that are followed by *ad.* (*Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, accommodatus, idoneus*, may also be followed by *ad* with an *acc.* of the *purpose.*⁸⁾ 99. What cases may follow *propior, proximus*? (*Dat.*, but

¹ *Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor*, genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt.

² Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur; præter hos ablativos femininos, *meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, et ejus*.

³ Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem*. [*Quanti interest, of how great importance it is.*]

⁴ His impersonalibus subjicitur accusativus cum genitivo, *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*.

⁵ *Instar* et *ergo*, adverbialiter sumpta, genitivum post se habent.

⁶ Quædam adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum admittunt.

⁷ Adjectiva, quibus commodum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo volup- tas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant.

⁸ *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens aptus* cum multis aliis, interdum etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur.

- sometimes the *accus.*) 100. When should *similis* take the gen. ? (To express like a person in *character*.)
101. In what case do you put the person *to, for, or against* whom the action is done, or the feeling entertained ? (Dat.) 102. Mention the classes of verbs that take the *dat.* (Verbs that signify *advantage* or *disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*; of *giving* and *restoring*; of *promising* and *paying*; of *commanding* and *telling*; of *trusting* and *intrusting*; of *complying with* and *opposing*; of *threatening* and *being angry*, &c.¹) 103. Do any of these take the *acc.* also ? (Yes : many govern the *acc.*; and many an *acc.* of the *immediate*, a *dat.* of the *remoter* object.) 104. By what prepositions may verbs of *comparing* be followed ? (By the *prepositions*, *cum*, *ad*, and *inter se*, 'together.') 105. What verbs of *advantage* and *disadvantage* govern the *acc.* ? (*Juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and *offendo*, govern the *acc.*²) 106. Of verbs of *commanding*, which govern the *acc.* only, and which the *dat.* or *acc.* ? (*Rego* and *guberno* govern the *acc.*, *tempero* and *moderor* the *acc.* or *dat.*³)
107. What case do *sum* and its compounds govern ? (*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*, governs the dative.⁴)
108. Mention the compound verbs that generally govern the *dat.* (Verbs compounded with the adverbs *bene*, *satis*, *male*. Most of those compounded with

Præ, *con*, *sub*,

Ad, *in*, *inter*, *ob*.

Many of those compounded with

Ab, *ante*, *de*, and *e*,

Post, *super*, *pro*, and *re*.⁵)

¹ Verba dandi et reddendi; promittendi ac solvendi; imperandi et nuntiandi; sedendi; obsequendi et repugnandi; minandi et irascendi; regunt dativum

His jungas nubo, faveoque, indulgeo, parco,
Gratulo, auxilior, studeo, medeorque, vacoque.*

⚡ 'He threatens me with death,' should be
In Latin, 'threatens death to me.'

² Ex his juvo, lædo, delecto, et alia quædam, accusativum exigunt.

³ Excipe rego, guberno, quæ accusativum habent; tempero et moderor, quæ nunc dativum, tunc accusativum habent.

⁴ Sum cum compositis, præter possum, regit dativum.

⁵ Dativum ferme regunt verba composita cum his adverbis, bene, satis, male; et cum hi. prepositionibus, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter.

* In the sense of 'to have leisure for,' 'to be engaged in.'

109. HE SURROUNDS THE CITY WITH A WALL. HE PRESENTS ME WITH A GARLAND. (*Urbe[m] muro, or murum urbi circumdat. Mihi coronam, or me coronâ donat.*)
110. What verbs govern two datives? (*Esse, donare, mittere, proficisci, &c., with dare and vertere, to impute.*¹)
111. What case often follows *sum* where *we* should put the nom.? (The dative.) 112. How is *have* often translated? (By *esse* with a dative.) 113. MY NAME IS CAIUS. (*Mihi nomen est Caius, or Caius, or sometimes Caii.*) 114. I HAVE A COW. I HAVE SIX COWS. (*Est mihi vacca : sunt mihi sex vaccæ.*)

§ 12. Accusative.

115. Do neuter verbs ever take the *acc.*? (Yes: when the substantive is of kindred meaning or origin.) 116. Explain *sitire* honores. (The verb *sitire* here implies the *transitive* notion of *desiring*.)
117. What verbs take two accusatives? (Verbs of *asking, teaching, clothing, concealing*, generally govern *two accusatives*.²) 118. Do *all* the verbs that have any of these meanings take two accusatives? (No: either the *person* or the *thing* is often governed by a *preposition*.) 119. What transitive verbs take *two accusatives*, one in a sort of *apposition* to the other? (Transitive verbs that take *two nominatives* in the passive.)

§ 13. Ablative.

120. What does the *abl.* express? (The thing *with which*: and often the manner *how*, and cause *why*.³) 121. In what case is the *specified price* put? (Abl.⁴) 122. What adjectives stand in the *abl.* to express the price, *pretio* being understood? (*Magno, permagno, parvo, minimo, plurimo, nimio, vili*: but the genitives, except

¹ *Sum, cum multis aliis, se nunquam admittit dativum*

² Verba rogandi, docend[um] vestiendi, celandi, fere duplicem regunt accusativum.

³ Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis.

⁴ Quibusdam verbis subjicitur nomen pretii in ablativo casu.

- vilis*, are also found, especially with verbs of *valuing*.¹⁾ 123. What adjectives *always* express price in the *gen.*? (*Tanti* and *quantī*, with their compounds; *pluris*, *minoris*.²⁾ 124. What substantives stand in the *gen.* after verbs of *valuing*? (*Flocci*, *nauci*, *nihili*, *pili*, &c.³⁾ 125. What should be used instead of *multi* and *majoris*? (*Magni* and *pluris*.) 126. What case do verbs of *abounding*, &c., govern? (Verbs of *abounding*, *filling*, *loading*, &c., and their opposites, such as verbs of *wanting*, *depriving of*, *emptying of*, govern the *ablative*.⁴⁾ 127. What case may *ego* and *indigeo* govern? (*Gen.*) 128. What case do verbs of *freeing from*, &c., take? (Some verbs of *freeing from*, *removing from*, *differing from*, *being at a distance from*, &c., are sometimes followed by the *ablative*.) 129. What is their more general construction in prose? (They are followed by a preposition.) 130. What case do *fungor*, &c. govern? (*Fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, with their compounds, *potior*, *vescor*, *dignor*, *glorior*, take the *ablative*; as does also *supersedeo*.⁵⁾ 131. In what case is the *manner*, *cause*, &c. put? (*Abl.*)

§ 14. Passive Voice.

132. In what *case* is the *agent* expressed after the *pass.* verb, when *a*, *ab*, is not used? (*Dat.*) 133. After what part of the verb is this the regular construction? (*Part. in dus*.⁶⁾ 134. What verbs cannot be used *personally* in the *pass. voice*? (Those that govern the *dative* in the *active*.) 135. Go through *I am believed*. 136. Mention some verbs that have a *pass. construction*. (*Vapūlo*, *vēneo*, *fio*.) 137. What is the substi-

¹⁾ *Vili*, *pauco*, *minimo*, *magno*, *nimio*, *plurimo*, *dimidio*, *duplo*, per se sæpe ponuntur, subaudita voce *pretio*.

²⁾ Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi; *tanti*, *quantī*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *tantidem*, *quantinīs*, *quantilibet*, *quancūque*, &c.

³⁾ *Flocci*, *nauci*, *nihili*, *pili*, *assis*, *hujus*, *teruncii*, verbis æsumandi peculiariter adduntur.

⁴⁾ Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur.

⁵⁾ *Fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, *dignor*, *mutō*, *communico*, *supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur.

Potior, aut genitivo, aut ablativo, jungitur.

⁶⁾ Participiis passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus*

⁷⁾ *Mihi creditur*, *I am believed*.

Nobis creditur, *we are believed*.

Tibi creditur, *thou art believed*.

Vobis creditur, *you are believed*.

Illi creditur, *he is believed*.

Illis creditur, *they are believed*.

- tute for a *jut. inf. pass.*, when the verb has no supine to form it with *iri*? (*Fore* or *futurum esse*, followed by *ut* with the subjunctive.) 138. I HOPE HE WILL RECOVER. (*Spero fore ut convalescat.*)
139. What verbs can govern an *acc.* in the *pass.*? ('Those that govern *two accusatives* in the active.¹) 140. Can a *pass.* verb or participle take an *acc.* of the *part affected*? (Yes.²) 141. Translate WE HAVE WALKED ENOUGH by the *pass.* (*Satis ambulatum est.*³) 142. Which is the more common in Lat.: '*Caius videtur, dicitur, &c. esse*,' or '*videtur, dicitur, &c. Caium esse*?' ('The *personal* construction is far the more common.)

§ 15. Time.

143. How is a noun of *time* put in answer to *when*? (*Abl.*⁴) 144. in answer to *for how long*? (*Acc.*⁵) 145. How do you express the time *in* or *within which*? (By *inter, intra*; or by the *abl.*) 146. How do you express time in answer to *how long before* or *after*? (*Abl.*) 147. How are *ante, post*, used in this construction? (As *adverbs*, unless there be *another noun* or *pronoun* to be governed by them.) 148. How do you express a point or space of *future* time *for* which any arrangement is now made? (By *in* with *acc.*) 149. How do you express the *exact* time *by* or *against* which a thing is to be done? (By *ad* with *acc.*) 150. FOUR YEARS AGO. (*Abhinc annos, or annis, quatuor.*) 151. THREE YEARS OLD. (*Tres annos natus.*) 152. ABOVE TWENTY YEARS OLD. (*Major annis viginti.*) 153. THREE YEARS AFTER HE HAD RETURNED. (*Post tres annos quam rediit; or, redierat, &c.*)

¹ Huiusmodi verba (i. e. verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi) etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent.

² Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poëtice accusativus

Quædam usurpantur etiam cum genitivo.

³ Verbum impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis utriusque numeri elegantè accipi potest. (Thus *statutur* may be, I stand (*statutur a me*); thou standest (*statutur a te*); and so on. Thus, *curritur, there is running, or they are running.*)

⁴ Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo frequentius ponuntur.

⁵ Quæ autem durationem temporis significant, in accusativo fere ponuntur.

§ 16. *Place.*

154. In what case is the town *at which* a thing is done, to be put? (In the gen. if it is a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declension: if not, in the *ab'ative*.)
 155. In what case is the name of a town to be put in answer to *whither*? (Acc.²) 156. In answer to *whence*? (Abl.²) 157. To *what* proper names do these rules apply? (To the names of *towns* or *small islands*.) 158. In what case do *urbs* and *oppidum* stand in apposition to the name of a town in the *gen.*? (In the *ablative*.)
 159. How is *at* translated before the name of a town, when the action was not done *in*, but *near* it? (By *ad* or *apud*.) 160. How is *local* space expressed? (By the *acc.*, sometimes by the *abl.*)
 160.* AT HOME. FROM HOME. HOME, after a verb of motion. INTO THE COUNTRY. FROM THE COUNTRY. IN THE COUNTRY. ON THE GROUND. IN THE FIELD. (At home, domi. From home, domo. Home, domum. On the ground, humi, which may follow a verb of either rest or motion. In the field, militiæ. Into the country, rus. From the country, rure. In the country, ruri; or less commonly, rure.)

§ 17. *Gerunds.*

161. Decline '*grieving*' throughout.⁴ 162. OF WRITING A LETTER. (Scribendi epistolam; or, scribendæ epistolæ.) 163. THE LETTER IS TO BE WRITTEN; or, THE LETTER MUST BE WRITTEN; or, WE MUST WRITE THE LETTER, (scribenda est epistola, the letter is to be written.) 164. Go through, I MUST WRITE.

¹ Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit.

Verum si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertie declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur.

² Verbis significantibus motum ad locum fere additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione.

³ Verbis significantibus motum a loco fere additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione.

⁴ N. Dolere, *grieving*.

G. dolendi, *of grieving*.

D. dolendū, *to grieving*.

Acc. dolere, *grieving*, (ad dolendum, *to grieve*.)

Abl. dolendo, *by grieving*.

The acc. is *dolendum* only, when governed by a preposition

- Sing.* (mihi) scribendum est, *I must write.*
 (tibi) scribendum est, *thou must write.*
 (illi) scribendum est, *he must write.*
Plur. (nobis) scribendum est, *we must write.*
 (vobis) scribendum est, *you must write.*
 (illis) scribendum est, *they must write.*

165. Go through, *epistola scribenda.*

- (N. Epistola scribenda, *a letter to be written.*
 G. epistolæ scribendæ, *of writing a letter.*
 D. epistolæ scribendæ, *to or for writing a letter.*
 Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, *to write a letter, (or to or for writing a letter.)*
 Abl. epistolâ scribendâ, *by writing a letter.)*

166. When must the *part. in dus* not be used in agreement with its substantive? (When the verb does not govern the *acc.*) 167. WE MUST SPARE OUR ENEMIES. (Parcendum est inimicis.)

§ 18. Participles.

168. What kind of sentences may be translated by participles? (Subordinate sentences connected with a principal one by *relative pronouns*, or such *conjunctions* as *when, after, if, since, because, although, &c.*) 169. In what case do a noun, or pronoun, and participle, stand when the *noun* or *pronoun* is not governed by any other word? and what is this construction called? (They stand in the *abl.*, and the construction is called the *ablative absolute*.¹)
170. HE GAVE THEM THE COUNTRY TO DWELL IN. (He gave them the country *to-be-dwell-in* : *habitandam*.)
171. What does the *part. in rus* often express? (The purpose with which a person acts.) 172. What does the *part. in dus* often express? (The *end* or *purpose for which a thing is done*.) 173. Express 'to have a thing *made*,' in the sense of *causing* it to be made. (Faciendum curare.)
174. How may '*without*' before the participial substantive

¹ Quibuslibet verbis additur ablativus absolute sumptus

be translated ? (By a participle with *non* or some other negative word.)

175. What participle is wanting in all but deponents and neuter-passives ? (The participle of the *perfect active*.)

176. HAVING LEFT HIS BROTHER. (*Relicto fratre, or quum reliquisset fratrem.*)

§ 19. *Pronouns.*

177. MY OWN FAULT. OUR OWN FAULT. (*Mea ipsius culpa: Nostra ipsorum culpa.*) 178. When —*self*, —*selves* are to be translated by *ipse*, and a personal pronoun, in what case may *ipse* stand ? (The *ipse* generally in the *nominative*, but sometimes in the same case as the personal pronoun.) 179. When may *him*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *theirs*, in a dependent sentence, be translated by *sui* or *suus*, even when they denote the nom. not of their own, but of the principal sentence ? (Whenever, from the *grammar* or the *obvious sense*, there would be no danger of understanding the *sui* or *suus* to mean the *nominative of its own verb*.) 180. By what pronoun must *him*, *her*, &c. be translated, when *sui* or *suus* would be understood to mean the nom. of its own verb ? (By *ipse*.) 181. Does *suus* ever relate to the *accusative*, or any oblique case ? (Yes.) 182. With what pron. is this very common ? (With *quisque* or *unusquisque*.) 183. Which gen. pl., *ûm* or *i*, is used after partitives ? (The pl. *ûm*.)

184. What is the difference between ‘*is qui pugnat*,’ and ‘*hic* or *ille qui pugnat*?’ (‘*Is qui pugnat*’ means ‘*the combat*’ or ‘*a combatant*,’ while ‘*hic qui pugnat*,’ ‘*ille qui pugnat*,’ signify respectively ‘*this combatant*,’ ‘*yonder combatant*.’) 185. Which of these three pronouns is to be used when *he*, *him*, &c. is without emphasis, simply describing a person or thing *before mentioned*, or *about to be described* by a rel. clause ? (*Is, ea, id.*) 186. By what case only of ‘*is*’ can *his*, *her*, *their*, be translated ? (By the *gen.*) 187. Of two things already mentioned, what pronoun means the *latter* ? what the *former* ? (*Hic* relates to *the nearer*, the *lat-*

- ter* ; *ille* to the more remote, the former.¹) 188. Which pron. means *that of yours* ? (*Iste.*) 189. MEDEA ILLA. (The famous *Medea*.) 190. Distinguish between *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, referring to different objects. (*Hic* denotes the nearest, *ille* the most remote, *iste* that which is the nearest to the party addressed.²)
191. When is *any* to be translated by *quisquam* or *ullus* ? ('*Any*' when all are *excluded* is *quisquam* or *ullus*.)
192. When by *quivis*, *quilibet* ? ('*Any*' when all are *included* is *quivis*, or *quilibet* : it then means '*any you please, no matter which.*') 193. When by *quis* ? ('*Any*' is *quis* after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto*.)
194. When by *aliquis*, *quispiam* ? ('*Any*' is translated by *aliquis* or *quispiam*, when it means '*some one or other*,' '*some.*') 195. Does *quisquam* ever follow *si* ? (Yes : but it then generally implies that the *existence* of the exception is very doubtful.) 196. By what pronouns may '*a*' sometimes be translated ? ('By *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *quispiam*.) 197. What *prefix* do interrogatives often take ? (The syllable *ec*.) 198. What *affix* ? (The syllable *nam*.)

§ 20. Comparison.

199. How should '*always*' with two superlatives be translated ? (By *quisque*, agreeing with the same substantives that the superlatives agree with.)

Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur,

The deepest rivers always flow with the least sound.

200. When are the pronouns *that*, *those*, not to be translated ? (When they stand in the *second* member of a comparative sentence for a substantive expressed in the first.) 201. When *quam* is omitted, in what case is the following *subst.* put ? (In the *abl.*³) 202. What case goes with comparatives and superlatives to express the measure of *excess* or *defect* ? ('The *abl.*⁴)

¹ *Hic* et *ille*, cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posteriorem, *ille* ad priorem refertur.

² Hæc demonstrativa, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, sic distinguuntur : *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat : *iste* eum, qui apud te est ; *ille* eum, qui ab utroque remotus est.

³ Comparativa, cum exponantur per *quam*, ablativum admittunt.

⁴ *Tanto*, *quanto*, *hoc*, *eo* et *quo*, cum quibusdam aliis quæ mensuræ excessus significant, item *etate* et *ætu*, comparativis et superlativis sæpe junguntur.

203. How are the Eng. *the—the*, = *by how much—by so much*, to be translated? (By *quanto—tanto*; *quo—eo* or *hor.*)

§ 21. *Remarks on the Tenses, &c.*

204. When may the present be followed by the *imperf. subj.*? (When the present is used, as it often is in narrative, for the *past*.¹) 205. When is the Eng. *pres.* generally translated by the Latin *future*? (When the action expressed by it is *still future*, which it generally is when the verb in the principal clause is in a *future* tense or the *imperative* mood.) 206. By what tense is the *perf. definite* often translated? (By the *future perfect*.) 207. How are assertions *softened* in Latin? (By putting the verb in the *present* or *perf.* of the *subjunctive*.) 208. What subjunctives are very frequently used in this way? (*Velim, nolim, malim.*) 209. What conjunction is often omitted after *velim, &c.*? (*Ut.*) 210. I HAVE LONG DESIRED. (*Jam pridem cupio.*)
211. Is the *perf. subj.* ever used as an *imperat.*? (Yes.) 212. What other tense is sometimes used as an *imperat.*? (The *future*.) 213. By what tense are questions of *appeal*, or questions for *assent*, to be translated? (By the *present* or *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*, according as a present or past time is referred to.)

§ 22. *Conditional Sentences.*

87 The clause with '*if*' is the *conditional* clause: the other the *consequent* clause.]

214. In a conditional sentence, how are the verbs translated when *both* are in the indicative? (By the indicative, as in English: but if the *consequent* verb is in the *future*, the conditional verb is more commonly in the present or *perf. subjunctive*.)
215. If both verbs have '*should*,' '*would*,' or '*were to*,' that is, are of the form that generally corresponds to the *imperfect subjunctive*, how should they be translated?

¹ This is called the *præsens historicum*.

(Generally by the *present subjunctive* : but sometimes by the *imperfect*.)

216. When the consequent verb has a 'would' or 'should', but the conditional verb not, how is the translation to be made ? (By the subjunct. *imperf.* or *pluperfect*.)
- (214.) { Si quid habet, dat.
 { Si quid habebit, dabit.
 { Si quid habeat, dabit.
- (215.) { Si quid habeat, det.
 { Si quid haberet, daret.
- (216.) { Si quid haberet, daret.
 { Si quid habuisset, dedisset.
217. With what tenses may *si* take the indic. ? (With *pres.*, *perf.*, and *fut.*) 218. With what tenses does *si* always govern the subjunctive ? (With the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*.)
219. What are the conditional forms of the *subj.* ? (*Scriberem*, *scripsissem*, and *scripturus essem* : but *scribam* is often used conditionally.) 220. When should *scripturus essem*, *eram* or *fui*, be used for 'should have written' ? (When the thing *would probably have happened*, because it was so *intended* or *arranged*.) 221. What tenses of the *indic.* are used for the *subj.* in conditional sentences ? (The *imperfect* and *pluperfect*.) 222. Is *si* ever omitted ? (Yes.) 223. Where should the verb of the sentence then stand ? (First.)
224. In a dependent conditional sentence, the verb of the consequent clause will be in the *infin.* : what infinitives will take the place respectively of *dat* ? of *dabit* ? *daret* ? *dedisset* ? *daturus esset* ? (Dat will become *dare* : dabit, det, and daret, *daturum esse* : dedisset, *daturum fuisse* : daturus esset, erat, or fuit, *daturum fore*.)

§ 23. Oblique Narration.

225. Explain the meaning of *oblique narration*. (When the *speech of another* is reported in the *third person*.) 226. In oblique narration, in what mood will the principal verbs stand ? (The *infinitive*.) 227. In what mood will the verbs of the *subordinate clauses* stand, provided

1 Of course, 'would have,' 'should have,' by the *pluperf.*

they express the words and opinions, not of the *narrator*, but of the speaker? (In the subjunctive.) 228. In oblique narration what is often omitted? (The verb or participle on which the infinitives depend.) 229. In what mood are *questions for answer* asked? (In the subjunctive.) 230. In what mood are *questions of appeal* asked? (In the infinitive.) 231. When questions are thus asked in the *infin.*, may *interrogative pronouns* and *adverbs* be used with the *infin.*? (Yes.) 232. In what mood is the *charge* expressed with *quod*? (In the subj.) 233. How are the *acc.* and *infin.* used with *nē* in direct narration? (In indignant exclamations.)

§ 24. The Relative.

234. Mention some words, phrases, &c., with which *qui* takes the subj. (After *sum*, in 'sunt qui,' 'erant qui,' &c., and in *negative* and *interrogative* sentences, *nemo*, *nihil*, &c. *est?* *quis est?* *an quisquam est?* *quotusquisque est?* &c. Also after *adsunt qui*, *non desunt qui*, &c., and similar phrases with *reperio*, *invenio* [to find].)
235. What mood does *qui* govern, when it introduces the *ground* of an assertion? (The subj.) 236. What mood does *qui* take after *quippe*, *utpote*? (Generally the subjunctive.) 237. What mood does *qui* take, when it is equivalent to *ut* with a *personal* or *possessive* pronoun? (Subj.) 238. Mention some phrases with which *qui* has this force.
- (After (1) *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, &c.
 (2) *tam*, *talis*, *ejusmodi*, *is* (such), &c.
 (3) comparatives with *quam*.
 (4) *is sum* (= *talis sum*), 'I am a man to.'
 (5) *quis sum?* *whc am I?*
 (6) when it expresses a *purpose*.)
239. In what other cases does *qui* govern the subj.? (After *unus* and *solus* signifying 'alone,' 'only,' and to express a *repeated action* taking place in *past time*.)

¹ The verb is then in *imperf.* or *pluperf.*

§ 25. *Quum and other Conjunctions.*

240. When does *quum* take the *indic.*? (When it expresses the *time*, either *simply* or in a *very marked manner*; and in such sentences as ‘*when you say this, you are mistaken.*’)
241. What mood does *quum*, ‘*when*,’ govern with the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*: and generally when the sentence with *when* can be turned into a *participle*? (The *subj.*) 241.* Mention some conjunctions that always govern the subjunctive. (*Quasi, tanquam, as if; utinam, would that; dum, modo, or dummodo, provided only; forsitan, perhaps; licet, although.*)
242. When are the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* used with *utinam*? (When the thing wished is not to be represented as *impossible to be realized*. The *imperf.* and *pluperf.* express wishes that *are*, in the speaker’s opinion, *impossible, or unlikely to be realized.*)
243. How is ‘*not*’ generally expressed after *utinam, dum, &c.*? (By *nē*.)
244. When the principal verb is in the present tense, in what mood is the verb after *antequam* or *priusquam* expressed? (In the *pres. indicative* or *subjunctive.*)
245. When the principal verb is in the *fut.*, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *future perfect* or the *present subjunctive*; sometimes in the *present indicative.*)
246. When the principal verb is in the *past* tense, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *perfect indicative*, or in the *imperfect subjunctive.*)
247. When should the *subj.* always be used after *antequam, priusquam*? (Whenever it is stated or implied to be *necessary, proper, or designed* with a view to some *purpose*, that the one action or event should precede the other.)
248. When do *dum, donec, quoad, = until*, take the in-

¹ In such sentences what is said in the principal clause is not only *contemporaneous* with the action expressed in the *quum* clause, but is actually *included* in it.

When does *quum* always take the subjunctive? [When it means *although, whereas, since*, (when *since* does not express *time*.)]

- dicative*? (When they merely *mark the time* up to which the action or state is to be continued.) 249. When the *subjunctive*? (When that up to which the action or state is to be continued, is to be represented, not as a *fact*, but only as what *may possibly* occur; especially when it is itself *the object pursued*.) 250. What mood do they and *quamdiu* always take, in the sense of *as long as*? (The *indicative*.) 251. With the adverbs meaning *after*, *as soon as*, how should the English *pluperf.* generally be translated? (By the *perf.*)
252. What are the conjunctions by which '*although*' is to be translated? (Etsi, tametsi, quamquam, with the *indicative*; or *licet* with the *subjunctive*.)
253. What is *quamvis*, and what mood does it govern? (*However much*; *however*, with *subj.*: it may often however be rendered *although*.) 254. What is *etiamsi*, and what mood does it take? (*Even if*; *even though*: it governs *indic.* or *subjunct.*) 255. Do 'any other conjunctions express *though*? (Yes: sometimes *quum* and *ut*.)
256. What is the Lat. for '*because*,' and what mood does it take? (*Quia* with *indic.*)
257. What is the conjunction for '*since*?'¹ (*Quoniam* with *indic.*)

(Examples.)

244. { Ante rorat quam pluit, *It drops before it rains.*
 Tempestas minatur antequam surgat, *A tempest threatens before it gets up.*
245. { Antequam aliquo loco consedero, longas a me literas non expectabis, *'Till I settle somewhere, you will not expect long letters from me.*
 Antequam de republicâ dicam, exponam vobis breviter, &c.
 Priusquam respondeo . . . dicam, &c. (Phil. ii. 3.)

¹ When it gives a reason: not '*since*' of time; which is *ex quo*, &c.

246. { Hæc omnia *ante* facta sunt, *quam* Verres Italiam
attigit, *All these things were done before Verres*
reached Italy.

{ Ducentis annis *ante* *quam* Romam caperent, in
Italiam Galli transcenderunt, *The Gauls crossed over*
into Italy two hundred years before they took Rome.

249 { Expectabo dum venias, *I will wait till you come.*
Expecto dum venias, *I am waiting till you come.*
Expectabam dum venires, *I was waiting till you*
came.

VII. CAUTIONS.

1. *Him, her, them, (or he, she, they, when they are to be translated by the accusative,) must be translated by the proper case of sui, when they and the nominative of the verb stand for the same person. Also, in the same case, his, hers, its, theirs, must be translated by suus.*
2. *In a sentence with 'that' dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated by the present (and imperfect) infinitive, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as over before the time of the principal verb.*
3. *'Should' after 'that' is to be translated by the present infinitive when it does not express either duty or a future event.*
4. *'Would,' 'should,' after a past tense are future forms:*

{ He says that he will come.
{ He said that he would come.
5. *'Thing' should be expressed by 'res,' (fem.,) when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether men or things were meant:*

Thus 'of many things,' not multorum, but multarum rerum.
6. *Cum is written after, and as one word with the ablatives me, te, &c.: mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.*
7. *Many English verbs become transitive by the addition of a preposition; for instance, to smile at, &c.*
8. *'For' before a substantive or pronoun followed by the infn. is not to be translated. The construction is the acc. with infn.*

It is a sin { for a boy not to obey his parents.
{ that a boy should not obey his parents.
9. *'As' and 'but' are often (in effect) relatives: 'but' being equivalent to the relat. with not.*
10. *'Such' in English is often used where size is meant, rather than quality. It should then be translated into Latin by tantus, quantus; not talis, qualis.*
11. *'That,' when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.*
12. *Neuter verbs of motion often form their perfect definite of the active voice with 'am,' not 'have.'*
13. *'To' is omitted after many verbs, which thus seem to govern two accusatives*
14. *When 'that' introduces a consequence, 'that not' is ut non, not ne.*

That—not { for a purpose . . . ne.
{ — consequence . . . ut non.
15. *After verbs of fearing, the Eng. future and the participial substantive are translated by the present or imperfect subjunctive, with ut or nē.*
16. *Who, what, which, are often dependent interrogatives, especially after verbs of asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*
17. *'May,' 'might,' sometimes mean 'can,' 'could,' and must be translated by possum.*
18. *The perf. infn. must be translated by the present infn. after might, could, ought, unless the action is to be represented as over before the time to which might, could, &c., refer.*
19. *Of you, 'of us,' are not to be translated after how many, or other numerals, when the whole party are spoken of. When of us, of you, are omitted, the verb will be of the first and second pers. respectively.*
20. *In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used adjectively, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.*
21. *'What' is sometimes used for 'how,' (quam; sometimes for 'how great, (quantus.)*

22. 'For' and 'as' are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
23. When *one, two, &c.*, mean *one, two, &c. apiece*, or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive* numerals, *singuli, bini, &c.* See C. 38.
24. To express the *future subjunctive passive*, we must not use the *participle in dus* with *sim, essem, &c.*, but *futurum sit, esset, &c.*, followed by *ut*.
25. After an expression of time, 'that' is often used for *on which*.
26. What is *in form* the *present participle active* is often 'the *participial substantive*' or gerund. It is always so, when it *governs* or *is governed*, instead of merely *agreeing*.
27. 'I have to do it' must be translated by the *part. in dus*.
(*Eng.*) With whom we *have* to live.
(*Lat.*) With whom *it is to-be-lived*, (*quibuscum vivendum est*.)
28. 'It is,' followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness, or something intended*.
29. But 'is to be' sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness, or intention*, but *possibility* as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may* or *can be found* in the fifth book.
30. A *present participle* must be translated by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
31. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
32. 'But' (= *except, unless*) after a negative is *nisi*, or (if it stands before a substantive) the prepos. *prater*.
33. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, 'at' must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
34. 'One' often means 'some one' (*aliquis*) or 'a certain one,' (*quidam*.)
35. 'Will' and 'would,' 'will not' and 'would not,' are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.
They are to be so translated when for
will, would, we may substitute
is (are, &c.) willing, was (were, &c.) willing.
36. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case: and then by what preposition, or what case.
37. O never translate, *puer admodum care*,
'I am going to plough,' by '*sum iens arare*.'
With *eo* the phrase has got nothing to do:
Be *sum araturus* the Latin for you.
38. In so many *apiece*, leave '*apiece*' quite alone,
But of numerals choose a *distributive one*.

VIII. DISTINCTION OF SYNONYMES.

- Qui *querit*, *REPERIT*: *non quæsitâ inveniantur*.
- Tu *succende* rogam; *tædas accende* facesque.
- Navis, equus, cuitusque *vehunt*; *portabit* asellus
Pondera, portabuntque humeri; *leviora feruntur*.
Læva gerit clipeum; *vestesque geruntur* et arma.
- Contingit* use of things we like;
But *accidit*, when *evils* strike.
- Villâ despiciamus*: *contemne* pericula, miles:
Sperne voluptates, *fædasque* libidinis escas.
Despicere relates to what we *might value or respect*: *contemnere* to what we *might fear or think important*: *spernere*, to what we *might accept or pursue*.
- Eximo quæ mala sunt*; *adimo bona*: *demere* possum
Quidlibet: *hæc teneas* justo discrimine verba.
- Pars oræ est litus*: *retinentur* flumina ripis.
Hence *orâ*, *coast*; *litus*, *shore*; *ripa*, *bank*.

APPENDIX I.

Verbs followed by *Gen.*, *Dat.*, or *Abl.*, where *we* use *no* preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an acc. of the thing, though some of them only when the acc. is a *neut. pron.*)

GEN.		DAT.		ABL.	
<i>obtain.</i>	potior, (<i>abl.</i>)	<i>abuse,</i> }	maledico.	<i>abuse,</i>	abūtor.
<i>to pity.</i>	{ misereor.	<i>revile,</i> }		<i>discharge,</i>	{ fungor.
	{ miseresco.	<i>advise,</i>	*suadeo.	<i>perform,</i>	
<i>forget.</i>	obliviscor, (<i>acc.</i>)	<i>answer,</i>	*respondeo.	<i>enjoy,</i>	frutor.
<i>remember.</i>	memini, (<i>acc.</i>)	<i>believe,</i>	credo.	<i>obtain,</i>	potior, (<i>gen.</i>)
<i>recount.</i>	recordor, (<i>acc.</i>)	<i>command,</i>	*impero.	<i>require,</i>	{ egeo, }
<i>require.</i>	reminiscor, (<i>acc.</i>)	<i>commission,</i>	*inando.	<i>need,</i>	{ indigeo, } (<i>gen.</i>)
<i>need.</i>	{ egeo, } <i>abl.</i>	<i>charge,</i>	*gratulo.	<i>want,</i>	{ utor.
		<i>congratulate,</i>	displaceo.	<i>use,</i>	
		<i>displease,</i>	*præcipio.	<i>want,</i>	{ caroo.
		<i>direct,</i>	*invideo.	<i>am without,</i>	
		<i>envy,</i>	faveo.		
		<i>favor,</i>	adūtor, (<i>acc.</i>)		
		<i>flatter,</i>	*do.		
		<i>give,</i>			
		<i>help,</i> }	auxillior,		
		<i>aid,</i> }	opitulor.		
		<i>assist,</i> }	{ subvenio,		
			{ succurro.		
		<i>succor,</i>	medeor.		
		<i>heal,</i> }	noceo.		
		<i>cure,</i> }	*indulgeo.		
		<i>hurt,</i>	nubo.		
		<i>indulge,</i>	{ pæreo,		
		<i>marry,</i>	{ obedio,		
			{ obtempero.		
		<i>obey,</i>	*ignosco.		
			*permitto.		
		<i>pardon,</i>	*persuadeo.		
		<i>permit,</i>	placeo.		
		<i>persuade,</i>	{ resisto,		
		<i>please,</i>	{ repugno.		
		<i>resist,</i>	æmulor, (<i>acc.</i>)		
		<i>oppose,</i>	satisfacio.		
		<i>rival,</i>	parco.		
		<i>satisfy,</i>	convenio.		
		<i>opare,</i>	{ *minor,		
		<i>suit,</i>	{ *minitor.		
		<i>threaten,</i>	{ fido,		
			{ confido, } <i>abl.</i>		
		<i>trust,</i>			

APPENDIX II.

GREEK NOUNS.

1st Decl.	{	Ænē-is,	æ,	æ,	am (ān),	ā,	ā,	Voc. sometimes <i>a</i> and <i>ā</i>
		Anchis-es,	æ,	æ,	ēn,	ē,	ē,	
	{	Pēnēlōp-ē,	ēs,	æ,	ēn,	ē,	ē,	
2d Decl.	{	Del-ōs,	i,	o,	um or ōn,	e,	o,	
		Orph-eūs,	eī,	eo,	eum or ēā,	eu,	eo.	
		(or, N. eūs, G. eos, D. ēi (ei), Acc. ēā poetical.)						
	{	Ath-ōs,	ō,	ō,	ōn or ō,	ōs,	ō.	(In Greek ωs.)
3d Decl.	{	Pōēs-is,	is,	{	i,	im,	{	is, i.
		(eos,)			(in,)			
		Nerē-is,						
		G. Nerēid-is,	{	i,	em,	{	(Nerēi,) ē.	ēs, um, ibus, es. }
		(ōs,)						
		Pericl-ēs, is,	{	i,	em,	{	es,	ēs. }
		i,						
	{	Did-ō,	ūs,	ō,	ō,	ō,		(also, ōnis, &c.)

Oss. Neuters in *a*, G. *āts*, have D. plur. in *atis*; thus, *poēma*, D. plur. *poēmatīs* not *poēmatibus*.

EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMS, (or names from a *father* or *ancestor*.)

	Ænēas,	Anchīsēs,	Tyndārus,	Thēseus,	Atlas, (antis,)
m.	Æneādes,	Anchisiādes,	Tyndarides,	Thēsidēs ¹	{ Atlantiādes, }
f.	(Ænēis,)	Anchisiās,	Tyndāris,	Thēsīs,	{ Atlantiās, }
					Atlantiās. }

EXAMPLES OF NAMES (DERIVED FROM ONE'S TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY.)

m. Persa,	Cres,	Tros,	Thrax,	Laco, (Lacon,)	Phœnix,
f. Persis,	Cressa, }	Troas,	Threissa, }	Lacena,	Phœnissa,
	Cretis, }		Thressa, }		
Romānus,	Clusīnus,	Athenlensis,	Abderitēs, (fem. Abderitis)		
(Roman)	(of Clusium)	(an Athenian)	(of Abdera)		
	Milesius,		Arpinas,		
	(of Miletus)		(of Arpinum.)		

¹ For *Thēsidēs*. Hence *ides* comes from nom. in *ous*.

INITIALS OF ROMAN NAMES. (*Prænomina*.)

A.	stands for	<i>Aulus.</i>	N.	stands for	<i>Numerius</i>
APP.	_____	<i>Appius.</i>	P.	_____	<i>Publius</i>
C.	_____	<i>Caius.</i>	Q.	_____	<i>Quintus.</i>
CN.	_____	<i>Cnaeus.</i>	SER.	_____	<i>Servius.</i>
D.	_____	<i>Decimus.</i>	SEX.	_____	<i>Sextus.</i>
K	_____	<i>Kæso.</i>	SP.	_____	<i>Spurius.</i>
L	_____	<i>Lucius.</i>	T.	_____	<i>Titus.</i>
M	_____	<i>Marcus.</i>	TL.	_____	<i>Tiberius</i>
M' or M?	_____	<i>Manius.</i>			

APPENDIX III.

CONJUNCTIONS.

(1) *Conjunctions governing the subjunctive.*

ut, ¹	{ <i>that; in order that, (often rendered by the infinitive.¹) that and carry 'not,' (after verbs of fear.)</i>	quomînus,	{ <i>(by which—the less,) that not.</i>
quo.	{ <i>that, (and carry 'the' to the comparative.)</i>	utînam, would that.	{ <i>from, with the participial substantive.</i>
	{ <i>not, (with imperat. or subj. used imperatively.)</i>	dum,	{ <i>provided that: if only.</i>
no,	{ <i>that, and carry 'not:' lest.</i>	modo,	{ <i>(after these conjunctions 'not' is nē.)</i>
	{ <i>that, (after verbs of fear.)</i>	dummôdo,	{ <i>as if.</i>
	{ <i>it may often be rendered by not with the infin.</i>	quasi,	{ <i>(pres. subj. rendered by</i>
neve,	{ <i>and that not; nor.</i>	ut si,	{ <i>the perfect after these</i>
neu,	{ <i>but, (as used after negatives.)</i>	ac si,	{ <i>conjunctions.)</i>
	{ <i>the relative with not.</i>	tanquam,	
quin,	{ <i>'as not' with infin.</i>	licet, although.	
	{ <i>from or without with the participial substantive.</i>	quamvis, however much; although.	
		quum, since; although.	
		nedum,	{ <i>much less.</i>
		nedum ut,	

(2) *Other conjunctions, several of which take the subjunctive occasionally, (especially with the imperfect and pluperfect.)*

quod,	{ <i>because, that, (after verbs expressing emotions, and when it refers to a demonstrative pronoun.)</i>	similac,	{ <i>as soon as, (generally</i>
quum, ² when.		simulatque,	{ <i>with perf. indicative.)</i>
postquam,	{ <i>after, (generally with perf.</i>	ut primum,	
posteaquam,	{ <i>indicative.)</i>	quum primum,	
		ut,	{ <i>when; after.</i>
		ubi,	
		antequam, ³	{ <i>before.</i>
		priusquam,	

¹ Sometimes *ut* = *so that; on condition that*. Sometimes = *although*.² *Quum*, '*when*,' often takes the subjunctive: it should generally do so, when the verb with *when* could be turned into a participle.³ *Antequam* and *priusquam* mostly take the subj. of the imperf. and pluperf.; and whenever it is meant that one thing is necessary or designed to precede another. The indicative is used when mere priority is to be expressed.

dum, ¹ donec, { until; as long as, (dum,	itaque, and so; therefore.
quoad, { whilst.)	igitur, {
quam diu, as long as.	propterea, { therefore
si, ² if.	idcirco, {
sin, but if; sin minus, but if not.	ergo, {
nisi, ni, unless.	ideo, {
etsi, {	hinc, hence; therefore
tametsi, { although; even though.	quare, {
etiāmsi, {	quapropter, { wherefore.
et, que, ac, atque, and, (ac seldom before	quamobrem, {
k sounds.)	quocirca, {
etiā, (before its	et—et, {
word,) { even; also; too.	atque—atque, {
quōque, (after its	ac—ac, { both—and;
word,) { (etiā, in answers,	tam—quam, { not only—but also
is 'yes'.)	tum—tum, {
et,	quum—tum, {
aut, vel, ve, or.	non solum, { verum (or) not only, but
verum, vero, but.	non modo, { sed) etiā also
autem, at, ast, atqui, sed, but.	aut—aut, { either—or.
tamen, atāmēn, { yet; notwithstanding;	vel—vel, {
veruntamen, { nevertheless.	sive—sive, { be it that—or be it that;
quia, because.	seu—seu, { either—or: whether—or.
quippe, because; inasmuch as	nunc—nunc, { now—now; one while—
quoniam, { since.	modo—modo, { another.
quandoquidem, {	nec—nec, { neither—nor.
quando, when, since.	neque—neque, {
siquidem, since; if indeed.	nec, alone, may often be rendered by
quātēnus, in as far as.	'and' and 'not' carried to the verb.
nam, namque, { for.	
enim, etiānim, {	

Obs. Enim, autem, vero, quidem, quoque, cannot stand as the first words of a sentence or clause: igitur seldom does.

¹ Dum, donec, quoad, in the sense of until, take the subj. when there is reference to an object to be obtained. In the sense of 'as long as' they have the indicative.

² Si and its compounds take the subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect, and of the other tenses when the condition is to be expressed doubtfully.

INDEX.

(On finding root of *present* from root of *perfect*.)

To find the root of the *present* from the root of the *perfect*, we must remember how the root of the *perfect* was formed.

- c) Thus if *av*, *iv*, *z* precede 'it' or any other termination of the tenses that have the root of the *perfect*, we get the root of the *present* by throwing them away. But sometimes *z* is to be retained.
- b) We must remember that *z* is made up of *cs*, or *gs*, or *qus*: and therefore the root of the *present* ends in *c*, *g*, or *qu*: sometimes however in *v*, *k*, or the vowel that precedes *z*.

[*duzi*, *tezi*, *cozi*, from *duco*, *tego*, *coquo*.

vizi, *vezi*, *struzi*, from *vivo*, *veho*, *struo*.]

- c) We must remember that *ps* may be made up of *bs*: so that the root of the *present* may end in *b*; not necessarily in *p*.

(scrips-it = scrib-ait: R. scrib.)

- d) Sometimes an *z* or *m* must be inserted before the final mute, to give the root of the *present*.

(vinc-it; R. vinc: rūp-it; R. rūp.)

- e) Sometimes *z* must be turned into *d*, to get the root of the *present*.

(jēc-it; R. jēc.)

- f) Before *s*, a *d* has often been thrown away.

(clausi = claud-si; R. claud.)

- g) An *s* before *s* is a *b*, *d*, or *r*, in the *present*.

(jussi, cessi, gessi, from jub-ss, ced-o, ger-o.)

§ When a verb is followed by *io*, the meaning is that the first person of the pres. ends in *io*.]

LATIN INDEX.

[p. refers to the page. Numerals below 7 refer to the Exercises, Part II. Above 6, to the Vocabularies, Part II. Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the Exercises, Part II.]

- A, ab, abs, *from; by*: a fronte, (24.) *in front*: ab u. c. *stands for* ab urbe condita, *from the city built; from the building of the city*
 abesse, *to be absent; to be far from*.
 abire, *to go away*.¹
 abolere, *to abrogate*.
 abolere, *pass away, decay*.
 abripere, (ripu, rept,) 28, *to snatch away; hurry away*.
 abscondere, (did, dit,) *to hide*.
 absens, (23.) *absent*: construe 'in his absence'.
 absolvere, (solv. solūt,) *to acquit*, 12.
 abstinere, *to abstain from*, 25.
 absumere, *to take away, destroy*.
 ac, *and*.
 accedere, (cess,) *go up to; approach*.
 accidere, Syn. 4, *to happen; befall*: accidit, 21, *it happens; or, it happened*.
 accipere, (cēp, rept,) *to receive*, 2, 39.
 accipiter, *a hawk*, 2.
 accommodare se, *to adapt*.
 accurate, *accurately*, 40.
 accurere, *to run up*.
 accusare, *to accuse*.
 acor, p. 139, *sharp, active, fierce*
 acerbe, *sharply*, 20.
 acerbitas, *sharpness*, 15.
 acerbus, 36, *sour; bitter*.
 Achilles, (23.) *Achilles, the bravest of the Greeks who fought at Troy*: Gen. is.
 acies, *sharpness; sight; line or order of battle*; 'ranks': aciem instruere, 26, 29.
 acquirere, *to acquire*.
 acutere, *to sharpen*.
 aculeus, 13, *a sting, a thorn*.
 acumen, 19, *acuteness*.
 acute, *sharply; wittily*.
 ad, *to, at*; ad tempus, (25.) *for a time*; ad-usque, 19, *up to*.
 addere, *to add*.
 addictus morti, *condemned to death*, [ad-dicere.]
 addiscere, 27, *to learn more*.
 adducere, 30, *to lead to; induce*.
 adeo, 21, (23.) *so; in such a manner*.
 adesse, (32.) *to be present, to be at hand*.
 adferre, (fero, irreg. verb,) *to bring*.
 adherere, *to adhere; to be joined to; to stick; or, be caught*.
 adhibere, 25, *to use, to employ*.
 ad-hinnire, *to neigh at any thing*.
 adhuc, 12, (22.) *hitherto, yet*.
 adimere, (ēm, empt,) *to take away something desirable*.
 adipisci, (adept,) *to obtain, gain, win*.
 adjuvare, *to help*, (acc.)
 administrare, 23, *to administer*.
 admirabilis, *admirable, wonderful*.
 admōdum, *very*.
 admonere, (monu, monit,) *to admonish remind*.
 admōvère, *to move (a thing) to*.
 adnumerare, 31, *to reckon to*.
 adolescere, *to grow up; grow to maturity*.
 adoriri, 37,² *to attack, fall on, accost*.
 adornare, (25,) *to adorn*.
 ascendere, 12, *climb to, ascend, mount*.
 ad-scribere, [to write in addition to.] ut se ad amicitiam tertium adscriberent, (to admit him as a third person into their friendship:) to let him too be their friend.
 aspectus, (10.) *look, sight*: Gen. is.
 adspargere, (spers, spers,) *to besprinkle*.
 adspicere, 10, (spex, spect,) *to behold*.

¹ See Conjug. of eo, inf. ire. Irreg. verbs, p. 123, *First Latin Book*.

² In Fab. 4. p. 256, *to address or accost*: meaning, however, that it was done with deceitful intention.

adulescere, (suev, suet.) to accustom, (trans. ;) to accustom myself.
advect, see **advehere**.
advehere, (vex, vect.) to bring.
advenire, (10.) to come to.
adventare, 29, to approach.
adventus, 10, approach; G. ūs.
adversarius, 23, enemy.
adversus, *adverse, towards*; **adverso tem-
 pore**, (at an adverse season,) in adver-
 sity.
ædes, pl. house.
ægre ferre, to take (any thing) ill; to be
 displeased at (any thing).
ædificare, to build.
ædilitas curulis, (33.) the *Curule Edile-
 ship*; the dignity of *Curule Edile*.
ædilitius, (37.) one who has been *Edile*.
ægotus, sick.
Ægyptii, the Egyptians.
Æneas, *Æneas*, a Trojan prince; G. æ,
 App. II.
æqualis, (adj.) of the same age.
æquare, (33.) to make equal; to equalize.
æque ac, 27, just as, as.
æquitas, equity, justice.
æquus, even, equal, just, fair; **æquus
 animus**, resignation.
ær, the air.
æs alienum, 33, (another's money =) debt.
æstus, summer.
æstimare, to value.
ætas, time of life, age.
in æternum, forever.
ævum, age, an age.
afficere, 10, to affect; **injuriam afficere**, to
 wrong; **animum voluptate**, to give
 pleasure to the mind; **pœnâ**, to visit
 with punishment; **ultimo supplicio**, to
 execute, to put to death.
affirmare, to affirm.
affligere, (flig, flect.) to afflict.
Agamemnon, the commander-in-chief of
 the Greeks at Troy; G. ōnis.
agāso, muleteer; G. ōnis.
age, (26,) come!
ager, 5, field, territory; G. agri.
agere, (æg, act.) to do, to act, to drive, to
 spend, (life, time, &c. ;) **causam**, to
 plead a cause; **quid agis**?
ag-grēdior, (gress.) to attack, [from **ad to**,
grādior to walk.]
agitare, to drive.
agnoscere, (nov, nŕt.) to recognise, ac-
 knowledge.
agnus, lamb.
agricola, 3, 7, a husbandman.
agricultura, agriculture, tillage.
ain' tu? (for **alsne tu?**) say you so?
 how so?
Alcibiades, Gen. 1s, an Athenian, a pupil
 of Socrates, and general in the Pelo-
 ponnesian war.
alere, p. 172, to nourish, support.
Alexander, G. dri, a king of Macedon,
 called 'the Great'

alienus, belonging to another; **render**
 'another's,' 'other men's.'
alimentum, nourishment, food.
aliquamdiu, for some time.
aliquando, p. 180, sometime or other.
aliquis, p. 146, any one, any, some.
aliquid, (neut.) something; **some**. Be-
 fore a genitive it is to be translated by
 some, and the genitive not to have 'of'.
aliquot, some, several.
aliquoties, several times.
aliter, 24, otherwise.
alius, p. 138, other, another; G. ius.
al-ligare, to tie up.
alloqui, (locut.) speak to, address.
aloe, the aloe; G. es, App. II.
Alpes, the Alps; G. ium.
alter, p. 138, another; one more: **alter—
 alter**, the one—the other.
alteruter, one or the other, one of the
 two.
altitudo, height.
altus, high, deep; **loud**. **altum mare**, the
 deep sea, or high sea.
amare, to love.
amarus, bitter.
ambire gratiam, to court the favor (of.)
ambitio, ambition.
ambitus, bribery; G. ūs.
ambulare, to walk; **in ius ambulare**, to
 go to law; to go before a magistrate.
amiculum, cloak, mantle.
amicitia, friendship.
amicus, 3, friend; **amicum habere ali-**
quem, to have a man for your friend
amittere, (mis, miss.) 24, to lose.
amnis, river.
amœnitas, beauty, (of places, &c.)
amor, love.
amussis, Abl. I, carpenter's rule, plumb
 line.
amphibium, an amphibious animal.
an.—Synt. 54.
anas, ātis, duck.
an-ceps, (cipitis,) doubtful.
Anchises, a Trojan, the father of *Æneas*;
 G. æ, App. II.
ancilla, maid-servant; maid.
angiportus, ūs, lane.
anguis, snake.
Anglus, English; an Englishman.
angustia, a narrow pass.
angustus, narrow.
anima, breath, vital principle, soul. **ani-**
mam agere, (to be spending the vital
 principle, =) to be near death; to be
 about to die.
animal, animal; G. ālis.
animi levitas, lightness of mind, thought-
 lessness.
animus, mind, soul, heart, feeling, in-
 tention; **animus me fallit**, I am mis-
 taken.
Anio, G. ōnis, a river that flows into the
 Tiber.
annulus, ring.

annus, year tertius est annus, ex quo,
(it is the third year from that which, =)
'it is three years since,' &c.

antea, before, (adv.)

antecēdere, to go before; to excel

anteferre, to prefer.

antequam, before, (o injunctive adv.)

antiquus, ancient.

antrum, cave.

anus, old woman.

anxius, anxious.

Apelles, G. is, a celebrated Grecian painter.

aperire, (aperu, apert,) p. 174, to open.

Apollo, G. Inis, Apollo, the god of poetry
and prophecy.

ap-pārere, (paru,) to appear.

appellare, to call to, appeal to.

appellere classem, (24,) (to drive a fleet
to, =) to put into a port, to land.

appetere, to desire, long to attain.

ap-propere, to hasten up.

aptus, fit.

apud, at, by, amongst, in the house of.

āqua, 3, water. aqua marina, sea-water,
salt water.

āquila, 2, eagle.

āra, (13,) altar.

ārare, 1, to plough.

Arāris, (a river in Gaul) the Saône.

arbitrium.—See note on Ex. 43.

arbor, (8,) tree. fem. G. ōris.

arcānum, secret.

arcēre, to ward off, keep off,—exclude
from.

arcessere, p. 173, to send for, summon.

architectus, architect.

arcus, bow; G. ūs, (Dat. pl. ūbus.)

arēna, 3, sand.

argentum, silver.

Argi, G. ōrum, Argos, a town of Greece,
in the Peloponnesus.

Aristides, a noble Athenian, famed for
his justice.

arma capere, to take arms.

ar-rigere, (rex, rect,) to raise up, prick
up.

ar-ripere, io, (ripu, rept,) to snatch up, to
snatch hold of, seize.

ars, tis, art.

ars oratoria, oratory: vid. bonus.

arti-fex, (ficus,) artist.

arvum, ploughed land, cornfield, field.

arx, citadel.

ascendere, to ascend, climb.

asinus, 2, ass.

assiduitas, assiduity, industry

astrum, constellation, star.

at, but. at vero, but.

Athenæ, ārum, Athens.

Atheniensis, 14, an Athenian.

atque, and.

atqui, but.

atrāmentum, 13, ink.

attentus, (at-tendere,) attentive. parum

attentus, (to little attentive,) very in-
attentive

atrox, terrible, wild; G. atrōcis.

attingere, (tig, tact,) 40, to touch, reach.

attonare, to atound.

auceps, (for avi-ceps,) bird catcher
[avis, bird; capere, to take.] G. au-
cūpis.

auctor, an adviser. quibus auctoribus,
(who being the advisers,) may be
rendered 'by whose advice'

auctoritas, authority.

auctumnus, 28, autumn.

audacia, 17, boldness.

audax, 17, bold; G. ācis.

audēre, (ausus sum,) to dare, to pre-
sume.

audire, to hear.

auferere, io, 24, to fly away.

augēre, (aux, auct,) to increase: trans.

aureus, of gold, golden.

auris, ear.

aurum, 4, gold.

auscultare, 6, to listen.

aut, or; aut—aut, either—or.

autem, but.

auxilium, 5, help; auxilia, 5, auxiliary
forces.

avaritia, avarice.

avārus, greedy, avaricious.

avis, 3, bird.

avunculus, uncle.

Baculus, or baculum, stick, staff.

balena, whale.

barbarus, barbarous.

barbarus, barbarian; one who was not a
Greek.

beate, happily.

beatus, happy. beatum ferre aliquem, to
call a man happy.

bellare, to wage war; bellandi stu-
dium = love of war.

bellua, beast.

bellum, 5, war; gerere, to wage war.

bēne, well.

beneficium, 14, benefit.

beneficus, bountiful

benevolentia, 26, benevolence, goodness

benignitas, 25, bountifulness, goodness

benignus, bountiful.

bestia, beast, wild beast.

bibēre, (bib, bibi,) to drink. p. 171.

blandimentum, 15, blandishment.

biennium, the space of two years.

bis, twice.

Bœotia, a country in middle Greece

capital, Thebes.

bonitas, goodness. G. ātis.

bōnum, a good thing, a blessing.

bōnus, good: bonæ artes, = useful learn-

ing; the arts and sciences.

bos, bōvis, ox.

brachium, 5, arm.

brēvis, short.

Briseis, Briseis; G. Idis.

Britannicus, British.

Brundisium, Brundisium, a town of
lower Italy.
brutus, brute, brutish.

Cæcumen, 15, the top, peak.

cadaver, (n.) corpse.

cadere, p. 171, to fall.

cæcus, blind.

cædere, (cecid, cæs,) p. 171, to slay, kill.

Cæsar, Cæsar; G. Ælis.

calamitas, a calamity.

calcar, a spur; G. aris.

callidus, warm.

callère bene, to be well skilled in.

callidus, skilful; callidissime, very skilful.

calor, heat; G. Ælis.

canipus, field.

candidus, white.

cânère, p. 172, to sing.

cânis, dog; G. is.

Cannæ, ærum, Cannæ, a town in Campania.

Cannensis, 17, of Cannæ.

cantare, 9, to sing.

cantilæna, (9,) song.

cantillare, 4, to trill.

cantus, s. ag; G. Ælis.

capere, 10, p. 171, arma capere, to take arms.

capessere, p. 173, to seize hold of, undertake.

capitis, (of the head, =) to death.

capra, goat.

capitvus, 15, captive.

capitvus, fut. part. of capio, to take.

Capua, Capua, the capital of Campania, in southern Italy.

caput, itis, head; capite or capititis damnatus, 38, condemned to death.

carcer, æris prison;

cårère, p. 169, l. (governs abl.) to want, to be without.

caritus, 37, affection.

carmen, G. inis, song.

cåro, carnis, flesh.

carpere, p. 171, to pluck.

Carthåginienlis, 15, Carthaginian.

Carthågo, inis, a powerful city in Africa, founded by Queen Dido, (from Tyre;) the rival of Rome.

cårus, dear.

castigåre, to chastise.

cåstra, (pl.) a camp

castus, chaste.

casus, (31,) misfortune; G. Ælis.

casu, by chance.

Catilinarij, the Catilinarian conspirators.

Cåtio, õnis, a Roman famed for his inflexible adherence to his principles; he lived between the second and third Punic wars.

causa, cause; causå, for the sake of; causam agere, to plead a cause. (as advocate;) causam dicere, to plead one's own cause.

cåutus, 25, cautious

cåvea, a cage.

cavère, (cåv, cant,) p. 170, to beware of; cåvus, hollow.

cådere, p. 171, to yield.

cålebratus, part. of celebrare, celebrated.

celeritas, swiftness; G. åtis.

celeriter, quickly.

celsus, high, tall.

censère, p. 169, to think, value.

centurio, 26, centurion; G. õnis.

cæpi, see capere.

cera, wax.

Cères, æris, Ceres, the goddess of corn &c.

cernere, (cræv, crot,) to see, perceive, p. 172,

certamen, 17, contest.

certare, 3, 17, to fight, quarrel.

certus, certain.

cervus, stag.

ceteri, æ, a, the other; other.

Chæronæa, a town in Boeotia.

Christianus, Christian.

Chryses, G. æ, Chryses, a priest of Apollo

cibus, 1, food.

cingere, (cinx, cinct,) p. 171, to gird, surround.

circa, }

circum, } about.

circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.

circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.

circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.

circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.

circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.

circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.
circum-dåre, (circumdædi, circumdåtum,) to surround.

cis, }
citra, }
cito, quickly.

civilis, 19, civil.

civis, p. a citizen.

civitas, state; admission to citizen-ship, p. 134.

clådes, defeat, overthrow; clades Varii, the defeat of Varius.

clam, secretly.

clam, (prep.,) without the knowledge of.

clamare, 3, to shout.

clamor, 16, clamor, shouting.

clarus, clear, illustrious.

classis, p. 134, classem appellere, (appelli appulsum,) to put into a port; to land

claudere, (claus, claus,) p. 171, to shut.

clåvus, a nail.

clementia, 25, clemency, mercy.

clipeus, shield.

ciltellæ, panniere; a packsaddle

cålestis, 27, heavenly.

cåelum, heaven.

cœna, dinner; ad cœnam vocare, to invite to dinner.

cœnare, to dine.

co-ërcere, to restrain.

côgere, (côg, coact,) to compel, p. 172.

cogitare, to consider.

co-gnatus, 30, related.

cognitio, 21, knowledge.

co-gnoscere, (co-gnôvi, co-gnîtum,) to know well, generally from information; to learn; cognitus, known.

☞ Obs. The original root is *gno*, as in *yvo, yvw, yivvask*.

colere, p. 172, cultivate, worship.

collineare, to hit the mark.

collis, (m.), hill.

col-lôqui, (locut,) to converse.

collum, neck.

col-lustrare, enlighten, illuminate.

colônus, 27, forner.

color, ôris, color.

columba, dove.

com-bûrere, p. 268, to burn down; to burn, (= consume by burning.) See *uro*, p. 173.

com-êdere, to eat up, to devour, to eat.

See *edo*, p. 178.

cômes, (comîtis,) companion.

cônis, affable, polite.

comitia, (pl.), an assembly of the people for the election of magistrates. From 'com' and 'it,' sup root of *eo*.

commemorare, to make mention of.

☞ *De* after commemorare must be rendered by 'of.'

commendare, 19.

committere, to commit; prælum, 15.

com-inôdum, 34, advantage.

com-morari, [to tarry together,] to live together.

commovêre, to move;

communicare, to make common; to share, (followed by *cum*.)

communiter, 37, in common.

com-parare, to procure. Compare *co-pias*, to raise troops or forces.

comparâtus, formed.

compellare, to call.

compêrre, p. 174, to ascertain.

compescere, to restrain, repress.

complêre, (plêv, plêt,) to fill.

compônere, to arrange.

compositus, (from componere,) arranged, disposed, &c. In *Ex. 19*: 'compositus ad gravitatem ac severitatem,' may be rendered, 'adopting a grave and serious tone.'

com-prehendere, (prehend, prehens,) to take prisoner, to seize.

concedere, 19, (43,) to yield, to go.

concha, shell.

conciliare, to conciliate, reconcile, win over.

concio, onis, assembly.

concitare, 25, to excite, rouse.

concordia, 18, concord.

concupiscere, to wish for, desire

concutere, (con-quaterè,) to shake.

condere, 22, to build, found.

condimentum, (from condire,) seasoning

conditio, condition.

condonare, 31, to pardon, grant.

condûcere, (dux, duct,) to hire.

confêro, to carry, (together;) confêrre

culpam, I throw the blame.

conferre se, to betake themselves.

conficere, 12, 34, 39.

confidêre, to feel confident.

confidens, trusting, confident

confirmare, to strengthen.

con-fitêri, (fess,) to confess.

confûsus, (particip. of confundere)

confluere, 15, to flow together.

conjicere, (42,) to hurl, to shoot.

conjungere, (34,) to join.

conjuratio, 15, (il,) conspiracy.

connubium, 33, marriage.

conquirere, seek after, collect.

con-scendere, (scend, scens,) to climb up.

consentientia, 21, knowledge.

consentâneus, reasonable, agreeable.

con-sêrere, (sêv, sêt,) to plant.

conservare, (21,) to preserve, observe.

considerare, to consider.

considêre, (sêd, sess,) to settle; to perish.

consilium, design, plan, intention; cêpere, to form a resolution.

con-sistere, (sist,) to stop.

consitus. See *consêrere*, planted.

consolatio, (36,) consolation.

consortium, partnership. See 37.

conspectus, ûs, sight.

conspicere, lo, (spex, spect,) to behold, to see.

constantia, firmness, constancy.

constat, it is known, evident.

con-stituere, 23, 29, (32,) to appoint.

Constituere exemplum, to set an example.

construere, (strux, struct,) to construct, build, (a nest.)

consuetudo, 31, custom; G. Inis.

consul, (15,) G. ûlis, consul.

consularis, (37,) consular; of consular rank.

consulatus, 18, consulship; consulatum pêtere, to be a candidate for the consulship, (23.)

consulere, to consult; consulere alicui,

(21,) to consult a man's interests.

consumere, (42,) to consume, spend.

consumptus, worn out.

contaminare, (35,) (for con-ingminare,) to contaminate.

contegere, to cover.

contemnere, (temps, tempt,) to despise, 20

contemplari, to look at.

contemplatio, sight.

contentus, contented, content, (abl.)

contexere, 31, to weave, join (s.)

contînens, G. ntis, continent, (adj.)

con-tinêre, 23, to hold, contain.

contingere, 19, (ii,) to touch, lay hold of.

contra, *against*.
 contradicere, 22, *to speak against*.
 contrāhere, 15. contrāhere familiaritatem cum aliquo, *to make acquaintance (or strike up an intimacy) with anybody*.
 con-trectare, *to handle; to pull about*.
 convalescere, 20, *to grow strong, amend*.
 convēnire, 21, *to assemble*.
 conviciū, *an invective*.
 con-viva, *guest*. (Com. Gender.)
 copie, *forces, troops*; copie equestres, *cavalry*.
 copiam facere, *to make plenty = to give an opportunity*.
 coquere, (cox, coct,) *to cook, bake, ripen*.
 coram, *before*.
 cor, cordis, *heart*.
 Corinthus, Corinth, *a rich commercial city of Greece*.
 Cornelius, *a Roman family name*; C. Nepos, *a Roman historian*.
 cornu, *horn*.
 corōna, *crown*.
 corrigere, *to correct*.
 corpus, *body*.
 corroborare, 31, *to strengthen*.
 corruere, (ru, rūt,) *to fall down*.
 corrumpere, (35,) *to corrupt*.
 cortex, *leis, bark*.
 corvus, *raven*.
 crabro, *hornet*.
 cras, *to-morrow*.
 crastinus, *to-morrow's*.
 crastinus dies, *to-morrow*.
 crassus, *thick, coarse*.
 creare, *to create*.
 credere, *to believe, to trust*; credīdi, creditum, (dat.)
 cremare, *to burn, burn down*.
 crepare, p. 168, *to make a noise*.
 crescere, p. 173, of the moon, *to wax, to grow*.
 crimen, *crime, charge*.
 cruciare, *to torment*.
 crudelis, *cruel*.
 crudeliter, 21 *cruelly*.
 crumēna, *purse*.
 crus, crūris, *leg. n.*
 cūbare, p. 168, (li,) *to lie down*.
 cubile, 16, *bed, couch*.
 eubito surgere, *to rise from bed, to get up*; cubitum ire, *to go to bed, (supines of cubare.)*
 cūdere, 5, *to forge*.
 culpa, *fault*.
 eulter, G. tri, *knife*.
 cultor, 28, *cultivator*.
 cultura, 27, *cultivation*.
 cultus, -ūs, 39, *civilization*.
 cum, *with, when*; cum—tum, *both—and*.
 cum maxime, *at the moment that; as he was just*.
 cunulare, (34,) *to heap, to load*.

cunctatio, *delay*.
 cuncti, *all*.
 cunctus, (with sub,) *the whole*.
 cūpere, (from cupio, cupivi, cupitum, p. 171,
 cupiditas, *ātis, desire*.
 cupido, G. diuis, *desire*.
 cūpidus, *desirous*.
 cur? *why?*
 curare, 10, 22, *to care for, take care of*;
 nihil curare, *not to care at all*; with
 part. in dus, *to cause*; e. g. faciendum
 curare, *to cause to be made; to have
 any thing made*.
 Cures, G. ium, Cures, *a city of the Sabines
 in Italy*.
 curia, *the senate-house*.
 currere, (cucurr, curs, *to run*,
 curriculum, *a course*.
 currus, ūs, *chariot*.
 cursus, 39, G. ūs, *course*.
 curulis edilitas, *curule edileship; the
 dignity of curule edils*.
 custōdia, (35,) *custody*; in custodiā
 tenere, *to keep in custody*.
 custodire, 5, *to keep safe, preserve*.
 custos, 5, *guard*; G. ōdis.
 Cūbēle, *a goddess, the mother of all the
 gods*; G. es.
 Damnare, *to condemn*.
 Damnum, *hurt, loss*; damna inferre, *to
 inflict injuries*.
 dāre, (dēd, dāt,) p. 168; pōnam, *to suffer
 punishment*.
 dē, *from, concerning, about, of*.
 dēbere, *to owe*. See p. 296, 61, 62
 debilis, *weak, feeble*.
 decēdere, 17, *to depart, withdraw, to die*.
 decernere, (crēv, crēt,) *to decree, resolve*.
 decerpere, (cerps, cerpt,) *to pluck down, to
 pluck*.
 decertare, *to contend, to fight*.
 dēcet, *it is becoming; it becomes, (acr.)*
 Sometimes it may be rendered by
 ought.
 decipere, lo, (cēp, cept,) 24, *to deceive*.
 declarare, *to declare*.
 decorare, 7, *to adorn*.
 decrescere, (decrēvi,) 18. See crescere,
to decrease, to wane.
 dedēcus, (ōris), *disgrace, shame*; dedecus
 sui, *disgrace to himself*.
 dēdēre, (dedid, dedīt,) *to give up; to
 surrender, compound of dē and do*.
 dedūcere, (dux, duct,) 19, 30.
 deesse, *to be wanting*.
 defatigare, *to weary, to tire*.
 defendere, (fend, fens,) *to defend; to
 ward off*.
 defervescere, 18.
 dēgere,² (perf. dēgi,) *to spend life, time
 &c.; to live*.

¹ See note on the Genitive of the Fourth Declension, *First Latin Book*, p. 18.

² For de-igere, from de and agere

deglubere, (glups, giupt.) *t. flay.*
 deinceps, *one after another, successively.*
 deinde, 21, (il.) *thenceforth.*
 de-jicere, io, (jēc, ject,) *to throw down.*
 delectare, 5, *to delight, allure.*
 dēlēre, (dēlēv, dēlēti,) p. 169, *to blot out, deface.*
 delictum, 18, *sin, transgression.*
 deligere, (lēg, lect,) *to choose out; to choose.*
 delinquere, *to transgress.*
 delirare, 31, *to rave, dote.*
 delirus, *crazy.*
 Delphi, *a town of Greece, famous for the Oracles of Apollo.*
 delphinus, *a dolphin.*
 demens, entis, *mad.*
 demissus, (part of demittere,) *hung down; down.*
 demittere, 20, *to send down.*
 demonstrare, *to show, to prove.*
 dēnārius, *a denarius, (a Roman coin worth about 8½d, or 15 cents.)*
 denique, *at last.*
 dens, *tooth; G. dentis.*
 de-pellere, *to drive away.*
 pendēre, *to hang down.*
 de-plorare, *to bewail.*
 deprehendere, *to catch (in the commission of a fault, &c.)*
 deridēre, 30, *to deride, mock.*
 descendere, 7, *to come down.*
 dēscribere, *describe; lay out, (gardens.)*
 de-criptio, *laying out, (of a garden, &c.)*
 de-screre, (seru, sert,) 30, *to leave off, forsake.*
 de-sidērare, *to miss; to feel the want of.*
 desinere, (desli, desitum,) *to end; to leave off.*
 desipere, io, *to be foolish, [de, from; sīpere, to be wise.] O me desipientem! O fool that I was!*
 desperare, *to despair of.*
 de-spicere, *to look down (upon.)*
 destinare, *to fix.*
 detēgere, (tex, tect,) 13. (Voc. on perf. si.)
 deterrere, 35, *to deter, frighten.*
 de-trahere, (trax, tract,) *to drag off; take off.*
 de-uritus, (part. of deterrere, triv, trit,) *rubbed, galled.*
 Deus, *God.*
 devincere, (vic, vict,) *to conquer completely; to conquer.*
 devincire, (vinx, vincit,) *to bind, enchain.*
 devorare, *to devour.*
 dexter, (tra, trum,) *right, (opp. to left.)*
 Diana, *Diana, goddess of the chase.*
 dicere, (dix, dict,) *to say, to speak—to call.*
 dictator, dictator, *(a high office at Rome.)*
 dictum, *a saying.*
 Dido, *a Phœnician princess, queen of Carthage; Gen. ūs. See App. ii. p. 317.*
 dies, *day. Ad diem, to his day.*
 difficilis, *difficult.*
 difficultas, *difficulty*

diffidere, *to distrust, (dat., dignitas, worth, worthiness.*
 dignus, *worthy, abl.*
 dilācārare, *to tear to pieces.*
 dilānare, *to tear to pieces.*
 diligenter, *diligently.*
 diligentia, *diligence.*
 diligere, (dilex, dilect,) *to love.*
 dilūvium, *flood.*
 di-mētor, (mensus,) *to measure out*
 dimicare, *to fight.*
 dimittere, *to send away; to dismiss.*
 dirigere, (direx, direct,) *to direct; to steer (a vessel.)*
 discēdere, (discess,) *to depart.*
 discere, (dīdici,) *to learn.*
 disciplina, *discipline, teaching*
 discipulus, *pupil.*
 discrepare, *to be different.*
 discernere, *difference, danger.*
 disjungere, (junn, junct,) *to separate.*
 dispensator, *a steward.*
 displicere, (plicu,) *to displease.*
 dispōnere, (pōu, pōit,) *to dispose; to place, arrange.*
 disputare, *to discuss; to dispute.*
 disquirere, *to examine.*
 dissērere, (seru, sert,) *to discuss; to argue.*
 dissidium, *disagreement, quarrel.*
 dissipare, *to scatter; to spread abroad; publish.*
 distinēre, (distinu, distent,) *to keep off; to engage or distract (with business.)*
 distribuere, *to distribute.*
 diu, *long; for a long time.*
 diuturnus, *long (of duration.)*
 diversus, *different: e diverso contendere, to maintain the contrary.*
 dives, itis, *rich.*
 dividere (divis, divis,) *to divide.*
 divinitas, itis, *divinity.*
 divinus, *divine.*
 divitia, *riches, wealth.*
 divulgare, *to publish.*
 docēre, *to teach.*
 dolēre, *to be pained, grieve.*
 dolor, *pain, sorrow.*
 dolus, *trick, stratagem.*
 domare, p. 169, ii., *to tame*
 domesticus, *domestic.*
 dominatio, *rule, sovereignty.*
 dominus, *master.*
 domus, p. 136, *house, home, G. ūs and i*
 donare, *to present. See Synt. 275.*
 donec, *till, until—as long as.*
 donum, *gift.*
 dormire, *to sleep; to be asleep.*
 drachma, drachma, (a Greek coin, worth about 9½d. or 18 cents.)
 dubie, *haud —, without doubt.*
 ducere, p. 162, *to lead.*
 ducere nomen, *to take its name.*
 ducere in matrimonium *to marry, (of the husband.)*
 dudum, *long ago.*

dulcis, *sweet*.
 dum, *whilst, until, provided*.
 duo, *two*.
 duodēcim, *twelve*.
 durare, *to harden; to last*.
 durescere, *to grow hard*.
 durus, *hard, harsh, cruel*.
 dux, dūcis, *leader, general*.

E, ex, *out of; from*.
 ebibere, *to drink up; to drain*.
 ēbur, ēris, *ivory*.
 ēdere, (ēd, ēs) p. 178, *to eat*.
 ēdere, (edid, edit,) *to tell; to publish; to exhibit*.
 edicere, *to make a proclamation*.
 ediscere, *to learn by heart*.
 educare, *to educate*.
 educere, (edux, educ,) *to draw forth or out; to bring up*.
 efficac, *effectual*.
 efficere, io, (fēc, fect,) *to effect; accomplish*.
 effigies, *image, likeness; G. 181*.
 ef-flare, *to breathe (out)*. ef-flare animam *(to breathe out one's breath,) to expire; breathe one's last*.
 efflorescere, *to blossom, flourish*.
 ef-fodere, io, *to dig over, (effōd, effoss.)*
 effrēnatus, *unbridled*.
 effugere, io, *escape, avoid*.
 egēre, p. 169, iv., (gen. or abl,) *to need*.
 ego, I, p. 145.
 egrēgie, *admirably; egregiously*.
 egressus, *part. of egrēdi, to go out*.
 elābi, (laps,) *to slip away*.
 elatus (*part. of ef-ferre*), *lifted up, exalted*.
 elegantia, *elegance*.
 elephas, antis, *elephant*.
 elephantus, *elephant*.
 elēvare, *to depreciate*.
 eligere (lēg, lect,) *to choose apt; elect*.
 e-ludere (lūs,) *to deride*.
 emendatus, 25, *emended*.
 ēnēre, p. 172, *to buy*.
 emittere, *to send out; to put out; to let go*.
 enim, *for*.
 enīti, *to strive*.
 ensis, *sword*.
 eo, *thither*. See quo.
 Epaminondas, *a Theban general*.
 Ephesus, *a city of Asia Minor*. Ephesus, *Ephesian*.
 ephippium, *a saddle*.
 epigramma, (ētis,) *epigram*.
 epistōla, *letter*.
 epitōme, G. es, *an epitome; abridge-ment*. See App. ii. (Penelope)
 ēques, equitis, *horseman, knight*.
 equestres coplæ, *cavalry*.
 equitatus, ūs, *cavalry*.
 equus, *horse*: equo vēhi, *to ride on horse-back*.
 eructus, *raise up, erect*.
 erga, *towards, (acc.)*
 ergo, *therefore—on account of*.

erigere, (erex, erect,) *erect*.
 eripere, io, (ripu, rept,) *snatch away; dat. of person from whom*.
 error, *wandering, error; G. ōris*.
 erudire, *to instruct, teach*.
 erumpere, *to break out*.
 esse, p. 154, *to be*.
 esto, imper. of esse, *to be*.
 esurire, *to be hungry*.
 et, *and—also, too, even; et—et, both—and etiam, even, too*.
 etiamsi, *even if, though, although*.
 etsi, *although*.
 evadere, (evās,) *to escape; to turn out; to become*.
 evectus, *part. of evehere, to raise*.
 e-vellere, *to draw or pluck out*.
 evēnit, *it happens; evēnit, it happened*.
 evertere, (vert, versa,) *to overthrow, pull down*.
 ēvitare, *to avoid*.
 evolare, *to fly out of*.
 ex, *out of; from, (abl.)*
 ex-animare, *to put to death*.
 exārare, *(to plough up a wax tablet,) to write*.
 exardescere, (exars,) *blaze forth; (of a war) to break out*.
 excellere, (ui,) *to excel; to be distinguished*.
 excitare, *excite, arouse, awake;—stir up*.
 exclamare, *to exclaim*.
 excolere, (colu, cult,) *to cultivate*.
 excruciare, *to torment*.
 excubie, *watches, posts: to be rendered guards*.
 exercere, (ui,) *to exercise; to practise*.
 exercitatio, *practice*.
 exercitus, ūs, *army*.
 exiguus, *small*.
 exilis, *thin*.
 exire, (exeo,) *to go out; to leave*.
 existimare, *to think*.
 exītus, ūs, *egress, issue, end*.
 exolescere, *to become obsolete; to pass away*.
 exoptatus, *wished for, desirable*.
 exorare, *to supplicate; to prevail upon (by entreaties.)*
 exoriri, (exortus,) *to rise; arise*. (See orior, p. 176.)
 expēdit, *it is expedient*.
 expedit, *quickly, promptly, without hesitation*.
 expellere, (pull, puls,) *to drive out, banish*.
 experiri, (expertus,) *to try; to experience*.
 explare, *to plunder*.
 explēre, (explēvi, explētum,) *to fill, to fulfil, to complete*.
 explorare, *to examine, to explore*.
 ex-primere, (press,) *to extort; acc. of thing, dat. of person*.
 expugnare, 8, *to assault*.
 exsilium, *exile, banishment*.
 exsistere, (exstūti,) *to stand forward as, to become*.

expectare, to wait
 expirare, to expire.
 exstare, to be extant.
 exsul, (ŭlis,) an exile.
 externus, external.
 extimescere, to dread.
 extra, without.
 extrinŭsus, extreme,
 extrinŭsecus, outwardly.

Faber, bri, a mechanic; smith, carpenter, &c.
 fabula, tale, fable.
 fabulŭsus, 31, fabulous.
 facere, io, p. 172, to do, to make, (imperat. fac.)
 facessere, (ivi, itum,) to make, to cause; to make off.
 facies, ŕi, face.
 facile, facilius, easily, more easily.
 facilis, easy.
 factum, deed, conduct, (in a particular case.)
 facultas, capacity, power.
 fallax, ŭcis, 31, deceitful.
 fallere, p. 172; fallit me animus = I deceive myself.
 famelicus, hungry, starved.
 fames, is, hunger.
 familiaris, intimate; (as subst.) a friend.
 familiaritas, intimacy.
 famulus, slave, servant.
 fas, lawful (according to divine or natural law.)
 fateri, (fassus,) to confess.
 fatigare, to fatigue.
 faux, throat; fauces, (Ex. 44.) a pass, neck of land.
 favere (dat.) to favor.
 febris, (abl. l.), fever.
 felicitas, atis, happiness.
 felis, a cat.
 felix, icis, happy, prosperous.
 fera, wild beast.
 fere, almost.
 ferire, to strike.
 ferox, ŭcis, fierce.
 ferre, p. 178, to bear, carry.
 ferrum, iron, sword.
 fero, see ferre.
 ferus, fierce.
 fessus, weary, tired.
 festus, festive.
 fidelis, faithful, true.
 fidere, fisis sum, to trust.
 fides, fidelity, faith; fidem habere, to believe; G. ei
 fieri, p. 178, to be made or done.
 figere, to fix.
 figura, figure.
 filia, daughter; abl. pl. ŭbus.
 filius, son; voc. fili.
 filum, thread.
 fingere, feign, fashion.
 finire, to finish.

finis, end.
 firmare, to strengthen.
 firmitas, firmness, strength.
 firmus, firm.
 flagitare, to demand, call for.
 flagitium, crime.
 flamma, flame.
 flectere, to bend.
 flere, p. to weep.
 florere, blossom, flourish.
 florescere, come into flower; blossom begin to flourish.
 flos, flower. flŕis
 fluere, (flux,) to flow.
 flumen, inis, river.
 fluviŭs, river.
 focus, hearth.
 fŕdus, ŕis, league, treaty.
 fons, fontis, fountain.
 fore, from esse.
 fores, ium, door.
 forma, beauty, form.
 formica, ant.
 formido, inis, fear.
 fortasse, perhaps.
 forte, by chance.
 fortis, strong, brave.
 fortiter, bravely.
 fortuito casu, by accident.
 fortuna, fortune; fortunæ, pl. property, possessions.
 fortunatus, fortunate, prosperous.
 forum, the forum; i. e. market-place, used also for the transaction of public business.
 fossa, ditch, trench, foss.
 fŕvère, (fŕv, fŕt,) to cherish.
 frangere, (frŕg, fract,) to break.
 frater, G. tris, brother.
 fraterculus, little-brother.
 fratricida, a fratricide.
 fraudare, to defraud.
 frenum, curb, bridle.
 frequentare, to frequent.
 frŕtus, relying on.
 fricare, to rub.
 frigere, to be cold.
 frigus, ŕis, cold.
 frons, frontis, a fronte, in front.
 fructus, fruit, produce; G. ŭs.
 fructum capere ex, to derive advantage from.
 frui, to enjoy.
 frumenta, all kinds of corn.
 frustra, in vain.
 frustum, piece, morsel.
 frutex, icis, shrub.
 fugare, to put to flight; to rout.
 fugere, (fugio,) fly, fly from.
 fulcire, to prop.
 fulgere, v. to shine, glitter.
 fundus, l, estate, farm.
 fungi, (functus,) to discharge, abl.
 funis, (m.), rope.
 furere, to rage, to be mad.

furor, madness, passion

furtum, theft.

fusus, voided: part. of fundo, (fūd, fus.)

futurus, (fut. partic. of esse,) about to be; future.

Gallina, a hen.

Gallus, a Gaul.

gallus gallinaceus, a cock

ga. ius, a cock.

garrire, to babble, to chatter.

garrulus, talkative.

gaudere, p. 174,

gelidus, cold.

generare, to beget.

generosus, noble.

gens, a race, tribe, nation; G. gentis.

genus, (genēris,) race, family, kind.

gerere, p. 163, to carry, bear.

gerere bellum, to wage war.

Germania, Germany.

gestus, ūs, action, (of the hands,) de-

meanor, attitude.

gladius, sword.

gloria, glory.

gloriabundus, boasting, [render by boast-fully.]

gloriari, to boast.

glubere, (glups, glupt,) to pare, to peel.

Græculus, (diminutive,) a low Greek; a Greek.

Græcus, a Greek.

gracilis, slender.

gramen, Inis, grass.

grandinare, to hail.

grandis, large.

grannum, a grain.

gratia, favor, grace, thanks.

gratiam ambire, to court the favor.

habere, to feel grateful.

retribuere, to return a favor; to recompense.

gratulari, to congratulate.

gratus, grateful, agreeable, delightful.

gratum facere alicui, to oblige a person.

gravari, to be reluctant; not to choose.

gravis, heavy, weighty, serious.

gravitas, weight, seriousness, importance.

grex, (grēgis,) a flock.

grus, uis, crane.

gubernare, to govern, (acc.)

gubernator, pilot.

Habere, to have.

habere pro, to hold for; to consider as.

amicum aliquem, to have a man for a friend.

habitare, to dwell.

hærere, (hæs,) to cling to, to stick.

Hannibal, Hannibal a great Carthaginian general.

nasta, spear.

haud, not.

haurire, drink off, drain.

haurire venenum, to drink poison

hæbes, blunt, dull; G. ūtis.

Helvetia, Helvetia, Switzerland

herba, herb, grass.

Hercules, Hercules.

hieri, yesterday.

hic, hæc, hoc, this, p. 145. [When it has no noun in agreement, it is rendered as a personal pronoun, he, she, it.]

hic, here.

hiems, ūmis, winter.

hinc, hence.

hinnire, to neigh.

historia, history.

hodie, 7, to-day, this day.

Homērus, Homer.

hōmo, hominis, man.

honestas, honor, integrity.

honeste, honestly, virtuously.

honestus, honorable.

honor, honor; G. ūris.

honorificus, laudatory.

hora, hour.

horrere, to be frightened at.

hortari, to exhort.

hortulus, ū, a little garden.

hortus, garden; G. l.

hostis, enemy.

huc, hither.

humānus, human, (Ex. 27, earthly:) cow-leous, kind.

humērus, shoulder.

huml, on the ground.

humilis, (humillimus,) low, humble.

humus, ground, soil, f.

Ibi, there.

ictus, G. ūs, a stroke, a blow.

idem, p. 145, the same.

idem ac, the same as.

ideo, therefore.

idōneus, suitable.

igitur, therefore.

ignārus, ignorant, (gen.)

ignavia, sluggishness; weakness of the will.

ignis, (m.) fire.

ignorare, to be ignorant of, (acc.;) ignoratio, ignorance.

ignoscere, (ignōvi,) to pardon, (dat.)

illacrimare, to cry over; to weep over or at

ille, a, ud, p. 145, that one, the former

illūcebra, enticement, allurement

illūco, immediately.

illustrare, to illumine.

illustris, 16.

imāgo, Inis, image.

imbecillus, -is, weak.

imber, bris, m., shower.

imbuere, to dip, imbue.

imitabils, imitable.

imitari, to imitate.

immensus, immense.

un-mergere, (mers,) to plunge or thrust in.
 imminere, to hang over; to threaten.
 (dat.)

immobilis, *immoveable*.

immolare, to sacrifice.

immortalis, *immortal*.

immortalitas, *immortality*.

imo, *no — but*.

impar, *iris, odd, (of number)*.

impedire, to hinder.

impellere, to impel; to drive on, (impul,
 impuls.)

impendere, to spend.

imperare, to command, (dat.)

imperator, *commander-in-chief; general*.

imperium, *command, empire*.

impertire, to impart.

impetrare, to prevail upon; to obtain (by
 entreaties.)

impetus, *assault, violence; G. ūs*.

impius, *impious*.

implere, (part. of implere,) *filled*.

imponere, (impōui, imposūm,) to place
 upon; to impose.

imprimere, (impress,) *impress*.

imprimis, *especially*.

improbus, *bad*.

imprudens, *ignorant, senseless*.

impugnare, *30*.

impudens, *impudent*.

in, (with abl,) in; (with acc.) into, to,
 against.

in tempore, *in good time*.

inānis, *empty*.

incalescere, to grow warm.

incendere, to set on fire, to burn.

incendium, *conflagration, fire*.

inceptum, (properly, a thing begun,) a
 purpose; a resolution.

incertus, *uncertain*.

incessere, (incessivi and incess,) to fall
 upon.

incidere, 24, to fall into, enter

incipere, (cēp, cept,) to begin.

inceptum, *undertaking*.

inclarescere, to become famous

incognitus, *unknown*.

incōla, *inhabitant*.

incolumis, *safe, uninjured*.

incommodum, *inconvenience, disadvan-
 tage, hardship*.

inconsiderantia, *thoughtlessness*.

inconstandia, *inconstancy*.

incredibilis, *incredible*.

incultus, *uncultivated, uncivilized*.

incurrere, to run into.

in-cursio, (properly, a running against,)
 an attack.

inde, thence, from this;—then.

indignus, *unworthy, (abl.)*

indoctus, *unlearned*.

induere, to put on.

indulgere, to indulge.

Indus, the Indus.

infelix, *felis, unfortunate*

inferre, (intul, illat,) to bear-against;

bellum inferre, to wage war against
 to attack, invade.

infestare, to make unsafe; to infest

infestus, *hostile*.

inficere, (fec, sect,) stain, dye.

infirmus, *infirm, weak*.

inflectere, 15, to bend in, crook.

ingenium, *abilities, mind*.

ingenii cultus, *cultivation of the intellect
 intellectual cultivation*.

ingens, *huge, immense; G. entis*.

ingignere, (ingēni, ingēnitum,) to implant

ingratus, *ungrateful, disagreeable*.

ingruere, to burst out.

inhibere, to restrain.

inhonestus, *dishonorable*.

inimicus, *enemy; as adj. hostile*

inimicissimus, *most hostile*.

iniquus, *unjust*.

injuria, *injury, wrong*.

injuriā facere, to wrong, to injure.

injuste, *unjustly*.

injustitia, *injustice*.

innocens, *innocent*.

innocentia, *innocence*.

innotescere, (innotui,) to become known.

innoxius, *harmless*.

inopia, *want, poverty, destitution*.

inscitia, *ignorance*.

insectari, to persecute, to rail at.

insequi, to pursue, to follow.

inservire, to be the slave of.

inservire temporibus, to comply with
 the times; to accommodate oneself
 to the times.

insidiæ, *plot, stratagem*.

insidiari, *plot against*.

insignis, *distinguished*.

insistere, to stand upon; to take a road
 or course.

inspirare, to breathe into.

instare, to press on; to press; to be at hand.

instituere, to establish; to appoint; to
 train on: vitam instituere, to conduct
 yourself.

instruere aciem, to draw up an army in

order of battle.

insula, *island*.

insuper, *besides*.

integer, *whole, entire, upright*.

integritas, *uprightness, integrity*.

intellectus, *intellect; G. ūs*.

intelligere, to understand; to be aware

intemperantia, *intemperance*.

intendere, (tend, tens,) to put forth

inter, *between, amongst*.

interdiu, *in the day-time*.

interdum, *sometimes*.

interea, *in the mean time*.

interesse, to be engaged in.

interest, there is a difference; it is of im-
 portance; it concerns, signifies, &c.

interficere, io, (fec, sect,) to kill.

interferere, (ēmi, empt,) to kill, to carry off

interrogare, to ask.

interrogatio, *a question*.

intervalum, interval
intra, within.
introitus, entrance.
intueri, to look upon.
intus, within, at home.
inundare, to inundate; to overflow.
inutilis, useless.
invadere, to come against; assault; invade; fall upon.
invēnire, (vén, vent,) to find. See Syn.
invicem, in turn; one another.
invidēre, (vid, vis,) to envy, grudge.
invidia, envy, odium.
invitare, to invite.
invitus, unwilling.
involvere, (volv, volūt,) to roll up, to bind round, (with.)
ipse, p. 169, self, myself, thyself, itself, &c.
ira, anger.
iracundia, passionateness; anger, (as a habit.)
irasci, (irat,) to be angry, (dat.)
irrigare, to water.
irritare, to excite; to provoke; to irritate.
is, ea, id, p. 146. that.
iste, a, ud, p. 145. that of yours, &c.
Ister, ri, the Danube.
ita, so, in such a manner.¹
Italia, Italy.
itāque, therefore.
iter, G. itinēris, journey.
iterum, a second time; once more; again.

Jacēre, jēc, jact,) to throw, to hurl.
jacēre, to lie, to lie low.
jactare, to toss.
jaculari, to hurl a dart, to shoot.
jam, already.
nec jam, and—no more.
jam dudum, now for a long time
jam pridem, long; for some time.
janua, gate, door, (of a house.)
jocabundus, joking; in a joking manner.
jocus, joke.
Jov-, see Jupiter.
jubēre, (juss,) to order.
jucundus, pleasant, delightful.
judez, pleasant, delightful, 12, and p. 134;
G. Icia.
judicare, to judge.
jugum, 15, li., a yoke, a range, (of hills.)
Jugurtha, Jugurtha, a prince of Numidia.
jumentum, 17, a beast of burden.
jungere, (junx, junct,) to join; jungere
amicitiam, to form a friendship.
Jupiter, G. Jōvis, Jupiter.
jurare, to swear.
jus, juris, right, law.
jure, deservedly, with good reason,
justly.
jure meritoque, deservedly.

jussu, by the command. Domini jussu, by
his master's orders.
jussum, command, bidding.
justitia, justice.
justus, just.
javare, to help, assist, (acc.)
juvat, it is delightful; it delights.
juvenilis, youthful.
juvénis, a young man; a man (from about
20 to 40.)
juventus, ūtis, youth.
juxta, close by, (prep.)

Lābare, to totter.
labefactare, to make to totter; to shake.
labor, labor; G. ōris.
labōrare, to labor.
laccessere, to provoke.
lacrima, or lacryma, a tear.
lacunar, 16, a panelled ceiling; G
ŋris.
lādere, to hurt, (acc.)
læte, joyfully.
lætitia, joy.
lætus, joyful, glad.
lævus, left.
lana, wool.
laniare, to mangle.
lātēre, (latu,) to lie hid, to be concealed.
Latine (adv.) in the manner of the Lat-
ins. Latine loqui, to speak Latin cor-
rectly.
Latinus, Latin.
latro, ōnis, robber.
lātus, broad.
lātus, ōris, side.
laudare, to praise.
laurus, a laurel.
laus, laudis, praise.
lavare, Also lavēre.
lectio, reading, perusal. (In 11 it is used
for 'lesson' set to be studied; which is
an unclassical use of it.)
lĕgātus, ambassador, lieutenant.
lĕgere, (lĕg, lect,) to read.
lĕgio, ōnis, a legion or body of Roman sol-
diers.
lenire, to soften.
lĕnis, soft.
leo, ōnis, lion.
lĕvare, to relieve.
lĕvis, light.
levitas, lightness, fickleness.
lex, lĕgis, law.
lĕgem perferre, to carry a law
through.
libenter, willingly; libenter facio, I like
to do it.
liber, era, erum, free.
liber, bri, book.
liberalitas, liberality.

¹ *Ita* is often to be rendered by an *adverb* with *so*: 'so, violently,' 'so foolishly, &c., according to the manner meant.

liberare, to free.
 libere, freely, spiritedly.
 liberi, children.
 libertas, liberty.
 libido, *inis*, lust, desire.
 licentia, permission; the power.
 licet. (See page 296, Questions 57, 58,) it is allowed.
 ligneus, wooden.
 lignum, wood.
 ligo, *onis*, spade.
 limen, (*inis*), threshold.
 linere, (*livi*, *litum*), to smear.
 lingua, tongue.
 litteræ, a letter, literature.
 litus, *oris*, a shore.
 locare, to let on hire.
 locuples, *etis*, rich.
 locus, a place.
 longe, far.
 loqui, (*locutus*), to speak.
 lubet or libet, it pleases: to be rendered by I (you, &c.) like, please.
 lubido, *inis*, lust, pleasure.
 lucrum, gain.
 luctus, *us*, sorrow.
 ludere, to play.
 luna, moon.
 lupus, wolf.
 luscinia, nightingale.
 lusus, *us*, game.
 lutulentus, *is*, miry, dirty, muddy.
 lux, *lucis*, light.
 luxuria, luxury.
 lyra, lyre.
 Mæcædo, *onis*, Macedonian.
 machina, machine.
 macies, leanness: macie confectus, (wasted away with leanness,) miserably thin.
 magis, more.
 magister, *tri*, master.
 magistratus, *us*, magistracy, magistrate.
 magistratum gerere, to hold a magistracy; to fill a high office.
 magnopere, earnestly.
 magnus, great.
 maior, greater.
 maiores, our forefathers.
 maledictum, railing, abuse, scurrilous language.
 malèncium, misdeed.
 malum, evil. mala, evils, ills
 malus, bad.
 malus, i. f., an apple.
 malus, i. m., a mast.
 mancipium, slave.
 manere, to remain.
 manifestus, manifest.
 manus, *us*, hand, (f.)
 Marathon, Marathon, the field of a celebrated battle between the Athenians and Persians.
 mare, is the sea.

Marianus, Marian; cf. *Marius*.
 marina, salt (water).
 maritimus, maritime; living in the sea.
 maritus, i, husband.
 Marsi, the Marsians, a people of middle Italy.
 Massilia, Marseilles.
 mater, mother; G. matris.
 matèries, materials; wood, timber.
 maturare, to ripen; to hasten.
 matùre, quickly;—prematurely.
 maturescere, to ripen, (*intrans.*)
 matùrus, ripe.
 maxime, (*adv.*), most, the most.
 maximè, at a very great price, very highly, the greatest.
 maximus, the greatest.
 Mediolanum, Milan.
 mederi, to heal, (*dat.*)
 mediocritas, a middle point, the mean.
 medius, the middle, amidst.
 medicus, physician.
 Mægara, *oruni*, a town not very far from Athens.
 mel, mellis, honey.
 membrum, member, limb.
 memorabilis, deserving to be remembered; memorable.
 memoria, memory.
 mendacium, a lie.
 mendax, *acis*, lying (person); liar.
 mens, *ntis*, mind.
 mensa, table.
 mensis, *is*, m. month.
 mentiri, to lie, to deceive.
 merces, *edis*, pay, reward.
 merere, merui, and mereri, (*depon.*) to deserve.
 meridies, mid-day, (m.)
 meritum, desert.
 metallum, metal, mine.
 mètère, (*inessu*, mess), to mow; to reap; to pluck off.
 mètri, (*mensus*), to measure.
 metuere, to fear.
 mētus, *us*, fear.
 meus, a, um, mine. Voc. masc. *mi*.
 mi, Voc. masc. of meus.
 micare, to glitter, glisten.
 migrare, to remove, (*intrans.*)
 miles, *itis*, a soldier.
 militia, warfare.
 millia, thousands.
 Miltiades, *is*, the Athenian general to whom the victory of Marathon was due.
 minari, to threaten.
 minister, *tri*, 5, a servant, attendant.
 minor, less;—the younger, (for *minor natu*.)
 mirabilis, } wonderful.
 mirus, }
 mirari, to wonder, express admiration.
 miscere, to mingle, mix.
 miser, *era*, *erum*, miserable, wretched.
 miserandus, to be pitied: miserandum in modum, in a horrible manner.

misero, miserably.
 miserēri, *to pity.* (Gen.)
 misēria, misery.
 misēricordia, *compassion, pity.*
 mīlis, mild, lenient.
 mittere, *to send.*
 mōbilia, moveable.
 modestia, moderation, modesty.
 modius, a peck (nearly*)
 mōdo, only.
 modo—modo, *one while—another*
 mōdus, measure, manner.
 mōenia, walls (of a fortified town.)
 mōrēre, *to mourn.*
 mōror, ōris, grief.
 mōliri, *to move, to plan.*
 mollis, soft.
 mōnēre, *warn, advise.*
 monocēros, ōtis, unicorn.
 mons, ntis, mountain.
 mons Apenninus, the Apennines.
 monstrare, *to show.*
 monumentum, monument.
 morbus, disease.
 mōrēre, (mors,) *to bite.*
 mōres, um, manners, morals, character.
 mōrīturus, see morior, *ready, or*
about to die.
 morōsus, ill-humored.
 mors, mortis, death.
 mortalis, mortal.
 mortifer, fatal, deadly.
 mortuus, dead.
 mos, ōris, custom, manner.
 mōtus, ūs, motion.
 mōvēre, *to move.*
 mox, presently.
 mucro, ōnis, point of a sword; sword.
 mulctare, *to fine, (abl.)*
 mulier, ōris, woman, wife.
 multitudo, inis, multitude.
 multo, (abl.,) much—before comparatives.
 multum, much.
 multus, a, um, much; plur. many.
 mundus, world.
 munire, *to fortify.*
 munus, ōris gift, task, duty
 murus, wall.
 mus, muris, a mouse
 mutare, *to change.*
 mutatio, change.

Nam, for.
 nancisci, (nactus,) *to get, attain.*
 narrare, *to relate.*
 nasci, (natus,) p. 176, *to be born, to proceed*
from.
 natare, *to swim.*
 natura, nature.
 naturalis, natural.
 natus, born. See nasci.
 nauta, sailor.

navigare, *to sail.*
 navigatio, navigation.
 navigium, vessel
 navis, ship.
 ne. See App. III.
 ne—quidem, *not even.*
 ne quis, *that nobody.*
 —nē, asks a question. See p. 295, 51, 52
 &c. ne—an, whether—or. See p. 295
 (51.)
 nec, neither; nor; and not.
 nec—nec, neither—nor
 nec temēre, *nor easily.*
 nec ullus, *and no.*
 nec quidquam, [*nor any thing.*] and
nothing.
 necessarius, necessary.
 negare, *to deny.* It is often rendered *I by*
to say, a 'not' being added to the in
finite mood.
 negligere, (lex, lect,) *to neglect, disregard.*
 negotium, business, affair.
 nēmo, inis, nobody.
 nēmus, nemōris, grove
 neque—neque, neither—nor.
 nequire, *to be unable.*
 nequitia, wickedness.
 nēre, *to spin.*
 nescire, *not to know.*
 neuter, neither; G. neutrius
 nēve, nor.
 nex, nēcis, death, (a violent death.)
 nidus, nest.
 nihil, nothing.
 nihildum, *nothing as yet.*
 nihilo secius, nevertheless.
 nimis, too.
 nimium, too much.
 nisi, unless; if—not.
 nitēre, *to shine; to be sleek.*
 nix, nivis, snow.
 nobilis, noble.
 nobilitare, *to ennoble.*
 nocens, (part. of nocēre,) *a guilty person.*
 nocēre, (dat.) *to injure, hurt.*
 noctu, *by night.*
 nocturnus, nightly; *by night.*
 nōmen, inis, name. nōmen ducere, *to*
take its name.
 non, not.
 non modo, *not only.*
 non satis, (not sufficiently,) *= not well;*
not thoroughly.
 nondum, *not yet.*
 nonnulla, (not-none,) *= some.*
 nonnē, *not?*
 nonnumquam, (not-never,) *= sometimes*
 noscere, (nōvi, = *I know,*) *to know.*
 noster, tra, trum, our, ours.
 notio, notion; ōnis.
 nōvi, *I know.* See noscere.

* 1 gall. 7.8576 pints.

nūvus, *new*.
 nox, noctis, *night*.
 nubere, *to marry*, (dat.)
 nūbes, *is, cloud*.
 nūdus, *naked*.
 nullus, G. tus, *no, none* : nullo modo, *by no means*.
 num, p. 295, 46, *whether*.
 num—an. See p. 295, 51, 52, &c.
 numerare, *to number, to reckon*.
 numerus, *number*.
 nunc, *now*.
 nuncipare, *to name* ; *to mention a name*.
 nunquam, *never*.
 nuntiare, *to announce*.
 nuntius, *message, messenger*.
 nuptum dare, *to give in marriage* : nuptum, *supine of nubo*.
 nutrimentum, *nourishment*.
 nutrire, *to nourish* ; *to support*.

Ob, *on account of*.
 ob oculos, *before our eyes*.
 obdormiscere, *to be falling asleep*.
 obducere, *to overlay, cover*.
 obēdire, *to obey*, (dat.)
 oberrare, *to wander about*.
 obesse, *to be prejudicial to*, (dat.)
 ob-jicere, *to, to throw against* ; *to expose*, (to.)
 oblectare, *to delight*.
 oblinēre, (oblīv, oblīt,) *to bedaub*.
 oblitvō, ōnis, *oblivion, forgetfulness*.
 oblivisci, (oblītus,) *to forget*, (gen.)
 obscurare, *to obscure, to darken*.
 obsequium, *obedience*.
 observare, *to observe* ; *to keep*.
 obsidēre, (obsēd, obsess,) *to besiege*.
 obsistere, *to withstand, prevent*.
 obstare, *to stand in the way* ; *to prevent*, (dat.)
 obliġere, (obtex, obtect,) *to cover*.
 obtemperare, *to obey*, (dat.)
 oblinēre, (obtinul, obtent,) *to obtain*.
 obviam, *adv. in the direction towards another person* ; obviam mittere, *to send to meet*, (dat. of person to be met.)
 Obviam occurrere alicui, *to meet him accidentally*.
 occasio, ōnis, *opportunity*.
 occidens, *setting* : (as subst.,) *the west*.
 occidere, (occid, occās,) p. 267, *to fall, to perish*.
 occidere, (occid, occis,) p. 267, *to kill, to slay*.
 occultare, *to hide*.
 occumbere, (occūbui,) *to fall* (in battle.)
 occupare, *to occupy*.
 occurrere, (occurr, occurs,) *to meet*, (dat.)
 Oceānus, *the ocean*.
 octo, *eight*.
 ōcilus, *eye*.
 ōdium, *hatred*.
 odor, ōris, *smell, odor*.
 odoratus, ūs, *smell, scent*.

offendere, (offend, offensa,) *to offend* ; *to light upon*.
 offero, *to offer*.
 officium, *duty*.
 officium præstare, *to perform a service*.
 ōleum, *oil*.
 olfacere, (olfēc, olfact,) *to smell*, (trans.)
 olor, ōris, *a swan*.
 olōrīnus, *of the swan*, (adj.)
 ōmittere, (omīs, omisa,) *to omit, neglect*.
 omnis, *all, every* : omnia, *all things, every thing*.
 ōnus, ōris, *burden*.
 onustus, *laden, burdened*.
 opācus, *shaggy*.
 operam dare, *to go about* (business,)
 opērire, *to cover*.
 operōsus, *busy*.
 opes, um, *means, resources, wealth*.
 opinari, *to think, to imagine*.
 opperiri, *to wait for*.
 oppetere, *to encounter*.
 oppidanus, *inhabitant of a town*.
 oppressor, *oppressor*.
 opprimere, (oppress, oppress,) *to oppress*, *to fall upon* ; *to crush*.
 oppugnare, *to attack, assault*.
 ops, ōpis, *f., power, assistance*.
 optimus, (superl. of bonus, good,) *the best*.
 opus, ōris, *work*.
 opus est, *there is need*. [Rendit nom as dat.; est by 'have;' abl. by 'of.' : "mihi I est *haves opus* need cibo of food."]
 opus facere, *to work* ; *to labor*.
 orāculum, *oracle*.
 ōrare, *to pray*.
 orare causam, *to plead a cause*.
 oratio, ōnis, *speech, oration*.
 orator, *an orator*.
 oratōrius, *oratorical*.
 orbis, *is, m., orb* ; *the world*.
 orbis terrarum, (the orb of the lands, =) *the world*.
 ordinare, *to arrange*.
 ordo, ōnis, (m.,) *order*.
 oriens, *rising* ; part. from orior : (as subst.,) *the east*.
 origo, ōnis, *origin*.
 oriri, (orēris, orit̄r, &c.; perf. ortus sum,) *arise*.
 ornare, *to adorn*.
 ornatus, ūs, *ornament, decoration*.
 os, ōris, *n., face*.
 os, ossis, *n., a bone*.
 ostendere, (tend, tens,) *to show*.
 Ostia, *a town in Italy, at the mouth of the Tiber*.
 ostia, pl., *mouth (of a river)*.
 ostium, *door*.
 ōtīdeus, *full of leisure, disengaged, inactive, idle*.
 ovis, *is, f., sheep*.

Pabulatum, *to forage*, (supino.)
 pene, *almost*.
 peninsula, *peninsula*.
 pōlari, *to wander about*.
 palatium, *the Palatium*, (*i. e.* the residence of Augustus on the Palatine Hill.)
 pallium, *a cloak*.
 palma, *the palm*.
 palpebra, *eyelid*.
 palumbes, *is, m. and f., wood-pigeon*.
 pārare, *to prepare, to provide, to procure*.
 parātus, *prepared*, (*part. of parare.*)
 parcere, (*pēperc.* et *para*, *parsum*, and *parctum*.) *to spare*, (*dat.*)
 pārere, *to obey*, (*dat.*)
 paries, ētis, *wall (of a house.)*
 parere, *io, (pēpēri, part.) to bring forth*.
 pars, partis *part.* partes, *a party*. (*in a state.*)
 parsimonia, *frugality*.
 pārūm, *little, too little*.
 parvulus, (*dim. of parvus*.) *little*.
 pascere, (*pāv. past.*) *to feed*, (*trans.;*)
 pasci, *to feed*, (*intrans.*)
 pastor, ōris, *a shepherd*.
 pateferi, (*see fio*, p. 178,) *to be laid bare, to be discovered*.
 pater, tris, *father*.
 Patres, (*the Fathers* =) *the Senators*.
 patientia, *patience*.
 patria, (*one's*) *country*.
 patrius, *paternal*.
 patricii, *patricians*.
 pauci, e, a, *few*. paucis post diebus, *a few days afterwards*.
 paulo, *by a little; a little*.
 paulo ante, *a little before*.
 paulo post, *a little after*.
 pauper, ōris, *poor*.
 pavidus, *fearful, timid*.
 pavo, ōnis, *peacock*.
 pavor, ōris, *fear, dread*.
 pax, pācis, *peace*.
 pacem pētere, *to sue for peace*.
 peccare, *to do wrong; to sin*.
 peccātum, *a sin*.
 pectus, ōris, *n. breast*.
 pecunia, *money*.
 pecuniōsus, *moneyed*.
 pēcus, ōris, *a, sheep, any tame animal*.
 Peleus, *the father of Achilles*.
 pellere, (*pēpēli, pula*.) *to drive; to drive back; to banish*.
 pellicere, (*pellex, plect*.) *to entice*.
 pellis, *is, hide*.
 pēnes, *in the power of*, (*prep.*)
 penna, *a wing*.
 pensum, *task*.
 per, *through, along, by*, (*sometimes over.*)
 perangustus, *very narrow*.
 percipere, *io, (percēp, percept.) to perceive*.
 per-cultus, (*part. of per-cōlere, cōlu, cult*.) *thoroughly cultivated*.
 perdere, (*perdidi, perditum*.) *to lose; to ruin; to destroy*.

peregrinari, *to go abroad; avos peregrinantes, birds of passage*.
 peregrinus, *a foreigner*.
 perfectus, *perfect*.
 perferre, (*peritūli, perlitum*.) *to endure*.
 perficere, *io, (fēc, fect.) to perform, complete*.
 perfidia, *perfidy*.
 perfūga, *a deserter*.
 periclitari, *to be in danger*. Homo periclitatur de vitā, *the man's life is at stake*.
 periculosus, *dangerous, full of danger*.
 periculum, *danger*.
 perinde, *just so; perinde est ac si, it is just as if*.
 perimere, (*perēm, perempt*.) *to carry off*.
 peritus, *skilled in*, (*gen.*)
 permanēre, (*permans, permans*.) *to remain; to continue*.
 permittre, *to permit*.
 pernicies, ēi, *destruction, ruin*.
 perpersus, *having suffered, or endured*.
 perpētūus, (*33*.) *perpetual*.
 per-pinguis, *very fat*.
 Persa, *a Persian*.
 perseverare, *to persevere*.
 persolvere, (*solv, solut*.) *to pay*. persolvere penas, *to suffer punishment*.
 per-spicere, *io, to look through; see plainly*.
 perstare, *to persist*.
 per-suadere, (*dat.*) *to persuade*.
 perturbatio, *perturbation*.
 pervēnire, (*pervēn, pervent*.) *to arrive at*.
 pes, pēdis, *foot; pēde prēmere, (to press with the foot.) to tread upon*.
 pestis, *plague, pestilence*.
 pētere, (*petiv, petiti*.) *to make for; to seek; to beg; to aim at*.
 petere pacem, *to sue for peace*.
 phālēræ, *trappings or furniture of a horse*.
 phāstanus, *a pheasant*.
 Philocētēs, or Philocēsta, *a Grecian hero*.
 philosophus, *a philosopher*.
 piaculum, *an offering of atonement*.
 pietas, ōtis, *dutiful affection; affection*.
 pingere, (*pinx, pict*.) *to paint*.
 pirāta, *a pirate*.
 piscis, *is, fish*.
 Pisiistrātus, *an Athenian who usurped sovereign power at Athens*.
 pius, *dutifully affectionate; pious*.
 placare, *to appease*.
 placēre, *to please*, (*dat.*)
 placide, *calmly*.
 plāne, *quite*.
 planities, ēi, *level ground, plain*.
 planta, *a plant*.
 Platææ, *a town in Bœotia*.
 Plato, ōnis, *Plato, (a Grecian philosopher.)*
 plaudere, *3*.
 plēbāli, *the plebeians*.

plebs, *the people*, (as distinguished from the patricians or nobles,) *the plebeians*; G. plēbis.

pietere, *to twist, twine, weave, punish*.

plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *the most*.

plerumque, *generally*.

plorare, *to cry; to weep aloud; to bewail plus, more*, G. pluris.

Pœcile, *the painted portico at Athens*.

poëma, ætis, *a poem*, App. ii.

pœnam dare, *to suffer punishment*.

pœnitentia, *penitence, regret (for)*.

pœnitet, *it repents*. Take acc. as nom. me I, pœnitet *repent*.

Pœnus, *a Carthaginian*.

poëta, *a poet*.

pollicēri, (pollicētus,) *to promise*.

ponipa, *a procession*.

pomum, *an apple, or other fruit*.

pōnere, (pōsui, pōsit,) *to place*.

pons, pontis, *a bridge*.

Pontifex Maximus, *the Pontifex Maximus, or Chief Priest*.

Pontus Euxinus, *the Euxine, now the Black Sea*.

pōpulāri, *to lay waste; to ravage*.

popularis, *popular*.

pōpulus, i, f., *a poplar tree*.

pōpulus, i, *a people, the people*.

por-rigere, (rex, rect,) *to extend, stretch out*.

porta, *gate*.

portare, *to carry*.

porticus, ūs, *portico*.

portus, ūs, *port, harbor*.

posse, *to be able, can*.

possidēre, (possēd, possess,) *to possess*.

post, *after*, (acc.)

postea, *afterwards*.

posthac, *hereafter, afterwards*.

postpōnere, (pōsu, pōsit,) *to put after*.

pōstquam, *after*.

postulare, *to demand*.

pōtens, (potentis,) *powerful*.

potentia, *power*.

potestas, ætis, *power*.

pōtio, ōnis, *drink*.

potiri, (pōtior,) *to get possession of*.

pōtius, *rather*.

præ, *before; in comparison with; for*.

præbere, *to afford; to supply; præbere se, to prove or show oneself*.

præceptor, 7, *teacher, preceptor*.

præceptum, 7, *precept*.

præcipere, io, (præcēp, præcept,) 7, *to direct, instruct*.

præcipitare, *to cast down headlong; to ruin*.

præclārus, 30, *illustrious*.

præcurrere, *to run before; to outrun*, (dat.)

præda, *booty, prey*. prædæ esse, *(to be for a prey)*, *to be the prey*.

prædicare, *to proclaim; to extol*.

prædicere, (prædix, prædict,) *to foretell*.

prædictus, *endued with*.

præmittere, (mīs, miss,) *to send forward to send on*.

præmium, *reward*.

præsens, tis, *present*.

præsidium, *a defence; a garrison*.

præstans, tis, *excellent*.

præstare, *to be better; to excel*, (dat. of acc. of person :)—*to show, or exhibit*

præstat, *it is better*.

præterea, *besides; more*

præter-ire, *to pass (by)*

præteritus, *past*.

prætor, ōris, prætor, *a Roman magistrate*.

prætorius, *relating to a prætor; prætorian; of prætorian rank*

prætura, *the prætorship*.

prātum, *meadow*.

prāvitas, ætis, *wickedness*.

prāvus, *wicked, depraved*.

præces, um, *prayers*.

præmere, (press, press,) *to press*.

pretiōsus, 25, *precious*.

prīmum, *first*, (adv. :) ut primum, *as soon as*.

prīmus, *first*.

princeps, *first; (as subst.) prince, chief*

principatus, ūs, *the first place*.

prior, *former*.

priscus, *ancient, old*.

privare, *to deprive*, (abl.)

privatus, *private*.

pro, *for; in proportion to*, (abl.)

prōbare, *to approve of*.

prōbati, *to be approved of*.

prōcēdere, *to go along*.

prœcella, *storm*.

prœcētus, *tallness, height*.

prœcul, *afar off; at a distance*.

prōdere, (prœdid, prœdit,) *to betray*.

prōdesse, (prœfui,) p. 177, *to profit, do good to*.

prōditio, ōnis, *treachery*.

prōditor, *a betrayer; a traitor*.

prōducere, (dux, duct,) *to lead forth*.

prœlium, *battle*.

prœlium committere, 15, ii, *to join battle*

prōfecto, *in truth, assuredly*.

prōfectus, *set out, departed*.

prōficere, io, (fēc, fect,) *to make progress*

prōfigere, *to rout*.

prōhibere, 21, *to prohibit, forbid*.

prōles, is, f. *offspring*.

promiscuus, *mixed*.

promissum, *promise*.

promisso stare, *to stand to a promise to keep a promise*.

prōmittere, (promis, promiss,) *to promise*

prope, *near*.

propensus, *inclined*.

propior, *nearer*.

propōnere, (proposu, proposit,) *to eluct before, 19; to draw; to offer*.

propositum, *purpose, intention*

proprius, *peculiar to; (ones) own*.

propter, *on account of*.

prorsus, 21, 31, *thoroughly, altogether*.

prorumpere, (prorūp, prorūpt,) to burst forth; to rush out.

pro-sternere, Ex. 17, to overthrow, beat down.

prostravi. See prosterno.

provenire, to come forth; to spring up.

providus, circumspect, wise.

provincia, 14, province.

proximus, nearest, next.

prudens, cautious, sensible.

prudentia, prudence.

publice, 35.

publicus, public.

puclcus, modest, chaste.

puclor, ōris, shame, bashfulness.

puella, girl.

puer, ōri, boy.

pueritia, boyhood.

a primā pueritiā, from his earliest boyhood, (childhood.)

pugna, battle.

pugnare, to fight.

pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful.

pulchritudo, inis, beauty.

pullus, young (of a bird.)

pulvis, ōris, dust.

Pūnicus, Pūnic, (that is, Carthaginian.)

puniri, to be punished.

puppis, is, stern (of a vessel.)

purpurea, purple.

purus, pure.

putare, to think.

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.

Pyrrhi bellum, the war with Pyrrhus.

Pythagorēus, a disciple of Pythagoras; a Pythagorean.

Quadraginta, forty.

querere, (questiv, questit,) p. 173, seek; seek for; inquire; ask for.

questio, ōnis, question.

questorius, questorian; of questorian rank, (i. e. who has been questor.)

quālis, such as; of what kind.

quam, than, how, with superl. as—as possible, (using the positive.)

quam ut, omit these words and render by the inf.

(major, too great, quam ut sit, to be.)

quam celerrime, as quickly as possible.

quam primum, as soon as possible.

quam plurimū, as many as possible.

quam maxime, as greatly as possible.

quādiu, as long as; how long.

quamobrem, wherefore, why.

quamquam, although.

quamvis, however much; although.

quando? when?

quātoque, 18, (il.) how greatly, as greatly.

quantus, how great; (when tantus is omitted) as great as.

quāsi, as if; as it were.

quatuor, four.

—que, and.

quercus, ūs, oak.

quēri, (quest,) to complain.

qui, quē, quod, who, which, that

quia, because.

quid? what?

quidam, a certain one.

quidem, indeed.

ne—quidem, not even.

quidnam, what, (as dependent in interrogative.)

quidni? why—not?

quiescere, (quiesv,) to rest.

quin. See list of conjunctions.

Quirites, iam, Quirites, a name of the Romans.

quis, any.

quis? who?

quid agis? how do you do? what are you doing?

quispiam, some, somebody.

quisquam, any, anybody.

quisque, each, everybody.

quisquis, whoever.

quo—eo, tho—the.

quod, because, that, (adv.)

quōmodo, how.

quōniā, since.

quōque, also, too.

quot —? how many?

quōtidie, daily.

quōties, how often.

quōtus, how many.

quum, when, since, although.

quum—tum, both—and also.

quum maxime, just as.

Rādus, a ray, a beam.

rāmus, a branch.

rana, a frog.

rāpere, io, (rapu, rapt,) to snatch, to seize, hold of.

raptus, -ūs, rape.

raro, seldom.

ratio, ōnis, reason, an account.

rātus, (part. of reor,) p. 167, 65.

recedere, (recess,) to retire, to withdraw.

recipere, io, (recēp, recept,) 29. recipere, to return.

recitare, to recite.

reclūdere, (reclus,) p. 268. Voc on perf. si, to open, reveal.

recte fācere, to do right: to act rightly.

rectus, straight, right.

re-cumbere, (cubu, cubit,) to lie down.

recuperare, to recover.

recusare, 23, ii. to refuse.

reddere, (reddid, reddit,) to return; red-

dere ratiōnem, to give an account.

redire, 30, to return.

reditus, ūs, 36, ii. a return.

reditum secundare, to grant a favourable return.

reducere, to lead back

refert, it is of importance: nihil refert, it is of no importance; makes no difference.

reficere, io, to refresh, rest.

refugere, io, to flee back.

refulgere, (refuls.) to shine.

regalis, royal.

regere, (rex, rect.) to rule, to govern

regina, queen.

regio, ōnis, region, district, country.

regius, royal.

regnare, to reign.

regnum, kingdom.

relicere, io, (relic, reject.) 30, to reject.

relinquere, (reliqu, relict.) to leave.

reliquis, remains.

reliquus, remaining; but see p. 141, 78.

remanere, (remans,) to remain.

remedium, 20, remedy.

reminisci, to recollect, (gen. or acc.)

remissio, ōnis, a relaxation, lessening, diminution.

remittere, (remis, remiss,) to remit: pœnam remittere, to excuse a punishment.

renovare, to renew.

reor, to think.

repêre, (reper, repert.) to find. See Syn.

repêre, (petiv, petitt.) to seek again.

reportare, to carry back: victoriam reportare, to gain a victory.

reprehendere, to blame, censure.

reprehensio, ōnis, blame.

repudiare, to reject.

requirere, to seek again; to require; to miss.

rêrum natūra, nature.

res, rei, thing, affair.

res gestæ, achievements, deeds, (in war), successes, &c.

resistere, to resist, (dat.)

resônare, (sonu, sonit,) to resound.

respondere, (respond, respons,) to answer. commonwealth.

restituere, 18.

reticere, (reticul,) to keep silence about.

retinere, (retina, retent,) to hold back; to retain.

retribuere, to give back, to repay: gratiam retribuere, to recompense.

rous, an accused person.

reverti, (reversus,) to turn back; return.

reviviscere, to revive.

rex, régis, king.

Rhênus, the Rhine.

Rhōdānus, the Rhone.

ridere, to laugh, laugh at.

rigere, to be stiff, dried up

ripa, bank. Syn.

risus, ūs, laughter.

robustus, robust, strong.

rôgare, to ask.

rogatio, ōnis, asking, proposal; a bill proposed.

rogus, funeral pile.

Rōma, Rome.

Romānus, Roman.

ros, rôris, dew.

rosa, rose.

rotundus, round.

Râbico, ōnis, the Rubicon, a stream that formed the boundary between Italy and Gallia Cisalpina.

rudere, to bray.

rudis, uneducated.

ruere, to rush, hurl down.

rugire, to roar.

rus, rûris, the country. See p. 304, (160*.)

rure, from the country.

rupi, in the country.

Sabine, a Sabine woman.

sacer, cra, crum, (devoted to the gods,) hence (1) sacred, (2) accursed.

sacerdos, ōtis, priest, priestess.

sacra, sacred rites or solemnities; festivals.

sacramentum, 9, military oath, a pledge.

sacrum, a sacrifice.

sæpe, often.

sævire, to rage, to act cruelly.

sagitta, arrow.

Saguntini, the Saguntines.

Saguntum, Saguntum, a town.

Sâlmis, Inis, an island near the coast of Attica.

salio, to spring, leap.

salius, salt, saltish.

saltare, to dance, to leap.

saltem, at any rate; at all events; at least.

saltus, ūs, a woodland pasture.

saluber, (salubris,) healthful.

salus, ūtis, safety, welfare.

salutare, to salute.

salvus, safe.

sanare, to cure.

sancire, to confirm.

sane, assuredly.

sanguis, Inis, blood.

sânus, sound; in health.

sâpere, to taste, be wise.

sapiens, ntis, wise.

sarcina, burden, package.

Sardes, Ium, Sardis.

satiare, to satisfy.

satis, enough; satis magnus, pretty considerable.

satisfacere, (satisfec, satisfact,) to satisfy (dat.)

Saturnus, i, Saturn.

saxum, rock, stone.

scélus, ūris, crime.

sceptum, sceptre.

scientia, knowledge.

Scîpio, ōnis, Scipio, a celebrated Roman general.

scire, to know.

scôpus, a mark.

scribere, to write.

scriptor, oris, writer, author.

scriptum, thing written; writing.

centum, *si. field.*
 se, *himself, herself, itself themselves:—*
or him, her, it, them.
 secedere, (secess, secess,) *to withdraw.*
 secundus, *second, favorable: res secundæ,*
prosperity.
 securus, *is, axe.*
 securus, *without fear; without anxiety.*
 sed, *but.*
 sedere, (sēd, sess,) *to sit.*
 sedes, *seat, abode, settlement.*
 seditio, onis, *sedition.*
 sēges, ōtis, *corn sown; crop.*
 segnitèr, *lazily.*
 sejungere, (junn, junct,) *32.*
 sella, *chair.*
 sēmen, inis, *seed.*
 semper, *always, ever.*
 sempiternus, *eternal.*
 senator, *a senator. Qno senatore, (who*
being a senator, =) for if he was a sen-
ator.
 senatus, ūs, *senate.*
 senectūs, ūtis, *old age.*
 senescere, *to grow old. sēnex, sēnis, old*
man.
 sententiā, *opinion, meaning.*
 sentire, (sens,) *to feel, perceive.*
 sepelire, (sepelio, sepult,) *to bury.*
 septentrio, ōnis, *the north; properly the*
seven stars in the Great Bear.
 sequi, (secūtus, or sequutus,) p. 176, *to*
follow.
 sērare, (sēv, sāt,) *to sow; plant.*
 sermo, ōnis, *discourse, conversation.*
 sēro, *late; too late.*
 serpentes, *snakes.*
 servare, *to keep; to preserve.*
 servire, *to be a slave; to be the slave of,*
(dat.)
 servitūs, ūtis, *slavery.*
 servus, *slave.*
 sese, the acc. of sui doubled—render be-
 fore an infin., "*that key.*"
 severitas, *seriousness.*
 si, *if.*
 signum, *sign, standard.*
 silere, *to be silent.*
 silva, *wood.*
 silvester, *woody.*
 similis, *like.*
 simplex, icis, *simple.*
 simul, *at the same time.*
 simul ac, *as soon as.*
 simul atque, *as soon as.*
 simulare, *to pretend.*
 sincerus, *sincere, genuine.*
 sine, *without.*
 sinere, (stvi,) *to permit, suffer.*
 singuli, *one; one apiece.*
 sitire, *l, to be thirsty.*
 sitis, *is, thirst.*
 situs, *situated: situm esse in cā re, to*
consist in that.
 situs, -us, *situation: nature (of a coun-*
try.)

socius, *ally, associate; partner, compan-*
ion.
 Socrates, *is, a great Athenian philosopher*
sol, solis, the sun.
 solatium, *comfort, consolation.*
 solennia, *solemn rites; games.*
 solere, (solitus,) *to be wont or accustomed*
solebat, solitus est, used.
 solium, *throne.*
 solum, *only.*
 solum, *soil.*
 solus, (G. lus,) *alone; only.*
 solvere, (solv, solūt,) p. 173, *to loose,*
to pay.
 somnus, *sleep.*
 sonare, (sonu, sonit,) *to sound.*
 sonus, *sound.*
 soror, ōris, *si. ter.*
 sora, sortis, *lot.*
 spargere, (spars, spars,) *to scatter*
 speciosus, 31, *beautiful, handsome.*
 spectare, *to behold; to look at; to look to*
speculari, to watch for.
 sperare, *to hope; to hope for.*
 spernere, (sprēv, sprēt,) *Sec*
Synon., to despise.
 spes, ei, *hope.*
 spiritus, ūs, *breath.*
 splendēre, *to glitter.*
 spoliare, *to rob of, despoil, (abl.)*
 spondere, (spōpond,) *to prom-*
ise solemnly.
 sponsor, *a surety.*
 stabilitas, *stability.*
 stagnum, 15, *a pool or lake.*
 stare, (stēt, stāt,) *to stand;*
stare also means to cost.
 stare promisso, *to stand to or keep a*
promise.
 statim, 12, *immediately.*
 statio, post, &c., (pl. stationes = *guards.*)
 statuarius, *sculptor.*
 status, ūs, *state, condition.*
 stella, *star.*
 sternere, (strāv, strāt,) *to stric,*
throw down.
 stomāchus, *the stomach.*
 stringere, (strinx, strict,) *to bind.*
 struere, (sirux, struct,) p. 173, *to pile up,*
build.
 studēre, *to pursue, (to study, &c.); to be*
fond of; to favor, (dat.)
 studiosus, *desirous of; devoted to.*
 studium, *zeal, pursuit.*
 stultus, *foolish;—a fool.*
 stupere, *to be astounded.*
 suavis, *sweet.*
 sub, *under; acc. (after verbs of motion)*
or abl.
 subigere, (ēg, act,) 18, *li.—also to till*
cultivate.
 subire, *to undergo.*
 subito, *suddenly.*
 subitus, *sudden.*
 subvenire, *to succor, (dat.)*
 succurrere, *to succor, (dat.)*

subdicere, *to*. (subjē, subject.) 36.
 sublime, 16, *on high*.
 subtilis, *fine-spun ; fine ; shrewd, &c.*
 succedere, (success,) *to succeed ; take the place of : successurus, who was to succeed.*
 succensere, 22, *to be angry*, (dat.)
 succumbere, (succūbui,) *to yield to*.
 succus, *juice, moisture*.
 sudare, *to be in a perspiration*.
 suescere, *to grow accustomed*.
 sufficere, (sufficio,) *to be enough*
 sumere, (sumps, sumpt,) p. 172, *iv., to take*.
 summa, *a sum*.
 summum imperium, *the chief command ; supreme power*.
 sumptus, ūs, *expense*.
 super, *above*.
 supērare, *to conquer :—montem, to cross a mountain*.
 superbe, *proudly*.
 superbire, *to behave proudly*.
 superbus, *proud*.
 superstitio, ōnis, 21, *superstitious*.
 supervacuus, ūs, *unnecessary, superfluous*.
 suppeditare, *to supply*.
 supervēnire, *to come upon ; to approach unobserved*, with dat.
 supplicium, *punishment*.
 supra, *above*.
 surdus, *deaf*.
 suscipere, *to*, (suscēp, suscept,) *to undertake*.
 suspicio, ōnis, 30, *mistrust, suspicion*.
 sustinere, (sustinu, sustent,) 29, *to endure*.
 suus, a, um, *his, hers, its, their, &c.*
 Syracusē, ārum, *Syracuse*.

Tābula, *tablet, &c. ; tabulæ, account-books*.
 tacere, *to be silent*.
 tam, *so*.
 tamen, *yet, nevertheless*.
 tandem aliquando, *at last*.
 tangere, (tētig, tact,) *to touch*.
 tanquam, *as if*.
 tanti, *for so much ; for that* (gen. of price.)
 tantum, *only*.
 tardus, *slow*.
 Tarentinus, a *Tarentine, (i. e. inhabitant of Tarentum)*.
 taurus, *bull*.
 tectum, ō, *roof, house*.
 tēgere, (tex, tect,) *to cover*.
 tegumentum, *covering*.
 tēlum, *missile, dart, weapon*.
 temerarius, *rash*.
 temere, *rashly, easily*.
 nec temere, *nor—easily ; and—not easily*.
 temeritas, *rashness*.
 temperare, *to govern ; to regulate*.
 tempestas, *season, storm*.

templum, *temple*.
 tempus, ōris, *time*.
 tempus anni, *season of the year*.
 temporibus inservire, *to accommodate oneself to the times*.
 tendere, (tendi, tens,) p. 171, (ii.) *to stretch*.
 tenere, p. 169, ii., *to hold*.
 tēnus as far as, up to, (prep.)
 tepere, *to be warm*.
 terere, (triv, trit,) *to rub*.
 terrere viam, *to tread a way often to travel it often*.
 terminare, 32, *to limit, bound*.
 terra, *earth, land*.
 terrā marique, *by sea and land*.
 terrere, *to frighten ; to terrify*.
 terrestris, *earthly ; on earth*.
 tertius, *third*.
 Teutoburgensis, *Teutoburgian*.
 Thelæ, ārum, *Thelæ*.
 thesaurus, *treasure*.
 Tiberis, is, (m.) *the Tiber, a river in Italy*.
 tigris, Idis, (f.,) *tiger*.
 tilia, *a lime-tree*.
 timere, *to fear*.
 timidus, *timid*.
 Timoleon, ontis, *Timoleon, a Corinthian general*.
 tiro, ōnis, *a beginner*.
 toga, a toga, *the robe worn by Romans of the upper classes*.
 tolerare, *to bear ; to endure*.
 tonare, (tonu, tonit,) *to thunder*.
 tondere, *to shear*.
 torpere, p. 169, iv., *to be stiff and motionless*.
 torquis, is, *chain (worn round the neck)*.
 torvus, *stern*.
 tōtes, *so often*.
 totus, G. ius, *whole*.
 tractare, *to handle ; to treat*.
 tradere, (tradid, tradit,) *to deliver ; to relate*.
 trahere, (trax, tract,) p. 172, (iii.) *to draw, drag*.
 trajicere, *to*, (trajēc, trajet,) 24, *to cross*.
 trans, *across*.
 transigere, (fix, fix,) *to transact*.
 transfuga, 16, *a deserter*.
 transitus, ūs, *passing through ; crossing*.
 transire, *to pass over*.
 tres, *three*.
 tribuere, *to allot to*.
 tribunal, ālis, *tribunal*.
 tribūni militum, *military tribunes*.
 ——— plēbis, *tribunes of the people*.
 tribunus, *a tribune*.
 tributum, *tribute*.
 tristis, *sad*.
 triumphare, *to triumph*.
 Troja, *Troy*.
 trucidare, *to slaughter ; to butcher*.
 truncus, *trunk*.
 tu, thou.

treri, to defend.
tum, then: tum—tum, both—and.
turbare, to disturb; to throw into confusion.

Turca, a Turk.
turpis, base, disgraceful.
turris, is, a tower.
tussilago, Inis, the name of a plant.
tussis, is, a cough.
utrus, safe.
utus, a, um, thine, thy: tuum est, it is your business, (part, duty, &c.)
tympauni, a drum.
tyrann is, tyrant.

Uber, ōris, breast, dug.
abertas, fertility.
ubi, when, where, after
ubicunque, wherever.
ubinam, where.
ubique, everywhere.
ullus, any: nec ullus, and nō; G. ius.
ultra, beyond.
ultra, of his own accord: ultro incusare, to volunteer an accusation against (a person;) to accuse a man deliberately.

Ulysses, is, Ulysses.
umbra, shade, shadow.
umbraculum, protection from the heat.
una, in one place, together.
unda, wave.
unde, whence.
undique, from all sides.
universus, whole.
anquam, ever.
unus, G. ius, one.
urbs, urbis, city: ab urbe conditā, from the building of the city.
urere, (uss, ust,) to burn.
ursus, a bear.
usque ad, quite up to; up to.
usus, need, want.

ut. See list of conjunctions, p. 318: ut—sic. Sometimes so that;—on condition that.

uter, utrius, which (of two.)
uterque, each.
uti, that, as.
utilis, useful, good (for any purpose.)
utilitas, utility, use.
utinam, would that.
utrum, whether. See p. 295, (51.) In sentences that are not dependent, it is to be untranslated.

ava, grape.
uxor, ōris, wife.

Vācare, to be free from, to have leisure, (abl.)
vagari, to wander.
valde, very.
vale, farewell.
valens, tis, strong.
valde, to be strong; to be well; to be able.

Valerius Maximus, a Roman historian.
validus, strong.
vallis, is, a valley.
vanitas, emptiness.
vanus, empty, vain.
vapor, vapor.
Varianus, (adj.) of Varius.
varietas, variety: also diversity of color
vārius, various.
vas, vādis, m., surety: vādem fieri alicujus, to become anybody's surety
vas, vāsis, n., a vessel.
vastare, 9, to destroy, lay waste.

—ve, or.
vehemens, ntis, violent, eager.
vehementer, 25, vehemently.
vehere, (vex, vect,) to carry
Veientes, the Veientes, or people of Veii.
vel, either, or;—even.
vēlox, ōcis, swift.
venenum, poison.
venaticus, belonging to hunting: canis venaticus, a sporting dog, a hound.
venatum, (sup.) a hunting.
venari, to hunt: venatum (supine) ire, to go a hunting.
vendere, (did, dit,) to sell.
vēnire, (ven, vent,) to come.
Vēnus, ōris, Venus, the goddess of beauty;
ver, vēris, spring.
verbum, a word.
vere, truly.
verecundus, modest.
verisimilis, probable.
vero, but.
versari, to be employed: to reside at.
versus, ūs, a verse.
vertere, (vert, vers,) to turn
vēru, n. a spit.
verum, truth; verum dicere, to speak the truth.

vērūs, true.
vere, truly.
verēri, (veritus sum,) to fear.
vespa, wasp.
vesper, ōris, the evening.
vesci, to feed (on,) abl.
vester, tra, trum, your, yours (of more than one.)
vestire, to clothe.
vestis, garment, dress.
vētare, (vetu, vetit,) to forbid.
vētus, ōris, old. Pl. neut., vetera; superl., veterrimus.
vetustas, antiquity.
vetustus, old.
vexare, to vex; to harass.
via, way.
vicinus, near.
vicissitudo, Inis, change
victimā, victim.
victōria, a victory.
victus, ūs, food.
victus, conquered.
vidēre, (vīd, vīs,) p. 170, vīl to see; vīdēri, to be seen to seem.

vīgāre, p. 169 iv.
 vigilare, *to be awake; to watch.*
 villa, *farm-house, country-house.*
 vincere, (vic, vict,) p. 172.
 vincere, (vinx, vinct,) p. 174,
 vinculum, *chain.*
 vindicare, *to avenge.*
 vinca, *vineyard.*
 vinum, *wine.*
 violare, *to violate; to wrong.*
 vipēra, *viper.*
 vir, viri, *man, (opposed to woman;) his*
band.
 vīrēre, p. 169, iv., *to be green, to flourish.*
 vīres, iam, *strength. (See vis.)*
 virgo Vestalis, *a Vestal virgin, whose*
duty it was to keep up the sacred fire in
the temple of Vesta.
 virgultum, *bush.*
 virtus, ūtis, *manly excellence; virtue;*
courage.
 vis, 2d sing. of volo.
 vis, vim, vi; pl. vīres; *strength, power,*
force, multitude: summis viribus, with
all his might.
 vītere, p. 173, (v.) *to visit*

visus, (*See vīdēre, p. 170, vii., seen.*
 vitare, *to avoid.*
 vitis, is, *vine.*
 vitium, *fault, vice.*
 vituperare, *to reprove; to blame; to*
chide.
 vīvere, (vix, vict,) p. 173, (vi,) *to live.*
 vivus, *alive.*
 vix, *scarcely; with difficulty.*
 vōcare, *to call; to invite.*
 volo, (velle, volui,) *to be willing. to*
wish.
 volare, *to fly.*
 voluntas, ūtis, *inclination, will.*
 voluptas, ūtis, *pleasure.*
 vox, vōcis, *voice; also speech, exclamation.*
 vulnerare, *to wound.*
 vulnus, ūris, *wound.*
 vulpes, is, (f.) *fox.*
 vultus, ūs, *countenance, look*
 Xēnōphon, ōntis, *a Grecian general, an*
elegant writer and historian.
 Xerxes, is, *Xerxes, a king of Persia.*

ENGLISH-LATIN INDEX.

- a) p. refers to the page: numerals without p. to the Vocabularies on the Exercises, Pt. II., (if they are above 6.) Numerals enclosed in a parenthesis refer to the Exercises, Pt. II.
- b) A verb in *era*, when the penult is not marked long, belongs to the third conjugation. Verbs of the 2d conj. have the penult marked long, as *ere*.
- c) When a verb is separated by a hyphen from its preposition, the perfect of the simple verb is to be looked for in the lists. Thus *ob-tegere*: look for *teg-o* in the list of the verbs of the third ending in a *k* sound.
-

Able, (to be,) *posse, quire, (queo.)*
 abound, *abundare*, abl.
 about, (= concerning,) *de*, abl.
 above, *super, supra*, (prep.)
 absent, (to be,) *absesse*.
 accomplish, *conficere, fēc, fect.*
 accident, *casus, ūs*.
 according to, *secundum*, (prep.)
 account of, (on,) *ob, propter*.
 accuse, *accusare*.
 accused-person, *reus*.
 accustomed (to be,) *solēre, solitus*.
 accustom themselves, *consuescere*.
 accustom yourself, *te assuefacere (fēc, fect.)*
 acquire the power, *facultatem excolere, (colu, cult.)*
 acquit, *absolvere, (solv, solūt,)* gen. of charge.
 across, *trans*, (prep.)
 act, *agere, (ēg, act:)* act rightly, *recte facere*.
 action, *actio, ōnis*.
 act-proudly, *superbire*, 9.
 add, *addere, (did, dīt.)*
 adorn, *dēcorare*, 7; *ornare*.
 advantage, *utilitas*: to offer advantages, *utilitatem* or *utilitates habere*; *præbēre, or afferre*.
 advice, *consilium*: by the advice of my uncle, *avunculo auctore*.
 affair, *res, ei*.

affection, *amor, ōris*.
 afflict, *affligere, (flig, flict.)*
 afford, *præstare, (stīt, stat.)*
 after, prep. *post*, (with acc.)
 after-that, *posthac*.
 afterwards, *postea*.
 again, *rursus*: (= once more,) *iterum*.
 against, *contra, adversus*, acc.: in with acc. (of feelings, actions, &c., against a person.)
 Agamemnon, *Agamemnon, G. ōnis*.
 age, (= time of life,) *etās, atis*; (= length of time,) *vetustas*.
 age of Augustus, *ævum Augusteum*.
 agreeable, *jucundus*; *suavis*, (41.)
 aim at, *studēre, (dat.)*
 air, *aër, aëris*, m.
 Alexander, G. *dri*.
 all, *omnis*.
 ally, *socius*.
 almost, *prope, pene*.
 along, *secundum*.
 Alps, *Alpes*, G. *ium*.
 already, *jam*.
 altar, *ara*.
 although, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi*; *quamquam, quamvis, licet, quum*.¹
 always, *semper*.
 ambassador, *legatus*.
 ambition, *ambitio, ōnis*.
 amongst, among, *inter*, acc.
 amongst (a people,) *apud*, with acc.

¹ See p. 312, (253—255.)

ancient, *antiquus*.
 ancients, the, *veteres*.
 and, *et, ac, atque, que*.
 anger, *ira*.
 angry (to be,) *irasci*, dat.: *succensere*, dat.
 announce, *nuntiare*.
 answer, *respondere*, (*spond, spons.*)
 ant, *formica. æ*.
 any. See page 307, (191.)
 any-one, (after negative words,) *quisquam*. See note 3. Ex. 13.
 apiece, never to be translated, but the distributive numeral to be used.¹ See p. 142.
 Apollo, *G. inis*.
 appear, (= seem) *videri, vis*.
 appearance, p. 24, *species, ei*.
 appease, *placare*.
 approve of, *probare*.
 arise, *oriri (ortus,)* *ex-oriri*, (45.)
 arm, *brachium*.
 arms, *arma, pl*.
 army, *exercitus, ùs*.
 arrive, *venire; advenire*.
 arrive at, *pervenire ad*.
 arrow, *sagitta*.
 art, *ars, artis*.
 as, *ut*.
 as, after *tam, talis, tantus. tot, is quam, qualis, quantus, quot*, respectively.
 as, after *idem, is qui, (or ac, atque.)*
 as it were, *quasi*.
 as long as, *quandiu*.
 as many as possible, *quam plurimi*.
 as possible, *quam* before the superlat.
 as soon as, *simul ac; ut primum; quum primum; ubi; ut*.
 ascertain, *explorare*.
 asleep, to be, *dormire*.
 ashamed, (*am—of,*) *pudet*.
 ask, *rogare*.²
 ass, *asinus*.
 assault, (a town,) *oppugnare, invadere*.
 assist, *adjuvare*.
 assistance, *auxilium*.
 at, (of a place, near which a battle is fought, &c.) *apud, (or ad.)*
 at-a-distance, *procul*.
 at a great price, *magni*.
 at-home, *domi*.
 at last, *denique*.
 at nothing, *nihili*.
 at once, *simul*.
 at-the-right-time, *in tempore*.
 Athens, *Athènes, òrum*.
 Athenian, *Atheniensis*.
 atrocious, *atrox, ocis*.
 attack, *adgrèdi, gre;* *adoriri. ort:* attack, (= charge an enemy,) *impetum facere:* to be attacked, *impugnari*.

attentive, *studiosus, (gen.)*
 Augustus. See age
 Autumn, *Auctumnus*
 avarice, *avaritia*.
 avenge, *vindicare*.
 avoid, *vitare*.
 awake, to be, *vigilare*.
 awaken, *excitare*.
 aware, to be, *intelligere, (lex, lect.)*
 Bad, *pravus, malus, inutilis*.
 bake, *côquere*.
 band, *manus, ùs*.
 banish, *pellere, (pépul, puls.)*
 banishment, *exsilium*.
 bank, *ripa*.
 bark, *cortex, icis, m.*
 base, *turpis*.
 battle, *prælium*.
 battle of Cannæ, — of Marathon *pugna Cannensis, — Marathonia*.
 be with me, *mecum una esse*
 beam, *radius*.
 bear, *ursus*.
 bear, *ferre, (tul, lat.)*
 beard, *barba*.
 beasts, *feræ, bellua*.
 beat, *ferire, (percussus, percussus.)*
 beautiful, *pulcher, (root pulchr.)*
 beauty, *pulchritudo:* (= elegance,) *èlegantia*.
 because, *quia*.
 becomes, *fit, (see fio.)*
 become, *evadere, (vas, vas.)*
 become acquainted with, *innotescere, 19.*
 becoming, (to be,) *décère, acc.*
 befall, *accidere, (accidi,) dat.*
 before, adv., *antea*.
 before, prep. *ante, acc.*
 before, (standing before a sentence,) *antèquam*.
 beg, *rogare, orare*.
 begin, *côpisse, (began, before pass. infin. captus est;)* *incipere, 8.*
 begin to flourish, *flouescere*.
 beguile, *fallere, (fèfelli.)*
 behind, *pône, (prep.)*
 behold, *adspicere, conspécere*.
 behave-proudly, *superbire, (followed by in with acc.)*
 believe, *credère, dat., (credid, credit.)*
 believed, I am, *mihi creditur*.
 bend down, *in-flectere*.
 benefit, *beneficium*.
 besiege, *obsidère, (sèd, sess.)*
 besieger, *obsidens*.
 best, *optimus*.
 bestow, *tribuere, impertire*

¹ For instance, to translate 'one apiece,' 'two apiece,' use the distributive numeral for one, two, &c., (singuli, bini): 'Two oboli apiece,' (acc.,) *binos obolos*.

² In Exercise 21, Pt. II., translate 'we ask ourselves,' by *queremus*.

³ Followed by the *dat* of the person.

- 37** 'Open' is to be untranslated,
and the person put in the dative.
betray, *prodere, prodidi, proditum*.
betray confidence, *fidem fallere*.
better, *melior*; adv. *melius*.
beyond, *preter, ultra*.
bigger, *major*.
bite, p. 170, vii., *mordere*.
bird, *avis*.
bitter, *amarus*.
Black Sea, *Pontus Euxinus*: on the
Black Sea, *ad Pontum Euxinum*.
blame, *culpa*.
blame, *culpare*.
blind, *cæcus*.
blood, *sanguis, inis, m.*, (after it is shed,
crux.)
blossom, *florere*.
blow-off, *jactare*, (properly, to toss.)
boast, *gloriarî*.
body, *corpus, ôris*.
book, *liber, ri*.
booty, *præda*.
born, *natus*; born to, *natus ad*. before
the birth of Christ, *ante Christum nat-*
tum.
both, *uterque*, both—*and, et—et*.
bough, *ramus*.
boy, *puer*; G. *pueri*.
brave, *fortis*; bravely, *fortiter*.
bray, *rudere, rudi and rudivi, ruditum*.
break, *frangere, (frîg, fractum.)*
break one's word, *fidem violare*.
break a law, *legem violare*.
break-off, *defringere, (frîg, fract.)*
bribery, *ambitus, ūs*.
bridge, *pons, tis*.
Briseis, *Brisëis*; G. *idis*.
brother, *frater, ris*.
build, *ædificare*: a nest, *construere*.
building, *ædificium*: from the building
of the city, *ab urbe conditâ*.
burst, *rumpere*.
bury, *sepelire*.
business, *negotia, pl.*: much business,
varia negotia.
but, *sed*;—*autem*, (which must not stand
as the first word.)
but if, *sin*; *sin autem*.
buy, *emere*.
buyer, *8, emptor*.
by, (close by,) *juxta, (prep.)*
by chance, *câsu*.

Cæsar, *Cæsar, ôris*.
calamity, *calamitas, ôtis*.
call, *vocare, appellare, nûminare, dicere*:
(= invite,) *vocare*.
call upon, *convênire, (vên, vent,) acc.*
calm, *tranquillus*.
camp, *castra, pl.*

can, *posse, quire, (queo.)*
cannot, *nequeo, non possum*.
card, *carpere*.
care, *cura*
carefully, *diligenter*.
carry, *portare*; (in ships, carriages, &c.)
vehere.
carry, (a law,) *perferre, (tûl, lat.)*
carry-off, *rapere, (ui, tum.)* (of a disease)
per-imere, (im, empt.)
carry on, (war,) *gerere*.
Carthage, *Carthâg-o, inis*.
cat, *felis*.
Catilinarian, 15, li., *Catilinarius*.
ca . . . , 10, *equitatus, ūs*.
cave, *antrum*.
cease, *desinere, (desi, desit:)* ceased, be-
fore inf. pass. *desitus est*.
celebrated, *celeber*.
certain, *certus*.
certain, a, *quidam*.
chance, (by,) *fortuito câsu*.
change, { *mutare*.
 mutatio.
character, *mores, pl.*; G. *um*
chariot, *currus, ūs*.
chaste, *castus*.
chastise, *castigare*.
cherish, *fôvere*.
check, (restrain,) *coercere, (47.)*
childish, *puerilis*.
children, *liberi, pl.*
choose, *eligere, (lîg, lect:)* *deligere, (49.)*
Christian, *Christianus*.
Chryses, *Chryses*; G. *æ*.
Cicero, *Cicer-o, ômis*.
circumstance, *res, ei*.
citadel, *arz, arcis*.
citizen, *civis, is*.
city, *urbs, urbis*.
climb-over, *superare*.
cloak, *pallium*.
close-to, *juxta, (prep.)*
clothe, *vestire*.
clothe oneself, *induere, acc.*
clouds, *nubes, is*.
coarse, *crassus*.
coast, *ora*.
cold, *frig-us, ôris*.
collect, *colligere*; *conquirere*.
color, *color, ôris*.
combatants, the, *pugnantes, (pl. parti-*
ciple.)
come, *vênire, (vên, vent.)*
come-in, *intrare*.
come into flower or blossom, *flores-*
cere.
come-out, *exire*.
command, *impêrare, dat.*
commander-in-chief, *imperâtor*.
commit, *com-mittere*.
common, to make, *æquare*.¹

¹ In Ex. 33, (end.) transl. 'all the rights of patricians and plebeians were equalized,' *æqualizantur*.

compel, *cogere*, (*cōg*, *coact*.)
 complete a work, *opus*, *conficere*, (*fēc*,
fect.) or *absolvere*, (*solv* *solūt*.)
 comply with, *obēdīre*, *dat*.
 conceal, *cēlare*, (*2* acc.)
 condemn, *damnare*.
 concerning, *dē*.
 concerns, (*it*), *intērest*.
 conduct, (in a particular instance,) *fac-*
tum.
 confidence. See betray.
 congratulate, *gratulari*.
 conquer, *vincere*, (*vic*, *vict*;) *superare*:
 (= win by conquest,) *expugnare*, or
cāpere, (*cēp*, *cept*.)
 conquered, *victus*.
 conqueror, *victor*, *ōris*.
 conscience, *conscientia*: a pure or
 clear conscience, *integra conscientia*.
 consider, (= think,) *existimare*; *hā-*
berē.
 considerably, *aliquanto*, (before com-
 paratives.)
 consolation, *consolatio*, *ōnis*.
 conspiracy, 15, *il*., *conjuratio*.
 Constantinople, *Constantinopolis*, *G. is*,
Acc. im.
 consul, *consul*, *ūlis*.
 consular power, *consularis potestas*.
 consulate, *consulatus*, *ūs*.
 consult, *consulere*, (*sulu*, *sult*), *acc*.
 contend, *certare*.
 contented, *contentus*, *abl*.
 contest, 17, *certamen*.
 continue, *permanere*, (*mans*;) *perse-*
verare.
 conversation, *sermo*, *ōnis*.
 cool, *deservescere*.
 cool-down, *deservescere*, 18.
 cook, *cōquere*.
 Corinth, *Corinthus*.
 Corinthian, *Corinthius*.
 correct, *corrīgere*.
 corrupt, *corrumpere*, (*riip*, *rupt*.)
 cost, *stāre*, (*abl* of price.)
 cough, *tussis*.
 counsel, *consilium*.
 count, *numērare*.
 country, (= land,) *terra*; (= district,)
rēgio, *ōnis*; (= native country,) *pa-*
tria; (as opposed to town,) *rus*,
rūris.
 country, in the, *ruri*.
 country, into, *rus*.
 country, from, *rurs*.
 courageously, *fortiter*.
 court the favour, *amb-ire gratiam*.
 cover, *ob-lēgere*, (*tex*, *tect*.)
 crane, *grus*, *is*.
 crackle, *crēpare*, p. 168, *il*.
 create, *creare*.

create, (an office,) *institūere*, (*stīti-*
stitūt.)
 crop, *seges*, *ētis*.
 crime, *malefīcium*; *scelus*, *ōris*; *flagi-*
tium
 cross, *transjicere* or *trajicere*, (*jēc*, *ject*),
acc.
 to cross the Alps, *Alpes superare*.
 crown, *corōna*.
 " *cingere*.
 cruel, *crudēlis*.
 crush, *opprimere*, (*press*, *vress*.)
 cry, *clamor*, *ōris*.
 cry out, *clamare*.
 cry, (weep,) *flēre*,
 cultivate, *cōlere*, (*cōlu*, *cult*;) to cultivate
 our minds, *mentes excolere*.
 cure, *sānare*.
 Cures, *G. ium*.
 custom, *consuetūd-o*, *inis*.
 customary, *usitatus*.
 custody, *custodia*.
 cut-down, *cadere*, (*cēcid*, *cas*.)

Daily, *quōtidie*.
 dance, *saltare*.
 danger, *pericūlum*.
 dangerous, *periculosus*.
 daughter, *filia*.
 day, *dies*, *ei*.
 day and night, *dies noctesque*.
 dead, *mortuus*.
 death, *mors*, *tis*.
 debt, *debit*, *as alienum*; *as*, *ōris*: *as*
alienum, properly 'another man's
 brass,' (i. e. money.)
 deceive, *decipere*, *cēp*, *cept*; (if without
 intending it,) *fallere*, *fēfellī*.¹
 decree, *decernere*, (*crev*, *cret*.)
 deep, *altus*.
 defend, *defendere*, (*fend*, *fens*;)
 defend (a town) by a garrison, *prasi-*
dio firmare.
 defraud, *fraudare*, (*abl*.)
 delight, *juvare*.
 delightful, *jucundus*.
 deliver, *liberare*, *abl*.
 demand, *postulare*.
 deny, *nēgare*.
 depart, *discēdere*, *abl*.
 deprive, *privare*, (*abl*.)
 derive, *haurire*.²
 descend, 7; descent, 7, *descendere de-*
scensus.
 desert, *deserere*, (*sēru*, *sert*.)
 deserter, 16, *il*., *transfūga*.
 deserve, *merēri*, (*merit*;) well of *bēne-*
de.
 deserving of, *dignus*, *abl*.
 desire, (= eager pursuit,) *studium*.

¹ Ex. 20. 'How you deceived yourself!' *ut animus tuus te 'efellit*

² 'From' after 'haurire' is to be translated by *ex* or *ex*.

aspire, *vellere*; *cupere*, (*cupio*, *cupit*;) = express a wish, *optare*.
 desire, *libido*, *inix*; *cupiditas*.
 despise See Synonymes, p. 289
 destroy, *delire*, (*delēo*, *delet*;) *perdere*, (*perdō*, *perdit*.)
 destruction, *perniciēs*, *G. ei*; *exitium* (48.)
 detain, *detinēre*; *retardare*.
 deter, *deterēre*.
 devote oneself to, *studere*, (*dat.*)
 dictator, *dictator*, *ōris*.
 die, *mōri*, *ior*, (*mortuus sum*.)
 difference, it-makes-no—, *nihil rēfert*.
 difficult, *difficilis*.
 difficulty, *difficultas*, *ātis*.
 dignity of Curule Ædile, *Curulis Ædilitas*.
 diligent, *diligens*, *entis*.
 dinner, *cana*.
 discharge, *fungi*, (*funct.*) *abl.*
 discover, *invenire*, *rēperire*. Syn. I.
 discover, (= reveal,) *de-tēgere*.
 disease, *morbus*.
 disgraceful, *turpis*.
 dismiss, *dimittere*.
 disperse, *dissipare*.
 displease, *displicere*, *dat.*
 dispute, (= discuss,) *disputare*.
 disregard, *negligere*.
 distinguish oneself, himself, &c., *excellere*, *ui*, (*acc. of pron. not to be translated.*)
 distinguished, *insignis*, *nobilis*, *illustris*.
 distinguished, to be, *excellere*, (*ui.*)
 disturb, *turbare*.
 distress, *turbare*.
 divide, *dividere*, (*divisi*.)
 do any wrong to a man, *aliquem injurid afficere*.
 do good, *prod-esse*.
 do-wrong, *peccare*.
 do, *facere*.
 “*agere*.
 dog, *cānis*.
 don't know, *nescia*.
 doubt dubitare.
 doubt, there is no, *non est dubium* (*quin.*)
 without doubt, *haud dubie*.
 doubtful, *dubius*.
 dove, *columba*.
 dragon, *draco*, *ōnis*.
 draw, (a sword,) *stringere*,
 draw out an army, *aciem instruere* (*strux*, *struct.*)
 draw up an army in order of battle, 29.
 dress, *vestitus*.
 drink, *bibere*, (*bib*, *bibit*.)
 to drink poison, *venenum haurire*, (*haus*.)

drive, *pellere*, (*pepāl*, *puls*;) drive away *fugare*.
 drive-back, *rejacere*, *io*.
 dust, *pulvis*, *ēris*.
 duty, *officium*: to do your duty *officium facere*, or *præstare*, (*stit.*)
 dutiful affection, *pietas*, *ātis*.
 dwell, *habitare*.
 draw,¹ *trahere*.

Each, *quisque*: (of two,) *utergue*, *utroque*, *utrumque*; *G. utriusque*.

eagle, *aquila*.
 early; mature.
 early, *præmaturus*.
 earth, *terra*.
 easy, *facilis*: easily, *facile*.
 eat, *edere*, (*ēd*, *ēe*;) *vesci*, (as food.)
 economy, *parsimonia*.
 educate, *educare*.
 effectual, *efficax*.
 Egyptian, *Ægyptius*.
 either—or, *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*, *sive—sive*
 elder, the, *priscus*.
 elect, *eligere*, (*lēg*, *lect.*)
 elephant, *elephas*, *antis*.
 embrace, *amplecti*, *complecti*.
 employ, *adhibere*: to employ a trick, *dolo uti*, (*usus sum*.) *abl.*
 employment, *negotium*.
 empty, *vanus*.
 encounter death, *mortem oppetere*.
 end, *finis*, *in*.
 end, *finire*.
 never to make an end of reading, *legendi finem nunquam incōnire*.
 endure, *sustinere*, (*tinu*, *tent*;) *tolerare*, (41.)
 endowed with, *præditus*, (*abl.*)
 enemy, (private,) *inimicus*.
 enemy, (public,) *hostis*.²
 enjoy, *frui*, (*abl.*)
 enquire of, *querere ex*, (*quæsi*, *quæsit*.)
 entice, *pellere*, *io*, (*lēx*, *lect.*)
 entreat, *rōgare*.
 envy, *invidere*, (*vid*, *vis*.) *dat.*
 equal, *par*, *dat.*
 erect, (a monument, &c.,) *statuere*, *pōnere*, or *collōcare*: *dat. of person to whom*.
 escape, *vitare*.
 estate, *fundus*, *i*.
 eternal, *sempiternus*.
 even, *etiam*, (before its word).
 evening, *vesper*, *ēris*.
 even mind, *æquus animus*.
 even, not—ne—quidem.
 every, *omnis*.
 everybody, *quisque*.
 every day, *quōtidie*.

¹ In Ex. 15, 'after it' need not be translated after 'drew.'

² 'The enemy,' meaning a body of enemies, must be translated by the plural *hostes*.

evil *malum*, neut. adj., or plur. *mala*.

examine a question, *disquirere*.

example, *exemplum*.

exceedingly, *vehementer*.

excel, *præstare, præstiti*, dat. or acc. of person; abl. of thing in which.

excellent, *præstans, tis*.

excite, *excitare*: excite to anger, *ad iram concitare*.

exclude, *arcere*, (abl. of thing from which.)

exempted, to be, *liberari*, abl.

exercise, *exercere*.

exercise, *exercitatio*.

exhort, *hortari, adhortari*

expect, *expectare*.

expectation, *spes, ei*.

expense, *sumptus, ūs*

expire, *expirare*.

Fable, *fabula*.

face, *facies, ei*.

fact, (it is an allowed,) *constat*.

faith, *fides, ei*.

faithful, *fidēlis*.

fall, *cadere*.

fall-on, (= seize on,) *incessere*.

fall into, *incurrere, (incurri.)*

fall-to-the-lot-of, 19, (dat.)

fall upon, *adoriri, (adoritus,) acc.*

fall down, *decidere*.

fasten, *figere*.¹

fasten, (a vessel,) *retinēre, retinui, retentum*.

fate, *fortuna*.

father, *pat-er, ris*.

fault, *culpa*.

favor, *favere*, dat. (*fāv, faut.*)

fear, (of body,) *timor*; (of mind,) *mētus, ūs*; to be in fear, *in timore esse*.

fear, *timēre, metuere*.

feed, (trans. as a shepherd,) *pascere*, p. 173.

feed on, *vesci*, abl.

feel, p. 164, § 14, *sentire, (sens, scns.)*

feeling, *animus*.

fellow-citizen, *civis*; G. *is*.

fertility, *ubertas*.

fetch water, *aquātum*, (sup.)

fever, *febris*, abl. *i*.

few, *pauci, æ, a*.

fickleness, *levitas, atis*.

fidelity, *fides, ei*.

field, *ager*; G. *gri*; (if under tillage,) *arvum*.

fight, *pugnare*; *decertare*, (Ex. 37.)

fill, *implere, (plēv, plēt,) complere*.

find, *in-venire*; *repēre, (repēri, reper-tum.)* See Syn. I.

find-out, *de-tēgere*.

finish, *conficere, finire*; finish, (life,) Ex. 19, *vitam degere, (degi.)*

fire, *ignis*; (= conflagration,) *incendium* firm, *firmus*.

first, *primus*; at first, *primo*.

fish, *piscis, m. is*.

fit, *aptus*.

fit for, *idoneus, (dat.)*

flame, *flamma*.

flatter, *adulari, (dat. or acc.)*

flay, *deglubere*.

fleet, *classis, is*.

flesh, *caro, carnis*,

flight, *fuga*.

flock, *grex, grēgis*.

flourish, *florere*.

flower, *flos, ōris*.

flow together, 15, *li*.

fly, *volare*.

fly-from, *fugere*.

fly out, *evolare*.

foe, *hostis*.

follow *sequor, (secutus.)*

folly, *stultitia*.

fond, *cupidus, (gen.)*

food, *cibus, i*.

for, *nam, namque, enim*.

for, (= in behalf of,) *pro*.

for-a-long-time, *diu*.

forbid, p. 169, *li*, *vētare, (vetaui, vetitum.)*

force, *vis, vim, vi*; a strong force, *valit-dum præsidium*. To be in force, (of a law,) *valere*.

forces, *copiæ*.

forefathers, *mājores, or patres*.

foretell, *prædicere*.

forget, *oblivisci, (oblitus,) gen.*

forgetful, *immemor, gen.*

forgetfulness, *oblivio, ōnis*.

forgive, *ignoscere, ignovi, dat.*

formed, *comparatus*.

former, *prior*.

for-some-time, *aliquamdiu*.

fortify, *munire*.

fortune, *fortuna*.

forty-nine, *quadraginta novem*; or *novem et quadraginta*; or *undequingaginta*.

forty-ninth, *undequingagesimus*; or *quadragessimus nonus*.

foss, *fossa*.

found, (a city,) *condere*.

fountain, *fons, tis*.

fox, *vulpes, f. (7.)*

fraud, *fraus, fraudis*.

free, *liber, (abl.)*

free from, *liberare, abl.*

friend, *amicus*.

frighten, *deterreŕe*.

friendship, *amicitia*.

from, after prevent, deter, &c. *quominus* with subj.

frugality, *parsimonia*.

fruit, (of the earth,) *fruges*; (of a tree,) *fructus*; G. *ūs*.

fulfil, *explere*.

¹ For 'fastened to the wall,' say, 'fastened in the wall.'

Gain, *lucrum*.

gain, (by begging,) *impetrare*.

gain, (by exertions,) *adipisci*, (*adeptus*);

(without exertions,) *nascisci*, (*nactus*).

gain, (= earn,) *acquirere*, &

gain a victory, *victoriam reportare*.¹

game, *ludus*.

garden, *hortus*, &

garland, *corona*.

gate, *porta*; opened gates, *portae patentes*.

Gaul, *Gallus*.

general, *dux*, *dūcis*; *imperator*, (the title of a victorious Roman general.)

genius, *ingenium*.

gentle, *lenis*, *mitis*.

German, *Germanus*.

Germany, *Germania*.

get well, *convalescere*.

get acquainted with, *noscere*; *cognoscere*.

gift, *donum*.

girl, *puella*.

give, *dāre*.

give pleasure. See pleasure.

give up, *dēdere*, (*dēdidi*, *dēditum*.)

glitter, *fulgere*.

glory, *gloria*.

glorious, *gloriosus*.

go to bed, *cubitum ire*.

— to roost, *cubitum ire*.

— a hunting, *vēnātum ire*.

go away, *abire*, *discēdere*, (*cess*.)

go-on-board, *conscendere*, *scend*, *scens*, (*navem*, or *in navem*.)

go-to-battle, *in praelium ire*.

God, *Deus*.

gold, *aurum*.

good, *bōnus*.

good for, *utilis*, (*dat*.)

good fortune, *felicitas*, *ātis*.

good time, *in in tempore*.

good conduct, *honestas*, *ātis*.

goodness, *benignitas*, *ātis*.

govern, *rēgere*, *gubernare*

government, *impērium*

grain, *granum*.

grape, *uva*.

grass, *grumen*, *inis*.

grateful, *gratus*.

gratitude, *gratia*.

great, *magnus*; the great, *nobiles*, *sum*;

illustres viri.

greatest, (when degree is meant rather than size,) *summus*.

greatest possible, (the,) *quam maximus*.

greatness, *magnitudo*, *inis*.

greatly, *magnopere*.

greedy, *avidus*, (*gen*.)

Greece, *Græcia*.

Greek, *Græcus*.

grief, *dolor*, *ōris*.

grieve, *dolere*, *morere*.

ground, *humus*; on the ground, *humis*

grow-old, *senescere*.

grow-green, *virescere*.

grow-warm, *incallescere*.

grow-accustomed, *consuescere*

guard, *custodire*.

guard against, *cavere*, *acc.*, (*cavo*, *caut.*,

guard myself, *cavere*, *acc.*, (*cavo*, *caut.*,

guards, *stationes*, (i. e. parties of

soldiers posted in particular places,

excubiae.

guilty, *nōcens*, *nōcentis*.

Habit, *mos*, *mōris*.

hang, *pendere*, (*neut*.

hang over, *imminere*.

had rather, *mallo*, (from *mallo*.)

hand, *manus*, *ūs*, *f*.

Hannibal, *Hannibal*, *Hannibalis*.

happen, (of evils,) *accidere*; (of fortunate events,) *contingere*, (*tig*;) (= turn

out,) *evenire*. *Syn*.

happy, *beātus*, *felix*.

happy, (= joyful,) *lætus*.

harass, *exagitare*.

harbor, *portus*, *ūs*.

hardly, (= scarcely,) *vix*.

hardship, *labor*, *ōris*.

harm to do, (to,) *obesse*.

harmony, *concordia*.

hate, *odisse*, (with tenses derived from *perfi*.)

hatred, *odium*.²

have, *habere*.

have rather, *mallo*, p. 177.

head, *caput*, *capitis*, *n*.

heal, *mederi*, *dat*.

hear, *audire*.

heart, (as the seat of the affections,) *animus*.

heart, *cor*, *cordis*, *n*.

hearth, *fōcus*.

heat, *calor*, *ōris*.

heavy, *grāvis*.

hen, *gallina*.

hence, *inde*, *hinc*.

help, *auxilium*.

her, *acc. sing. se*, if relating to nom. of sent.; if not, *eam*.

her, *adj. suus*, *a*, *um*, if relating to nom. of sent.; if not, *ejus*.

herb, *herba*.

herd, *armentum*; *grex*, *grēgis*.

here, (= hither,) *huc*.

hesitate, *dubitare*.

hill, *collis*, *is*, *m*.: *mons*, *montis*.

him, *se*, if relating to nom. of sent.; if not, *eum*.

himself, *ipse*; in *acc. se*: *seipsum*, or *ipsum se*.

hinder, *impedire*, *obstare*.

¹ 'When he had gained the victory,' *paratā victoriā*.

² In Ex. 94 use it in the plural.

his, *opus*; or *usus*, a. am.
 hit, (a mark,) *attingere*, (*fig*, *tact*.)
 hither, *huc*.
 hold, *tēnere*, p. 169, ii.
 home, to, *dōmum*; at, *dōmi*; from,
dōmo.
 Homer, *Homērus*.
 honey, *mel*, *mellis*, n.
 honor, *honor*, *ōris*.
 honor, (= the honorable,) *honestas*;
 (= probity,) *fides*, *ei*.
 honor, *cōlere*.
 hope, *spes*, *ei*.
 hope, *spērare*.
 hornet, *crabro*, *ōnis*.
 horse-soldier, *ēques*, *equitis*.
 horse, *equus*.
 hour, *hora*.
 house, *dōmus*, *ūs et i*.
 ouse, at my, *dōmi meæ*.
 how, (with adj.), *quam*.
 how greatly, *quantōpere*.
 how many, *quot*.
 how much, *quantum*.
 how often, *quōties*.
 huge, *ingens*, *tis*.
 human, *humanus*.
 humor, *indulgēre*, (dat.)
 hunger, *fāmes*, *is*.
 hungry, to be, *esurire*.
 hunt, *vēnari*.
 hurry-away, *abripere*, *ie*, (*ripu*, *rept*.)
 hurt, *nōcēre*, dat.
 husband, *vir*, *viri*.
 husbandman, *7*, *agricola*.
 hypocritically pretend, (= lie,) *mentiri*.
ior, (*mentitus*.)

Idle, *otiosus*.
 If—not, *nisi*.
 ignorant, to be, *ignorare*, acc.
 ill-humored, *mirus*, 8.
 illuminate, *illuminare*, *illustrare*.
 increase, *ingens*, *tis*, abl. i.
 immortal, *immortalis*.
 immortality, *immortalitas*.
 impede, *impēdire*.
 impel, *impellere*, (*pūl*, *puls*.)
 importance, it is of, *interest*, gen. It is of
 no importance, *nihil interest*; It is of
 very great importance, *permultum in-*
terest; of how great importance it is,
quanti interest; it is of great impor-
tance, *magni interest*.
 In, in, (abl.)
 inactive, *otiosus*.
 inclined, *propensus*.
 increase, *augere*, (*aux*, *auct*.) trans. *cre-*
scere, (*crēn*.) neut.
 incredible, *incredibilis*.
 indulge in, *indulgēre*, (*duls*, *dult*.) dnt.
 inflict punishment on, *aliquem pōnd*
afficere.
 inglorious, *inglōrius*.
 inhabitant of a town, *oppidanus*.

Inhabitant, *incola*.
 injure, *nōcēre*, (dat.)
 injury, *injuria*.
 innocence, *innocentia*.
 innocent, *innocens*, *tis*.
 inquire, *quærere*, (followed by *e*, *ex*.)
 instead of, *lōco*, (abl.)
 institute, *institutio*, (*i*, *tum*.)
 instruct, *erudire*.
 instrument, *præsidium*.
 intellectual cultivation, *ingenii cultus*.
 intention, *consilium*.
 into, *in*, (acc.)
 invade, *bellum inferre*, (*intāl*, *illāt*.) with
 dat. of the country.
 invading, *invadens*.
 invective, *convicium*.
 invite, *vōcare*, *invitare*.
 irrigate, *irrigare*, (= *irrigare*.)
 island, *insula*.
 Italy, *Italia*.
 itself, *ipse*, a, um; G. *ius*

Jewel, *gemma*.
 join battle with, *committere prælium*,
 (cum.)
 joint-king, to be named, 37.
 journey, *iter*, *itinēris*.
 joy, *lætitia*.
 joyful, *lætus*.
 judge, 12. See p. 134, *judez*, *icis*
 judge, *vindicare*.
 just, *mōdo*, (adv.)
 justly, *jure*, *meritoque*.
 Jupiter, *Jupiter*; G. *Jōvis*.

Keep, *servare*.
 keep in custody, *in custōdiā tēnere*.
 keep in their camp, *in castris continēre*,
 (ui.)
 keep-off, *arcēre*.
 kill, *interficere*, *occidere*, *necare*.
 kill, *cōdere*.
 kindness, *benévōlencia*; a kindness, *ben-*
ficiū.
 kind-of-corn, *frumentum*.
 king, *rex*, *rēgis*.
 knife, *cultus*, *ri*.
 know, *scire*, *novisse*, *callēre*: not know
nescire.
 knowledge, *scientia*.
 known, (it is,) *constat*.

Labor, *labor*, *ōris*.
 lake, *lācus*, *ūs*.
 land, *terra*.
 language, *lingua*.
 large, *grandis*.
 lately, *nuper*.
 laugh, *ridere*.
 laugh at, *ridere*, *doridire*.
 law, *lex*, *lēgis*.
 lay waste, 9, *vastare*.

lay-siege-to, *obsidire*, *obsid.* *obsess.*)
 lead, *dúcere*.
 lead a life, *agere vitam*, (*ég, act.:*) *digere vitam*.
 lead away, *abducere*.
 leader, *dux*, *dúcis*.
 leaf, *folium*.
 learn, *discere*, (*didic.:*) (of facts, events, &c.) *comproire*, (*comperi;*) *cognoscere*, (*nov. nit.*)
 learn by heart, *ediscere*.
 learned, *doctus*.
 leave, *relinquere*, (*liqu, lict.*)
 leave, (= to go out of,) *excedere*, *abl.* (*cess.*)
 leave a province, *discedere ex provinciâ*.
 left-hand, *sinistra*.
 legion, *legio*, *unis*.
 less, *minus*.
 lessen, (= soften,) *lenire*.
 lest, *ne*.
 letter, *litteræ*,¹ *pl.*: *epistola*.
 liberty, *libertas*, *âtis*.
 lie, *mentiri*.
 lie, *mendacium*.
 lie down, *cubare*.
 lieutenant-general, *légatus*.
 life, *vita*; (= lifetime,) *etâs*, *âtis*.
 light, *lêvis*.
 light, (= kindle,) *accendere*; *succendere*, (*cead, cens.*) *Syn. li.*
 like, *similis*, *dat. simillimus*, (*superl.*)
 likeness, *a, effigies*, *ei*.
 lion, *leo*, *onis*.
 listen to, *obedire*, (*dat.,*) *obtemperare*, (*dat.*)
 little, *parvus*.
 little-garden, *hortulus*.
 live, *vivere*, (*viz, vict.*)
 load, *cumulare*.
 long, *longus*.
 long, *diu*.
 look at, *spectare*.
 lose, *amittere*.
 lose an opportunity, *occasionem prætermittere*.
 lot, *sors*, *sortis*.
 love, *amare*, *diligere*, *7.*
 lowest, *infimus*, *imus*.
 lust, *libido*, *inis*.
 luxuriant-growth, *luxuria*.
 luxury, *luxuria*.
 lyre, *lyra*.

Macedonians, *Macedônes*, *um*.
 machine, *mâchina*.
 magistracy, *magistratus*, *ûs*.
 magnanimous, *magnanimus*.
 make myself master of, *pôtiri*, (*potitus sum*), *abl*

make, *facere*, (*fic, fact.:*) am made, *fiô*
 man, *homo*, *vir*.
 manifest, *manifestus*.
 Manlius, *Manlius*.
 manners, (= morals, character,) *môres um, pl.*
 many, *multi*.
 march-up, *adventare*.
 mark, *scôpus*.
 marriage, *connubium*.
 marry, (of a female,) *nubere*, *dat.*
 Marseilles, *Massilia*.
 master, (who teaches,) *magister*, *ri*.
 master, (who owns,) *dôminus*.
 mean, *significare*: (= to convey an opinion,) *censere*.
 means, *môdus*, *ratio*.
 means, (= remedial or preventive means,) *remedia*, *pl.*
 means-of-escape, *exitus*, *ûs*.
 meaning, *sententia*.
 meadow, *pratum*.
 measure, *mêtiri*, *ior*, *mensus*.
 meet, *occurrere*, (*occurr, occure,*) *dat.*
 melt, *liquecere*.
 mention, *nuncupare*. See 10.
 Milo, *Milo*, *Milonis*.
 military-oath, *sacramentum*.
 milk, *lac*, *lactis*.
 mind, *animus*.
 mine, *meus*; *voc. mi.*
 mindful, *mémor*, *gen.*
 miserable, *miser*, *era*, &c.
 misfortune, *calamitas*; *câsus*, *ûs*
 miss, *omittere*, *prætermittere*.
 mistress, *magistra*.
 mix, *p. 169, il.*, *miscere*.
 mixed, *promiscuus*.
 modest, *pudicus*.
 money, *pecunia*.
 moneyed, *pecuniôsus*, *7.*
 month, *mensis*, *in.*
 monument, *monumentum*.
 moon, *luna*.
 morals, *mores*, *um*.
 more, *plus*, with *gen.*³ even more, *etiam plura*.
 more, (*adv.*) *mâgis*.
 morose, *morôsus*, *8.*
 mortal, *mortalis*.
 most men, *plerique*.
 motion, *motus*, *ûs*.
 mother, *mât-er*, *ris*.
 mount, *ad-scendere*, (*ascend, scens*) (*See 12.*)
 mountain, *mons*, *ntis*, *m.*
 move, *môvère*, (*mov, môt.:*) move, *neut. môvêri*.
 move with compassion, *commôvère*, (*mov, môt.*)

¹ *Litteræ* may also be used for *letters*.

² Ex. 96, Part II.: 'to make friends of enemies,' *ex inimicis amicos facere*.

³ That is, if *quantity* is meant: if number, *plures*, *a*, &c., in agreement. 'More gold,' *plus auri*: 'more roses,' *plures rosæ*

much, (= many things, *multa*.
much, *multum*, (followed by subst. in
gen.)
much, (before comparative,) *multo*, abl.
multitude, *multitudo*, *inis*.
my, *meus*, (V. m. *mi*.)
myself, (nom.,) *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

Nail, *clavus*
naked, *nudus*.
name, *nominare*, (also = to appoint.)
(subst.,) *nomen*, *inis*.
Naples, *Neapolis*, acc. *im*.
nations, *populi*.
nature, *natura*.
near, *prope*, acc.
nearest, *proximus*.
nearly, *prope*, *pene*.
need, *egere*, *indigere*.
need, there is, *opus est*.
neglect, *negligere*, (*neglex*, *neglect*.)
neigh, *hinnire*.
neighbor, your, *proximus tuus*.¹
neighboring, *vicinus*.
neither—nor, { *neque—neque*
 nec—nec.
nest, *nidus*.
never, *nunquam*.
nevertheless, *tamen*.
new, *novus*.
next, *proximus*.
night, *nox*, *noctis*.
ninety-first, *nonagesimus primus*.
no, *nullus*; after *ne*, *quis*.
nobody, *nemo*, *inis*.
no one, *nemo*, *inis*.
no time, *nikil temporis*.
no where, {
no whither, { *nusquam*.
no wiser, *nikilo sapientior*.
not, *non*.
not, (in questions,) *nonne*?
not yet, *nondum*.
not even, *ne—quidem*.
not only—but { *non solum—verum etiam*
 also, { *non modo—sed etiam*.
not at all, *nikil*.
nothing, *nikil*.
now, *nunc*.
number, *numerus*; (= multitude,) *mul-*
 tudo, *inis*.

Oak, *quercus*, *us*.
obedience, *obsequium*.
obey, *pārere*, *obedire*, *obtemperare*, dat.
oblige, *satis-ficere*, dat.
oblige, *fāvere*, p. 170, viii.
obolus, *obolus*.
observe, *observare*.
observe moderation, *modestiam retinere*.

obtain, *pārare*.
ocean, *oceanus*.
of, after 'become,' 'deserve well,' &c.
of, 'am persuaded,' and when = concern
ing, *de*.
of, after, 'inquire,' *ex*.
of others, *alienus*, *a*, *um*.
offend against, *violare*.
offend, *offendere*, (*send*, *sens*), acc.
offer, *offerre*, (*oblāt*, *oblāt*). See ad
vantage.
offering-of-atonement, *pidaculum*.
often, *sæpe*.
oil, *oleum*.
old, *vetus*, *vetēris*, n. pl. *vetera*.
old man, *senex*, G. *senis*, G. pl. *um*.
old age, *senectus*, *utis*.
on, *super*; after 'live,' sign of abl.
on the Black Sea, *ad Pontum Euxinum*.
on high, 16, ii., *sublimis*.
on all sides, *undique*.
one, *unus*.
one, (of two,) *alter*, G. *ius*.
one's, *suius*.
only, adj. *solus*, G. *ius*.
open, 13, (Voc. on perf. *si*), *detegere*,
aperire.
opportunity, *occasio*, *ōnis*.
opponent, *adversarius*.
oppose, *repugnare*, dat.; *obstare*, (dat.)
oppress, *opprimere*, (*press*, *press*.)
oppressor, *oppressor*, *ōris*.
or, *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, (in questions *an*.)
oracle, *oraculum*.
orator, *orātor*, *ōris*.
order, *ordo*, *inis*, m.
order, *jubere*, (*juss*), acc. with inf.
ornament, *ornare*.
others, *alii*; the other, (of two,) *alter*.
ought, *oportet*. See p. 96
our, *nost-er*, *ra*, *rum*.
out of, *e*, *ex*, *extra*.
overthrow, (a plan, &c.,) *labefactare*.
over, *super*, (prep.)
owe, *debere*.
own, (emphatic,) *ipsius* or *ipsorum*, *astot*
meus, *tuus*, &c..

Pain, *dolor*, *ōris*.
paint, *pingere*.
palace, *domus*,
palm, *palma*.
pardon, *ignoscere*, (*nōv*), dat.; (of a
superior,) *veniam dare*.
parent, *parens*, *tis*.
part, *pars*, *partis*.
passion, *animus*; (= anger,) *ira*.
path, *via*.
patrician, *patricius*.
pavement, *pavimentum*.
peace, *paz*, *pācis*.

¹ This word, though given by Grotefend, is not a classical word in this sense
Translate 'love thy neighbor,' by 'love other men,' '*alios*.'

poetish, *poëticus*, *ſ.*
 Peleus, *Peleus*, *G. ſi.*
 people, *pōpulus*.
 perceive, *intelligere*, (*lex. lect.*)
 perform (a service, promise, &c.) *præstare*, (*stit. stat.*)
 perform, *fungi, perfungi*, (*funct.*)
 permitted, it is, *licet*.
 permitted, I am, *licet mihi*.¹
 persevere, *perseverare*.
 Persian, *Persæ*.
 persist, *perseverare*.
 person, (= man,) to be generally untranslated.
 persuade, (= advise effectually,) *persuadere, suad.* dat.; followed by *ut*.
 Phædon, *Phædon, ōnis*, one of Plato's dialogues.
 Phillip, *Philippus*.
 philosopher, *philosophus*.
 philosophy, *philosophia*.
 physician, *médicus*.
 picture, *tabula*.
 piety, *pietas, ōtis*.
 pilot, *gubernator*.
 pity, *misereri*, *gen.*
 place, *punere, (posu, posit.*
 place, (guards, &c.) *disponere, (posu, posit.)*
 place in a higher rank, *altiori loco constitutuere*, (*stitu, stituit.*)
 plague, *pestis*.
 plain, *manifestus*.
 plan, *consilium*.
 plant, *sérere*.
 Plato, *Plato, G. ōnis*.
 play, *ludere, (lūs.)*
 pleasant, *jucundus*.
 please, *placere*, *dat.*
 pleasing, to be, *placere*.
 to be pleased, *oblectari*.
 pleasure, *voluptas, ōtis*.
 to give pleasure, *voluptate afficere, (fic. fecit.)* with acc. of person.
 plebeian, *plebeius*.
 plot, *insidiari*.
 plough, *arare*.
 pluck, *de-cerpere*, *13; carpere*.
 Pœcile, *G. es, Acc. en.*
 poet, *poeta*.
 point out, *monstrare*.
 poison, *venenum*.
 Pompey, *Pompejus*.
 poor, *pauper, ōris*.
 portico, *porticus, ſs.*
 portion, *pars, portio*.
 possess, *possidere. (possēd, possess.)*
 posterity, *posteritas*; or the pl. *posterī*.
 power, (= ability,) *facultas*, (*41.*)
 power, *potentia*, of actual; *potestas*, of legal, conceded, &c., power.
 powerful, *pōtens*; (of words,) *gravis*.

powers of the mind, *animi vires*.
 practise, *exercere, (ui, itum.)*
 practise, (= exercise,) *exercere*.
 Prætor, *Prætor, ōris*, a Roman mag'strate.
 prætorship, *prætura*.
 praise, *laus, laudis*.
 praise, to, *laudare*.
 pray, (= beg earnestly,) *orare*.
 pray the gods, *a diis præcari*.
 prayers, *præces, um.*
 precept, *7, præceptum*.
 preceptor, *7, præceptor, ōris*.
 prefer, *antepōnere, (pōsu, posit.)*
 prepare, *parare*.
 present an appearance, *speciem præbere*.
 present (with,) *donare, ſs. 109, 110.*
 preserve, *conservare*; (= retain,) *retinere*.
 press, (= urge,) *instare, institi*.
 pretend, *simulare*.
 pretence, *simulatio, ōnis*.
 prevail-upon, *exorare*.
 prevent, *prohibere, (ui, itum;)* (= prevent, as an obstacle interposed,) *obstare, obstiti*, with dat.; to be prevented by business, *negotiiis distineri*.
 priest, *acerdos, ōtis*.
 priestess, *acerdos, ōtis*.
 prince, *princeps, principis*.
 prison, *carcer, ōris*.
 privilege, *ius, juris*.
 prize, *præmium*.
 proclaim, *prædicare*.
 proclaim, *edicare*; (a war,) *indicare, (dis, dict.)*
 procure, *parare*.
 profitable, *utilis*.
 promise, *promissum*.
 promise, *polliceri, (licit;)* *promittere*, (the former of free, gracious promises.)
 property, *bona, (good.)*
 proposal, (of a law,) *rogatio*.
 prop-up, *fulcire, (fuls, fult.)*
 protect, (= guard a house, &c.) *custodire*.
 protect, (= foster, encourage,) *fovere, (fovi, füt.)*
 proud, *superbus*.
 proudly, *superbe*.
 prove, *probare*.
 prove myself, *præstare me*.
 provided, *modo or dummodo*.²
 prudence, *17, prudentia*.
 Punic, *Punicus, (l. e. Carthaginian.)*
 punish, *punire, or pœnâ afficere*.
 punishment, *pœna*.
 pull down, *evertere*.
 pupil, *discipulus*.
 purchase, *8, emptio, ōnis*.
 pure, *castus*.
 purpose, for the, *causâ*.

¹ The pronoun is generally omitted, if it is plain who are meant.

² With subj.—'not' after 'provided' is *nō*.

put-after, *posthabere*, (*aliqua ulcni*.)
 put-an-end-to, *12*, *ll.*, *conficere*.
 put-on, *induere*.
Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus*.

Queen, *regina*.
 quench, *retinguere*, (*stinx*, *stinct*;
pellere.
 question, *interrogatio*.
 Quirites, *G. ium*.

Race, *genus*, *bris*.
 rage, *severe*, *savii*.
 raise, (= excite), *excitare*.
 rank, *locus*.
 rape, *raptus*, *us*.
 reach, (= arrive at), *pervenire*, (the
 place to be governed by *ad*.)
 read, *legere*, (*lég*, *lect*;) (= read through),
perlegere.
 readily, *facile*.
 reason, *ratio*, *onis*.
 recall, *revocare*.
 receive, *accipere*, (*cip*, *cept*.)
 reckon, *numerare*, *ducere*.
 recognise, *agnoscere*, (*agnovi*, *agnitum*.)
 recollect, *reminisci*.
 reconciled, to be, in *gratiam redire* (*cum*.)
 refuse, *recusare*.
 reign, *regnare*.
 rejoice, *gaudere*, (*gavisus sum*.)
 relate, *narrare*.
 relations, *cognati*.
 relying on, *frētus*, (*abl*.)
 remain, *mānere*, (*mans*, *mans*;) to re-
 main in the same mind, in *eadem ani-*
mo perstare.
 remember, *meminisse*, (*Imper. memento*;) *recordari*, *reminisci*.
 remains, *lt*, *restat*, (*ut*.)
 remains, the, *reliqua*.
 remedy, *remedium*.
 remind, *admonere*, *Gen. of the thing*;
 or *de* with *abl*.
 remove, (*intrans*), *migrare*.
 render, *reddere*, (*did*, *dit*.)
 renew, *renovare*.
 repent, *l*, *me pœnitet*, *gen*.
 reply, *re-spondere*, (*spond*, *spons*.)
 represent, *figere*, (*finx*.)
 reproach, *reprehendere*, *vituperari*.
 reproof, *reprehensio*, *onis*.
 request, *rogare*.
 require, *egere*, *indigere*, (*gen.*, *abl*.)
 reside, *habitare*.
 resignation, *æquus animus*.
 resignation, the greatest, *æquissimus*
animus.
 resolve, (= decree) *decernere*, (*crève*, *cret*.)
 resound, *resonare*, *ui*, *itum*.

rest, *quiescere*.
 rest, the, *ceteri*, *a*, *a*.
 rest of, *adj. reliquus*.
 rest, to be at, *quiescere*.
 restore, *restituere*, *ui*, *itum*¹.
 restrain, *coercere*; (= tame, subdue
dōmare, *ui*, *itum*.)
 retain, *retinere*, (*ui*, *itum*.)
 return, *redire*, *reverti*, (*45*.)
 return, to give a prosperous, *red.tum*
secundare; *dat. of person*.
 revenge, *ulcisci*, (*ultus*.)
 revile, *maledicere*, *dat*.
 revive, *reviviscere*.
 rewarded, to be, *ornari*.
 Rhine, *Rhenus*.
 Rhone, *Rhōdānus*.
 rich, *dives*, *itis*.
 riches, *divitiæ*.
 right, *rectus*, (= rightly), *recto*.
 right, *jus*, *juris*.
 right-hand, *dextra*.
 ripe, to make, } *28*, *ll.*, *cōquere*.
 ripen, (*trans*.) }
 rise, *oriri*, *tor*, (*ort*.)
 river, *amnis*, *flumen*, *inis*.
 road, *via*; on the road, in *vid*
roh, *spoliare*, (*abl*.)
 rock, *saxum*.
 roof, *9*, *tectum*.
 Rome, *Roma*.
 Roman, *Romānus*.
 roost, (go to), *cubitum*, (*ire*.)
 rope, *funicis*, *m*.
 rose, *rosa*.
 round, *circum*, *circa*.
 rouse up, *excitare*.
 rub, *p*. 169, *ll.*, *fricare*, (*fricui*)
 Rubicon, *Rubicon*, *onis*.
 ruin, *perdere*, (*did*, *dit*.)
 rule, *regula*.
 rule, *regere*, (*rexi*, *rectum*.)
 run, *currere*, (*cucurri*, *cursum*.)

Sabines, *Sabini*.
 sacrifice, *immolare*.
 safe, *salvus*.
 safety, *salvus*, *utis*.
 sail, *navigare*.
 sailor, *nauta*.
 salt-water, *agua marina*.
 sake, for the—of, *causâ*.
 Salamis, *Salaminis*, *Acc. Salamina*.
 same, *idem*.
 Sardis, *Sardis*, *ium*, *pl*.
 Saturn, *Saturnus*.
 satisfy, *satisfacere*, *dat*, (*satisfacio*;
 (with food), *satiare*.
 save, *servare*.
 say, *dicere*.
 says he, *inquit*.

¹ 'Tb' after 'restore' is to be translated by 'in' with the *acc.*, in such ex-
 pressions as, 'to be restored to a rank,' &c.

scarcely, *vix*.
scatter, *spargere*.
sceptre, *sceptrum*.
sciences, *artes*; *disciplinae*; *literae*.
Scipio, *Scipio, ōnis*.
scold, *increpare*, (dat.)
sculptor, *statuarius*.
Scythian, *Scythia, æ*.
sea, *mare*; by sea and land, *terra mar-
isque*; Black Sea, *Pontus Euxinus*.
search-for, *conquirere*, (3.)
season, *tempestas, ætis*.
seasoning, *condimentum*.
second, *alter*.
second, *secundus*.
secret, *secretum, arcæum*.
see, *videre*; (= distinguish; have the
sense of sight,) *cernere*; to be seen
(of objects becoming visible,) *conspici*,
(*conspici*.)
see that you don't, *vide nē*, with subj.
seed, *semen, inis*.¹
seek,
seek-out, { *querere, (quæso, quæsit.)*
seem, *videri, (vis.)*
seize, *câpere, (câp, capt.) arripere*.
sell, *vendere, (vendi, venditum.)*
send, *mittere*.
sensible, *prudens, tis*.
sensible people, *sani*.
senate, *senatus, ūs*.
senseless, *imprudens*.
service, *officium*.
service, on, *militia*.
set, 11. [Voc. on perf. *i*, p. 267.]
set out, *profcisci, (fect.)*
several, *plures*.
shake, *quâtere*.
share, (intrans.) *communiter habere*.
share, *communicare, (33. cum.)*
sharpen, p. 173. vi., *acuere*.
shear, *tndere, (totondi, tonsum.)*
shed, *profundere, (fûd, fûs.)*
sheep, *ovis*.
shepherd, *pastor, ōris*.
shield, *clipeus*.
shine, *fulgere*.
ship, *navis, abl. e or i*.
shoot, *flagellum*.
shoot, (= hurl,) *conficere, (jēc, ject.)*
shoot-up, (of plants,) *emergere super or
extra terram: efflorescere*.
shore, *lit-us, ōris*.
short, *brevis*.
shoulder, *humérus*.
should, (= ought,) *debere, oportet*.
show myself (brave,) *præbere*.
shut, *claudere*.
side, *latus, ūs*.
sight, *aspectus, ūs*.
silent, to be, *silere, tdcere*.
silver, *argentum*.

simple, *simplex, is*.
sin, *peccare*.
since, *quum, quoniam*.
sincere, *sincerus*.
sing, *cânere, (cécin, cant.) cantare*.
sister, *soror, ōris*.
sit, p. 170. vii., *sedere*.
site, *lôcus, (pl. loci et loca.)*
sixty, *sexaginta*.
skilled in, *peritus, (gen.)*
skin, *pellis, is*.
slave, *servus*.
slave, to be the, *servire, dat*.
slay, *occidere, (cid, cis.)* See 11
sleep, *somnus*.
sleep, *dormire*.
slow, *tardus*.
slip away, *elabi*.
slothful, *ignavus*.
small, *parvus*.
snatch, *eripere, (ripu, rept.)* with dat.
snake, *anguis, is*.
snow, *nix, nivis*.
so, (= to such a degree,) *adco*; (= in
such a manner,) *ita*.
so-great, *tantus*.
so-many, *tot*.
so often, *tôties*.
Socrates, *Socrâtes, is*.
soft, *mollis*.
soldier, *miles, itis*.
some, *aliquis, quispiam*.
some—others, *alii—alii*.
some, (when the persons are known, but
it is not necessary to name them,)
quidam.
sometimes, *nonnunquam*.
something, *aliquid*.
somewhat; omit, and put adj. in com-
parative.
son, *filius*.
song, *cantilæna*.
soon, *cito*.
sorely, (= violently,) *vehementer*.
sorrow, *dolor, ōris*.
soul, *animus, animæ*.
sound, *sonus*.
sow, *serere, (sæv, sât.)*
spare, *parcere, (peperc,) dat*.
speak, *loqui, (locut.)*
speak the truth, *verum dicere*.
spear, *hasta*.
speech, *oratio*.
spend, (life, time, &c.,) *agere, (ag act;) im-
pendere, (dat.)*
spend, (wastefully,) *con-sumere*.
spln, *nere*.
spirit, *animus*.
spring, *ver, vëris*.
sprinkle, *ad-spergere, (spers, spers.)*
stake, to be at, *agi, pass*.
stand, *stare*.

¹ In Ex. 28 translate *seed* by *seges*, the *seed sown*, the *young crop*, or *crop*.

stand by promises, *stare promissis*.
 standard, *signum*.
 star, *stella*.
 state, *civitas*; *urbs*, *urbis*, (if a cl'y.)
 (= condition,) *status*, *us*.
 steer, *dirigere*, (*rex*, *rect.*)
 stoersman, *gubernator*.
 stern, *puppis*; at the stern, *in puppi*.
 still, (before comparatives,) *etiam*.
 Stolo, *Stolo*, *unis*.
 stone, *lapis*, *lapidis*.
 storm, *tempestas*, *â'is*; *procella*.
 storms of war, the, *belli tumultus*.
 strange, (= surprising,) *mirus*.
 strength, *vires*, *ium*; *robur*, *â'is*.
 strengthen, *firmare*.
 strengthen, *robore*.
 strive, *niti*, *eniti*, (*nisus*, *nizus*.)
 stupid, *hebes* *êtis*.
 subdue, *sub-igere*, (*âg*, *act* :) *domare*, *ui*,
itum, '50.)
 succeed, (= follow,) *ex-cipere*, (*cêp*, *cept*.)
acc; *succedere*, (*successi*.) *dat*.
 successive—omit this word and govern
 'years' by 'per.'
 such, *talis*; (= so great,) *tantus*.
 suddenly, *subito*.
 suffer, *sinere*. (*si*;) *pâti*, (*passus*.)
 suitable, *idoneus*.
 sum of money, *pecunia*.
 summer, *æstas*, *âtis*.
 sun, *sol*, *solis*.
 superstition, *superstitio*, *ûnis*.
 support, (= nourish,) *âlere*, (*âlu*, *âlit* or
alt.)
 support, (= assist, allies, &c.) *auxilium*
ferre, (*dat*.)
 surprised, to be, *mirari*, (*dep*.)
 surround, (p. 168, l.) *circumdâre*, (*dêd*,
dat;) *singere*.
 surround, (of enemies, &c.) *circumve-*
nire.
 swallow, *hirundo*, *dînis*.
 swallow-up, *devorare*.
 sway, *regnare*.
 swear, *jurare*.
 sweet, *dulcis*.
 swift, *vêlox*, *ôcis*.
 swim, *nare*, *natare*.
 sword, *ensis*, *m*; *glâdius*.
 Syracuse, *Syracûsa*, *ârum*.

Table, *mensa*.

take, *câpere*, (*cêp*, *capt*;) *sumere*, (*sums*,
sumpt.)
 take, *expugnare*.
 take away, *eximere*, (*êm*, *empt*;) *eripere*,
 (by violence.)
 take away my life, *vitam mihi eripere*.
 take pride, *gloriari*, (*abl*.)

take care, *câvêre*, (*cav*, *caut*.)
 take care of, *curare*.
 take care that, *vide*, (*nê*.)
 taking, (of a city,) *expugnatio*, *8*.
 tale, *fabula*.
 tame, p. 169, li., *domare*, (*domui*.)
 task, (= work, labor, *opus*, *operis*;) (=
 task set to pupils,) *pensum*.
 Tarentine, *Tarentinus*, *9*.
 teach, *dôcere*, *2 acc*.
 teacher, *magister*, *præceptor*.
 teaching, *præcepta*, *pl*.
 tear, *lacrima*.
 tear-to-pieces, *dilaniare*.
 tell, *dicere*; (of t'es, &c., related,) *nar-*
rare.
 temper, *animus*.
 temple, *templum*.
 terrify, *terrere*.
 that, (after doubt, *deû*, &c., with *neg*.)
quin.
 that, (after fear,) *ne*; that—not, *ut*.
 that, *ille*, *a*, *ud*.
 that, *ut*.
 that—not, *nâ*.
 that-of-yours, *iste*, *a*, *ud*.
 the more—the more, *quo—eo*.
 Thebes, *Thêbæ*, *ârum*.
 theft, *furtum*.
 then, (= at that time,) *tum*.
 then, (= after,) *deinde*, *inde*.
 their, *eius*.
 there, *ibi*.³
 thereof, (= of it, of them, &c.) *ejus*, *co-*
rum, &c.
 Thetis, *Thêtis*, *îdos*.
 think, *putare*.
 think, (= think of doing, purpose, &c.)
cogitare.
 thing, *res*, *ei*.
 thirst, *sitis*, *is*.
 thirsty, to be, *sitire*.
 this, *hic*, (*hæc*, *hoc*.)
 thorn, *13*, *aculeus*.
 those who, *qui*.³
 thoughtlessly, *témère*.
 thoughtlessness, *temeritas*, *âtis*.
 thoughts, *sententia*.
 thread, *filum*.
 threaten, *minari*; (of dangers,) *imminere*.
 (dat.)
 three, *tres*.
 three days ago, *nūdius tertius*, (= *nunc*
dies tertius.)
 three hundred and seventy-eight, (an
nus) *trecentestimus septuagesimus oc-*
tavus.
 three hundred and tenth, *trecentessimus*
decimus.
 through, *per*, expressing the cause, sign
 of *abl*.

¹ Urbem muro, or murum urbi.

² 'There,' before *is*, *are*, *were*, &c., is 'to be left untranslated.

³ Properly *is qui*, but the *is* is generally omitted.

thunder, to, *tonare*, p. 169
 thunderbolt, *fulmen*, *inis*.
 Tiber, *Tiberis*, *is*, acc. *im*.
 tiger, *tigris*, *idis*, f.
 till, *colere*, (*colu*, cult.)
 till, *donec*, (subj.)
 time, *tempus*, *temporis*; in a short time,
breve tempore.
 time, at the right, in *tempore*.
 timid, *timidus*, *pavidus*.
 toad, *am*—of, *laedet me*, gen.
 to-bod, *cubitum*, (sup. of *cubare*);
 to day, *hodie*.
 to death, (after condemn,) *capitis*.
 to the city, (after return,) *in urbem*.
 together, (after to compare,) *inter se*.
 too much, *nimius*, (*nimius somnus*, ore
nimum somni.
 too late, *sero*.
 top of, *summus*.
 torch, *loda*.
 torment, *cruciare*.
 totter, *labare*.
 touch, *tangere*.
 towards, *erga*, acc.; *in*, acc.; *adversus*.
 town, *oppidum*.
 Trasimene lake, *lacus Trasimēnus*.
 treasure, *thesaurus*; *opes*, (pl.); G. *opum*.
 treachery, *proditio*, *ōnis*.
 treat, *tractare*.
 treaty, *fœdus*, *ēris*.
 tree, *arbor*, *ōris*.
 tribunal, *tribūnal*.
 tribune, *tribūnus*.
 tribune of the people, *tribunus plebis*.
 trick, *dolus*.
 triumph, *triumphus*.
 Trojan;—in the Trojan war, *bello Troja-*
no.
 troops, *copiæ*, *militēs*.
 troublesome, *molestus*.
 Troy, *Troja*.
 true, *vērus*.
 truly, *vère*.
 trust, (= believe, have confidence in),
credere, (dat.
 truth, the, *verum*.
 turn out, *evadere*, (*vas*.)
 tussilago, G. *inis*.
 twice, *bis*.
 two apiece, *bini*.
 tyrant, *tyrannus*.

Umpire, *arbitor*, *tri*.
 unbecoming, it is, *dedecet*, acc.
 uncertain, *incertus*.
 uncover, *aperire*, *detegere*.
 understand, *intelligere*, (*lex*, *lect*.)
 undertake, *suscipere*, (*cēp*, *cept*.)
 undertaking, *inceptum*, *ē*.
 undertaking, an, *ē*, *inceptum*.
 unfeeling, *durus*.
 unfortunate, *miser*, (*ora*, *erum*.)
 unheard, *inauditus*.
 unjustly, *injusto*.

unlearned, *indoctus*.
 unless, *nisi*.
 unlike, *dissimilis*, dat.
 unmindful, *immemor*, gen.
 unnecessary, *superfluous*.
 unprofitable, *inutilis*.
 unskilled in, *imperitus*, gen.
 unwilling, *involunt*.
 unwilling, to be, *nolle*.
 unworthy, *indignus*, abl.
 upper, *summus*.
 upright, *honestus*.
 use, *uti*, (*usus*), abl.
 useful, *utilis*.
 useless, *inutilis*.
 usual, *suetus*.

Valley, *vallis*.
 valuable, *pretiosus*.
 value, (= value highly,) *magis estimare*,
 (*not estimare only*;) of persons, *de-*
ligere.
 vanity, *vanitas*, *ātis*.
 vapor, *vapor*, *ōris*.
 various, *varius*.
 vary, *variare*.
 vast, *ingens*, *ātis*.
 verse, *versus*, *ūs*.
 very-confined, *per-angustus*.
 vessel, *navis*, *is*.
 vice, *vitium*.
 victim, *victima*.
 victory, *victoria*.
 vie, *certare*.
 vile, *turpis*.
 violence, *vis*, (— *vim*, *vi*;) pl. *vires*.
 violent, *vehemens*, *ātis*.
 violently-carry-off, *eripere*, (*eripui*, *erap-*
tus.)
 virtue, *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.
 virtuous, *honestus*.
 voice, *vox*, *vōcis*.

Wage, *gerere*, (*gers*, *gest*.)
 wait, *mandre*, *expectare*.
 wait for, *opperiri*.
 walk, *ambulare*.
 wall, *murus*; (of a walled city,) *maenia*,
 pl.; (of a house,) *paries*, *ētis*; (of a
 garden, &c.,) *maceria*: on the walls,
per muros.
 want, *carere*, (abl.)
 want, *inopia*.
 war, *bellum*.
 ward off, *a-cere*.
 warm, *tēpere*.
 warm, *calidus*.
 warn, *mōnere*.
 warrior, *mil-es*, *itis*.
 wasp, *vespa*.
 watch-over, *custodire*.
 water, *agua*.
 wave, *fluctus*.
 way, *via*.

waylay, to, *insidias struere*, (*strux. struct.*) with dat. of person.
 weak, *imbecillus*.
 wealth, *opes, opum*.
 weary, am, *taedet me*, gen.
 weather, *tempestas*.
 weight, *onus, eris*.
 well, *dēne*; (= rightly,) *recte*.
 well-known, it is, *constat*.
 what? (interrog.,) *quis, quae, quid*, (but if it agrees with a subst., *quod*.)
 what, (meaning how great,) *quantus*.
 whatever, *quicquid*, neut. as subst.; *quicunque*, adj.
 when, *quum, quando*, (*quum* not in dependent sentences.)
 whence, *unde*.
 where, *ubi*.
 which, (of two,) *uter*.
 white, *albus*.
 whither, *quo*.
 who? *quis?*
 whole, *totus*.
 wholesome, *salūder*.
 why, *cur*.
 wickedness, *nequitia*: wicked, *mālus, imprōbus*.
 wife, *mulier, eris*.
 wild, (of cries, &c.,) *atrox, ōcis*.
 wild-beast, *fera*, (*bestia* understood.)
 will, *voluntas, ātis*.
 willing, to be, *velle*.
 willingly, *libenter*.
 win-by-arms, *expugnare*, 8.
 win, (a country by arms,) *expugnare*.
 wine, *vinum*.
 winter, *hiems, hiēmis*.
 wisdom, *sapientia*.

wise, *sapiens, tis*.
 wish, (= choose, have a mind,) *velle*
 wish, *cupere*,
 with, *cum*, (abl.)
 with me, *apud me*.
 without, *sine*, (abl.,) *extra*.
 withhold, *arcere*.
 withstand, *sustinere*, (*sustinui, sustentum*.)
 wolf, *lupus*.
 wonder, *mirari*.
 wonderful, *mirus*.
 wont, to be, *solere*, (*solitus sum*.)
 wood, *silva*; the Teutoburgian wood *saltus Teutoburgensis*, (*saltus*; G. *ûs*)
 wool, *lana*.
 word, *verbum*.
 work, *opus, eris*.
 world, *mundus*; *orbis terrarum*.¹
 worship, *cōlere*,
 worse, *pejor*.
 worst, *pessimus*.
 worthy, *dignus*, (abl.)
 would that, *utinam*.
 wound, *vulnus, eris*.
 wrath, *ira*.
 write, *scribere*.
 writing, a, *scriptum*.
 wrong, *violare*.

 Year, *annus*.
 yesterday, *hēri*.
 young man, *adolescens, tis*
 young, (bird,) *pullus*.

 Zama, *Zama*; G. *a*.

¹ *Orbis terrarum*, when it is considered as made up of various lands or nations: hence it should be used when we speak of *subduing the world*.

THE
JOURNAL
OF
THE
AMERICAN
MEDICAL ASSOCIATION
PUBLISHED WEEKLY
CHICAGO, ILL., U.S.A.
1914

CONTENTS

ORIGINAL ARTICLES

THE
JOURNAL
OF
THE
AMERICAN
MEDICAL ASSOCIATION
PUBLISHED WEEKLY
CHICAGO, ILL., U.S.A.
1914

CONTENTS

ORIGINAL ARTICLES

Standard Classical

Standard Classical Works.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 237 pages.

Arnold's Second Part to the Above.* 12mo. 248 pages.

Arnold's Greek Reading Book. Containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, Copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Dr. Arnold's Greek Courses have been carefully revised, corrected, and improved by J. A. SPENCER, D.D., making them a thorough, practical, and easy Greek course.

Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's *Anabasis*. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo, 208 pages.

First Lessons in Greek;* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, rector of Hopkins Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. (Recently published.) 12mo.

Hadley's Greek Grammar,* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. (Recently published.) 12mo. 366 pages.

Herodotus, Selections From; Comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D.D., Professor of Philosophy and English Literature in Dickinson College. 12mo. 185 pages.

Kuhner's Greek Grammar. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.